

---

# Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Data Management

---

October 2011

Copyright © 1988, 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

### **Trademark Notice**

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

### **License Restrictions Warranty/Consequential Damages Disclaimer**

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

### **Warranty Disclaimer**

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

### **Restricted Rights Notice**

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

#### *U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS*

Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

### **Hazardous Applications Notice**

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

### **Third Party Content, Products, and Services Disclaimer**

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third party content, products and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third party content, products or services.

# Contents

## Preface

<b>Data Management Preface .....</b>	<b>xvii</b>
Data Management .....	xvii
PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library .....	xvii

## Chapter 1

<b>Getting Started with Data Management .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Data Management Overview .....	1
PeopleSoft Data Mover .....	1
PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager .....	2
Data Integrity and Auditing .....	2
Diagnostics Framework .....	3
Database Platform Considerations .....	3
Data Management Implementation .....	4

## Chapter 2

<b>Using PeopleSoft Data Mover .....</b>	<b>7</b>
Understanding PeopleSoft Data Mover .....	7
PeopleSoft Data Mover Overview .....	7
PeopleSoft Data Mover Environment .....	8
PeopleSoft Data Mover Operating Modes .....	8
Understanding Data Mover Scripts .....	9
Data Mover Script Commands .....	9
Supported SQL Commands .....	11
Data Mover Commands Compared to SQL Commands .....	12
PeopleSoft Data Mover COMMIT Statements .....	14
Using the Development Environment .....	14
Signing In to the Development Environment .....	14
Navigating the Data Mover Window .....	14
Creating and Running PeopleSoft Data Mover Scripts .....	15
Understanding Command Types .....	16
Understanding Syntax Rules .....	16
Creating and Editing Scripts .....	18

Preparing to Run Export Scripts .....	19
Running Scripts .....	19
Using the Database Setup Utility .....	21
Accessing the Database Setup Utility .....	21
Working with the Database Setup Utility .....	21
Checking the Generated Script .....	23
Using the PeopleSoft Data Mover Command-Line Interface .....	24
Understanding the PeopleSoft Data Mover Command-Line Interface .....	24
Setting Up UNIX to Run PeopleSoft Data Mover .....	24
Setting Up Tracing .....	25
Running Data Mover Scripts from the Command Line .....	26
Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Commands .....	29
CHANGE_ACCESS_PASSWORD .....	29
CREATE_TEMP_TABLE .....	29
CREATE_TRIGGER .....	30
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD .....	30
EXPORT .....	31
IMPORT .....	32
REM, REMARK, and -- .....	34
RENAME .....	34
REPLACE_ALL .....	37
REPLACE_DATA .....	37
REPLACE_VIEW .....	38
RUN .....	38
SET .....	39
SET BASE_LANGUAGE .....	39
SET IGNORE_ERRORS .....	40
SET COMMIT .....	40
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE .....	41
Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Command Modifiers .....	42
AS .....	42
IGNORE_DUPS .....	44
UPDATE_DUPS .....	44
WHERE .....	45
Using SET Parameters .....	46
COMMIT .....	46
CREATE_INDEX_BEFORE_DATA .....	46
DBSPACE .....	46
DDL .....	48
EXECUTE_SQL .....	48
EXTRACT .....	49
IGNORE_DUPS .....	49
INPUT .....	50
INSERT_DATA_ONCE .....	50

LOG .....	51
NO DATA .....	52
NO INDEX .....	52
NO RECORD .....	52
NO SPACE .....	53
NO TRACE .....	53
NO VIEW .....	54
OUTPUT .....	54
SIZING SET .....	55
SPACE .....	55
START .....	56
STATISTICS .....	56
UNICODE .....	57
VERSION .....	57
Using Script Examples .....	58
Exporting Databases .....	58
Building Databases .....	58
Recreating All Views .....	58
Importing with REPLACE_ALL with a Commit Level .....	59
Combining SQL Commands and IMPORT .....	59

## Chapter 3

<b>Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager .....</b>	<b>61</b>
Understanding PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager .....	61
Understanding Archiving Strategy .....	62
Archiving Strategy .....	63
History Tables .....	63
Understanding Archiving Techniques .....	64
Business Requirements Analysis .....	65
Commits .....	65
Enhancing Performance .....	65
Index Considerations .....	65
Data Limitations .....	66
Accessing the Data Archive Manager Homepage .....	66
Managing Archive Objects .....	68
Understanding the Base Table and Non-base Tables .....	68
Page Used to Manage Archive Objects .....	68
Managing Archive Objects .....	68
Defining Archive and Restore Queries .....	69
Managing Archive Templates .....	69
Page Used to Manage Archive Templates .....	69
Managing Archive Templates .....	69

Managing Archive Jobs .....	72
Pages Used to Manage Archive Jobs .....	72
Defining Archive Jobs .....	72
Viewing Details .....	75
Defining Archive Query Binds .....	76
Auditing Archive Processes .....	76
Page Used to Audit Archive Processes .....	76
Audit Archiving .....	76

## Chapter 4

<b>Ensuring Data Integrity .....</b>	<b>79</b>
Understanding Data Integrity Tools .....	79
Running SQL Alter .....	79
Understanding Table and Column Audits .....	80
Running DDDAUDIT .....	81
DDDAUDIT Queries .....	81
Running SYSAUDIT .....	83
Understanding How to Run SYSAUDIT .....	84
Application Engine Integrity .....	86
Clear List Integrity .....	89
Connected Query Integrity .....	91
EDI Manager Integrity .....	93
Feeds Integrity .....	95
Field Integrity .....	99
Integration Broker Integrity .....	99
Menu Integrity .....	104
Optimization Integrity .....	104
Page Integrity .....	107
PeopleCode Integrity .....	109
Process Scheduler .....	114
Query Integrity .....	116
Record Integrity .....	121
Related Language Integrity .....	124
Security Integrity .....	127
SQL Integrity .....	135
Style Sheet Integrity .....	137
Tree Integrity .....	138
Translate Integrity .....	146
PSLOCK Version Integrity .....	146
XML Publisher for PeopleSoft Integrity .....	146

## Chapter 5

<b>Employing Database Level Auditing .....</b>	<b>149</b>
Understanding Database Level Auditing .....	149
Creating Audit Record Definitions .....	150
Working With Auditing Triggers .....	153
Defining Auditing Triggers .....	153
Creating and Running the Auditing Triggers Script .....	154
Deleting Auditing Triggers .....	155
Viewing Audit Information .....	155
Creating Queries to View Audit Records Details .....	157
Creating an Access Group .....	157
Listing All Audit Records in PS_AUDIT_JOB .....	157
Listing All Audit Records for a Specified User ID .....	158
Listing All Audit Records Containing an Invalid OPRID .....	159
Listing All Audit Records for a Specified Time Period .....	161
Using Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Information .....	162
Using Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Syntax .....	162
Using Microsoft SQL Server to Capture Text/Image Columns .....	164
Administering Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Maintenance .....	166
Using DB2 UDB for z/OS Trigger Information .....	167
Understanding DB2 z/OS Trigger Information .....	167
Assembler Program AUDIT01 for DB2 z/OS .....	168
User-Defined Function (External Scalar) Requirements .....	175
Sample DB2 UDB Syntax to Create UDF Function AUDIT01 .....	175
Verifying Status of UDF Function .....	176
Verifying Monitor Trace Setting .....	176
DB2 z/OS Trigger Syntax .....	176
DB2 z/OS Trigger Maintenance .....	177
Using DB2 UDB for Linux, Unix, and Windows (LUW) Trigger Information .....	178
DB2 LUW Trigger Syntax .....	178
DB2 LUW Trigger Maintenance .....	180
Using Oracle Trigger Information .....	180
Using Oracle Trigger Syntax .....	180
Maintaining Oracle Triggers .....	182
Using Sybase Trigger Information .....	185
Using Sybase Trigger Syntax .....	185
Using Sybase Trigger Maintenance .....	186

## Chapter 6

<b>Working With The Diagnostics Framework .....</b>	<b>189</b>
Understanding Diagnostics Framework .....	189
What Is the Diagnostics Framework? .....	189
Diagnostics Framework Benefits .....	189
Diagnostics Framework Architecture .....	190
Setting Up Security for Diagnostics Framework .....	191
Understanding Security for Diagnostics Framework .....	192
Granting Access to the Diagnostics Framework Pages .....	192
Granting Access to the WEBLIB_PTDIAG Web Library .....	193
Running Diagnostics .....	193
Launching Diagnostic Plug-Ins .....	193
Providing Additional Information For Diagnostic Plug-ins .....	195
Obtaining Diagnostic Results .....	196
Importing Post-Release Plug-Ins .....	200

## Chapter 7

<b>Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins .....</b>	<b>201</b>
Understanding Diagnostic Plug-In Development .....	201
Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins .....	202
Creating the Diagnostic Application Package .....	202
Creating the Diagnostic Application Classes .....	203
Implementing the Diagnostic PeopleCode .....	203
Registering the Diagnostic Plug-In .....	204
Sharing Diagnostic Definitions .....	205
Working With The Delivered PT_DIAGNOSTIC Application Package .....	206
PTDiagnostics Application Class .....	206
PTDiagnostics Class Methods .....	207
GetDiagnosticInfo .....	207
GetDynamicPrompt .....	208
GetUserInputByKey .....	208
InsertData .....	209
InsertQuestion .....	210
IsPlugIn .....	211
SetProperty .....	211
PTDiagnostics Class Properties .....	212
hasRowset .....	212
Purpose .....	213
Where .....	213



Diagnostic Plug-In Examples .....	214
Example: Rowset-Based Output .....	214
Example: String-Based Output .....	215
Example: Number-Based Output .....	216
Example: Prompting for Global Information Input .....	217
Example: Prompting for Global and Class-Level Information Input .....	220
Example: Joining Two Records .....	222
Example: Handling Constructor Failure .....	223
Example: Handling InsertData Method Failure .....	224
Example: Handling Dynamic Prompting Failure .....	225

## Appendix A

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Microsoft SQL Server .....</b>	<b>227</b>
Server Options .....	227
Delivered Configuration .....	227
Access ID .....	228
Service Packs and Quick Fix Enhancements (QFE) .....	228
Required Database Configuration .....	228
ANSI Nullability .....	229
Working with Functional Indexes .....	229
Database Collation Settings .....	229
Microsoft SQL Server Feature Considerations .....	230
Recovery Model .....	230
Nested Triggers .....	230
Auto Create Statistics and Auto Update Statistics .....	231
Automatic File Growth .....	231
Autoshrink .....	231
Read Committed Snapshot Isolation .....	231
File Management .....	232
Tempdb .....	233
Trace Flags .....	234
Database Monitoring .....	235

## Appendix B

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for z/OS .....</b>	<b>237</b>
Understanding DB2 UDB for z/OS Administration .....	237
Database Considerations .....	237
Concurrency .....	238
Monitoring Batch Programs .....	239
Understanding Batch Program Monitoring Tools .....	239

Enabling DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace .....	241
Enabling the PTPSQLRT Mainframe Statistics Report .....	241
Enabling Dynamic Explains .....	245
Enabling Parallelism .....	245
Enabling PeopleSoft SQL Trace .....	246
Enabling SQR Monitoring .....	249
Associating PeopleSoft Users with DB2 UDB Threads .....	251
Running COBOL .....	253
Understanding COBOL API and Meta SQL .....	253
Running COBOL Outside of Process Scheduler .....	253
Disabling Persistent Cursors .....	253
Administering SQR for z/OS .....	254
Understanding SQR on z/OS .....	254
Running SQRs Outside of Process Scheduler .....	255
Specifying Input and Output Files .....	255
Printing SQRs .....	257
Updating Statistics .....	257
Understanding %UpdateStats .....	258
Setting Up the IBM System Stored Procedure: DSNUTILS .....	258
Installing the Database Following the Enhanced Installation Path .....	259
Updating System Tables with Database and Tablespace Information .....	259
Activating %UpdateStats .....	260
Setting the Number of Temporary Tables .....	262
Creating Temporary Tables .....	262
Working with Alters on DB2 z/OS .....	263
Understanding Alters on DB2 z/OS .....	263
Advisory Reorg Pending and Rebuild Pending Status .....	264
Determining Whether A Tablespace or Index Is In A Pending Status .....	264
Tablespace Versioning .....	265
Determining When to Recycle Tablespace Version Numbers .....	266
Working with DB2 Tablespace Versioning and PeopleSoft Upgrades .....	267

## Appendix C

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows .....</b>	<b>269</b>
Understanding Administration on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows .....	269
Instances .....	270
Understanding Instances .....	270
SYSADM Authority and Security .....	271
Instances and Connectivity .....	272
Other Considerations .....	272
Configuration Parameters .....	273
Definition of Configuration Parameters .....	273

Useful Configuration Commands .....	273
Parameters Overview .....	274
Tablespaces .....	275
DDL Scripts .....	276
Using the PeopleSoft DMS Tablespace DDL .....	276
DMS Tablespaces: Cooked or Raw .....	277
System Catalog Tablespace and Other Initial Tablespaces .....	277
Optimizing Table Space Capacity With Auto-Resize .....	277
Temporary Table Creation .....	280
Client Database Catalog .....	281
Meta-SQL %TruncateTable() .....	281
Handling Errors .....	282
DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows Administration .....	282
Updating Statistics .....	283
Performing Queries on a Windows Workstation .....	283
Object Restrictions .....	283
Administrative Tools .....	284
Connectivity Using ODBC/CLI .....	284
Checklists and Troubleshooting .....	285
Connectivity Checklist .....	285
Diagnosing Transaction Hangs .....	286
DB2DIAG.LOG .....	287
ODBC Trace .....	287
db2trc .....	287
DB2 UDB Help Facility .....	288
Monitoring Module Information .....	288

## Appendix D

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Informix .....</b>	<b>289</b>
Database Terminology .....	289
Working With Dbspaces .....	289
Dbpace Strategy .....	290
Dbpace Sizing .....	290
Database Server Directory Structure .....	292
Troubleshooting Model .....	293

## Appendix E

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Oracle .....</b>	<b>295</b>
Working With Oracle Connectivity .....	295
NET10g/11g .....	295

PeopleSoft Servers and the Oracle Connection String .....	296
Open Cursors .....	298
Monitoring PeopleSoft Database Connections .....	298
Understanding PeopleSoft Database Connections .....	298
Enabling Database Connection Monitoring .....	299
Tracking PeopleSoft Database Connections by PeopleSoft User ID .....	299
Monitoring PeopleSoft MODULE and ACTION Information .....	312
Exposing PeopleSoft User Information Through the CLIENT_IDENTIFIER Column .....	314
Setting the Number of Temporary Tables .....	315
Using Locally Managed Tablespaces .....	316
Working With Oracle Consumer Groups .....	317
Reviewing PeopleSoft Resource Groups .....	317
Determining Where to Implement a Consumer Group .....	321
Creating an Oracle Resource Plan and Consumer Groups .....	321
Example: Creating PeopleSoft Resource Plan and Consumer Groups SQL Script .....	322
Mapping PeopleSoft Resource Groups to Oracle Consumer Groups .....	323
Implementing Oracle Transparent Data Encryption .....	324
Understanding Transparent Data Encryption .....	325
Determining Fields to Encrypt .....	326
Managing the Oracle Wallet .....	326
Setting the Encryption Algorithm .....	328
Encrypting Fields .....	328
Managing Fields Encrypted for TDE .....	329
Protecting and Managing PeopleSoft Applications with Database Vault .....	330
Understanding Oracle Database Vault .....	330
Restricting Access For the Access ID .....	331
Restricting Access For PSFTDBA ID .....	332
Using Multiple Alternate Access IDs .....	333
Working With Oracle 11g Security Features .....	334
Understanding Default Profiles .....	334
Encountering Issues Related to Oracle 11g Security .....	336
Oracle 11g Security Configuration Options .....	337
Working With Oracle Transparent Application Failover .....	340
End-User System Behavior With TAF Configured .....	341
Batch System Behavior With TAF Configured .....	341
Implementing Oracle Active Data Guard .....	342
Understanding Active Data Guard Within PeopleSoft .....	342
Installing and Configuring Oracle Active Data Guard .....	344
Creating the Secondary Access ID .....	344
Creating the Domain Boot User .....	345
Creating Synonyms and Database Links .....	345
Configuring Domains .....	346
Configuring Read-Only Components .....	347
Configuring Read-Only Processes .....	348

## Appendix F

<b>Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Sybase .....</b>	<b>349</b>
Required Configuration .....	349
Server Options .....	349
Database options .....	350
Trace Options .....	351
Trace Flags in PeopleSoft Tools .....	351
Sybase API-Specific Tracing .....	351
Other Considerations .....	352
Database Monitoring .....	352
Device Management .....	353
Caches .....	353
Segments .....	353
Tempdb .....	353
Network Packet Size .....	354
Updating Statistics .....	355

## Appendix G

<b>Configuring Remote Data Access .....</b>	<b>357</b>
Understanding Remote Data Access .....	357
Configuring Application Servers and Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access for Informix ..	357
Configuring Application Servers or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access for Oracle .....	358
Preparing to Configure Oracle Remote Data Access .....	358
Configuring Oracle Connectivity for Remote Data Access on UNIX .....	358
Configuring Oracle Connectivity for Remote Data Access on Windows .....	359
Configuring Application Servers or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access with DB2 UDB ..	359
Configuring Remote Data Access for DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows .....	359
Configuring Remote Data Access for DB2 UDB for z/OS .....	360
Configuring Application or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access with Sybase .....	360
Installing and Configuring the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC Driver .....	360

## Appendix H

<b>Archive Data Tool (Deprecated in PeopleTools 8.44) .....</b>	<b>363</b>
Creating and Designing Archive Templates .....	363
Pages Used to Create and Design Archive Templates .....	363
Specifying Fields and Archival Criteria .....	364

Joining Record Criteria .....	365
Generating and Editing SQL .....	366
Working With the Archives .....	368
Pages Used to Work with the Archives .....	368
Granting Access Rights .....	368
Administering Archive Projects .....	369
Working With Archive Data .....	370
Pages Used to Work with Archive Data .....	371
Finding Data That Meets Your Criteria .....	371
Creating Scripts to Move Data .....	372
Viewing and Editing Scripts .....	374
Running Data Archival Processes .....	375
Pages Used to Run Data Archival Processes .....	375
Beginning the Archiving Process .....	375
Exporting Data From Online Tables to Flat Files .....	377
Exporting Data From History Tables to Flat Files .....	379
Restoring Archived Data Using Staging Tables .....	380
Running Data Archival Reports and Audits .....	381
Understanding Archive Reports and Audits .....	381
Pages Used to Run Data Archival Reports and Audits .....	381
Running Archive Reports .....	382
Creating an Audit Inquiry .....	383
Viewing Audit Results .....	384

## Appendix I

<b>Mass Change .....</b>	<b>385</b>
Understanding Mass Change .....	385
Defining Types .....	386
Generating SQL .....	390
Defining Templates .....	391
Selecting Prompt Tables .....	392
Configuring Date and Datetime Formatting .....	393
Building Mass Change Definitions .....	393
Creating Groups .....	395
Executing Mass Change Definitions .....	396
Executing Online .....	396
Executing in the Background .....	396
Performing Mass Changes in PeopleSoft Asset Management .....	397
Downloading and Uploading Data with Mass Change .....	397

**Index ..... 399**





# Data Management Preface

This preface provides an overview of the content discussed in the Data Management PeopleBook.

---

## Data Management

This PeopleBook covers a wide range of different applications, tools, and techniques for managing data and databases on your PeopleSoft system, including:

- PeopleSoft Data Mover.
- PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager.
- Data integrity and auditing.
- Diagnostics Framework.
- Administration for supported database platforms.
- Remote data access.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft supports a number of versions of UNIX and Linux in addition to Microsoft Windows. Throughout this book, there are references to operating system configuration requirements. Where necessary, this book refers to specific operating systems by name (for example, Solaris, HP/UX, Linux, etc.); however, for simplicity the word UNIX is used to refer to all UNIX-like operating systems, including Linux.

---

---

## PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library

A companion PeopleBook called *PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library* contains general information, including:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft online library and related documentation.
- How to send PeopleSoft documentation comments and suggestions to Oracle.
- How to access hosted PeopleBooks, downloadable HTML PeopleBooks, and downloadable PDF PeopleBooks as well as documentation updates.
- Understanding PeopleBook structure.
- Typographical conventions and visual cues used in PeopleBooks.
- ISO country codes and currency codes.
- PeopleBooks that are common across multiple applications.
- Common elements used in PeopleBooks.

- Navigating the PeopleBooks interface and searching the PeopleSoft online library.
- Displaying and printing screen shots and graphics in PeopleBooks.
- How to manage the locally installed PeopleSoft online library, including web site folders.
- Understanding documentation integration and how to integrate customized documentation into the library.
- Application abbreviations found in application fields.

You can find *PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library* in the online PeopleBooks Library for your PeopleTools release.

## Chapter 1

# Getting Started with Data Management

This chapter provides an overview of data management and discusses data management implementation.

---

## Data Management Overview

This section discusses:

- PeopleSoft Data Mover.
- PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager.
- Data integrity and auditing.
- Diagnostics Framework.
- Database platform considerations.

## PeopleSoft Data Mover

PeopleSoft Data Mover is a stand-alone two-tier program, which you can run through a graphical interface on Microsoft Windows, or a with a command line interface on either Microsoft Windows or UNIX systems.

PeopleSoft Data Mover enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Transfer application data between PeopleSoft databases.
- Move PeopleSoft databases across operating systems and database platforms.
- Execute Structured Query Language (SQL) statements against any PeopleSoft database, regardless of the underlying operating system or database platform.
- Export data in a platform independent manner.
- Control database security and access.
- Create, edit, and run scripts which combine SQL commands and PeopleSoft Data Mover commands for exporting and importing data.

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," page 7.](#)

## PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager

In any enterprise application, the ability to purge and archive transactional data is critical to data management. You need to have consistent methods to archive transactional data before your database increases to unmanageable sizes. PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager provides an integrated and consistent framework for archiving data from PeopleSoft applications.

Using a predefined template, you can select any queries and multiple objects that meet your archiving requirements. Leveraging the Archive Query in PeopleSoft Query, you can easily define your archive template. To better manage the archive process, you don't have to make any commits to the database until the entire batch has completed.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager replaces a deprecated feature (Archive Data) used in PeopleSoft 8.40 through 8.43, which is discussed in an appendix of this PeopleBook.

---

### See Also

[Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," page 61](#)

[Appendix H, "Archive Data Tool \(Deprecated in PeopleTools 8.44\)," page 363](#)

## Data Integrity and Auditing

PeopleSoft provides several features to ensure the integrity of the data that is stored in your PeopleSoft system.

### *Data Integrity Tools*

You might want to use the provided data integrity tools during upgrades and system customizations, to verify the PeopleSoft system and check how it compares to the actual SQL objects. The data integrity tools are:

- SQL Alter.

The primary purpose of the Application Designer SQL Alter function is to bring SQL tables into accordance with PeopleTools record definitions. You can run SQL Alter in an audit-only mode that alerts you to discrepancies between record definitions and SQL tables, but that doesn't actually perform an alter.

- DDDAUDIT.

The Database Audit Report (DDDAUDIT) finds inconsistencies between PeopleTools record and index definitions and the database objects. This audit consists of nine queries: four on tables, two on views, and three on indexes.

- SYSAUDIT.

The System Audit (SYSAUDIT) identifies orphaned PeopleSoft objects and other inconsistencies within the system. An example of an orphaned object is a module of PeopleCode that exists, but which does not relate to any other objects in the system. You can use SYSAUDIT to audit a variety of different aspects of your PeopleSoft system.

See [Chapter 4, "Ensuring Data Integrity," page 79](#).

### ***Trigger-Based Database Level Auditing***

PeopleSoft provides trigger-based auditing functionality as an alternative to the record-based auditing that Application Designer provides. Some countries require that you audit changes to certain data, while some companies audit who is making changes to sensitive data. This level of auditing is not only for maintaining the integrity of the data, but it is also a heightened security measure. PeopleSoft takes advantage of database triggers (offered by most database vendors), and when a user makes a change to a specified field that you are monitoring, the changed data triggers the audit.

The information that a trigger records could include the user that made a change, the type of change that is made, when the change is made, and so on.

See [Chapter 5, "Employing Database Level Auditing," page 149.](#)

## **Diagnostics Framework**

PeopleSoft provides a framework for defining and retrieving application data diagnostics within the PeopleSoft Internet Architecture (PIA) environment. Diagnostics Framework retrieves diagnostic information from a PeopleSoft database. With this diagnostic information, you can:

- Discover problematic application-related data.
- Explore setup details.
- Present information to PeopleSoft support in a common format.

Using Diagnostics Framework, you can perform diagnostic tests on your system with minimal instructions from the PeopleSoft Support team. These tests answer application-specific questions to help development and user support teams diagnose and troubleshoot any problems that you may be experiencing.

The tests can request additional parameters to tailor the diagnostics to your situation. They output HTML pages that you can open using any PeopleSoft-supported browser, and XML documents containing the same information in a form suitable for programmatic processing. You can email the HTML or XML documents to an application expert.

See [Chapter 6, "Working With The Diagnostics Framework," Importing Post-Release Plug-Ins, page 200.](#)

See [Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," page 201.](#)

## **Database Platform Considerations**

PeopleSoft supports a wide range of database platforms. Because each relational database management system (RDBMS) implements certain capabilities in a unique manner, there are some differences in the way you administer them. This PeopleBook includes appendices that provide specific guidelines for administering the following supported platforms:

- Microsoft SQL Server.
- DB2 UDB for z/OS.
- DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows.
- Informix.

- Oracle.
- Sybase.

---

**Note.** *DB2 UDB for z/OS* is the official IBM name for the DBMS. For the sake of brevity, this PeopleBook sometimes refers to DB2 UDB for z/OS as *DB2 z/OS*, and it sometimes refers to DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows as *DB2 LUW*.

---

### **See Also**

[Appendix A, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Microsoft SQL Server," page 227](#)

[Appendix B, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for z/OS," page 237](#)

[Appendix C, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows," page 269](#)

[Appendix D, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Informix," page 289](#)

[Appendix E, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Oracle," page 295](#)

[Appendix F, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Sybase," page 349](#)

[Appendix G, "Configuring Remote Data Access," page 357](#)

---

## **Data Management Implementation**

The functionality of data management for your PeopleSoft applications is delivered as part of the standard installation of PeopleTools, which is provided with all PeopleSoft products.

Several activities must be completed before you manage the data for your implementation:

1. Install your PeopleSoft application according to the installation guide for your database platform.

*See PeopleSoft Installation Guide for your platform and product line.*

2. Establish a user profile that gives you access to Application Designer and any other tools and processes that you'll use.

*See PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Security Administration.*

### **Other Sources of Information**

This section provides information to consider before you begin to manage your data. In addition to implementation considerations presented in this section, take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides, release notes, and PeopleBooks.

**See Also**

"Data Management Preface," page xvii

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Getting Started with Enterprise PeopleTools*





## Chapter 2

# Using PeopleSoft Data Mover

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft Data Mover and Data Mover scripts, and discusses how to:

- Use the development environment.
- Create and run PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts.
- Use the Database Setup utility.
- Use the PeopleSoft Data Mover command-line interface.
- Use PeopleSoft Data Mover commands.
- Use PeopleSoft Data Mover command modifiers.
- Use SET parameters.
- Use script examples.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft supports a number of versions of UNIX and Linux in addition to Microsoft Windows. Throughout this chapter, we make reference to operating system configuration requirements. Where necessary, this chapter refers to specific operating systems by name. However, for simplicity the word UNIX refers to all UNIX-like operating systems, including Linux.

---

---

## Understanding PeopleSoft Data Mover

This section discusses:

- PeopleSoft Data Mover overview.
- PeopleSoft Data Mover environment.
- PeopleSoft Data Mover operating modes.

### PeopleSoft Data Mover Overview

PeopleSoft Data Mover enables you to:

- Transfer application data between PeopleSoft databases.
- Move PeopleSoft databases across operating systems and database platforms.

- Execute Structured Query Language (SQL) statements against any PeopleSoft database, regardless of the underlying operating system or database platform.
- Control database security and access.
- Create, edit, and run scripts.

These scripts may include any combination of SQL commands and PeopleSoft Data Mover commands for exporting and importing data.

---

**Note.** Data in PeopleSoft databases generally can't be directly transferred between major releases using PeopleSoft Data Mover. For example, you can't import data from a PeopleTools 7.x database into a PeopleTools 8.x database.

---

## PeopleSoft Data Mover Environment

There are two ways to run PeopleSoft Data Mover:

- Using the Data Mover development environment.

This is a graphical user interface (GUI), which runs only in Microsoft Windows. Use the Data Mover shortcut in the PeopleSoft program group. Select Start, Programs, *your\_PSFT\_program\_group*, Data Mover.

- Using the Data Mover command-line interface.

The command-line interface is intended mainly for UNIX servers. You run PeopleSoft Data Mover from a console in Microsoft Windows and from a telnet session in UNIX.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft Data Mover runs in two-tier mode only. You must sign in to the database directly, not through an application server.

---

You set Data Mover environment variables in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager on Windows and in the `psconfig.sh` for UNIX.

### See Also

Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Setting Up UNIX to Run PeopleSoft Data Mover, page 24

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager," Data Mover Directories

## PeopleSoft Data Mover Operating Modes

Operating modes determine how you are connected to the database. PeopleSoft Data Mover operating modes are:

- Regular mode.

Most of the time, you use regular mode. To sign in to regular mode, enter your PeopleSoft user ID and password during sign-in. In regular mode, all commands are valid.

- Bootstrap mode.

In bootstrap mode, you use a database access ID and password when signing in. Typically, you use bootstrap mode for database loading, because no PeopleSoft security tables are established yet. You also use bootstrap mode for running some security commands, such as ENCRYPT\_PASSWORD.

---

**Note.** In bootstrap mode, the following script commands are not valid: EXPORT and RENAME.

---

## Understanding Data Mover Scripts

This section discusses:

- Data Mover script commands.
- Supported SQL commands.
- Data Mover commands compared to SQL commands.
- Data Mover COMMIT statements.

## Data Mover Script Commands

This section discusses the valid PeopleSoft Data Mover commands that you can include in PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts.

PeopleSoft Data Mover commands are platform-independent and are unique to PeopleSoft Data Mover. You can use PeopleSoft Data Mover commands for importing, exporting, and other tasks, such as controlling the run environment, renaming fields and records, administering database security, and denoting comments

The following table describes the PeopleSoft Data Mover commands and the ways that you can indicate comments:

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD	Encrypt one or all user passwords (operator and access) defined in PSOPRDEFN for users.
EXPORT	Select record information and data from records and store the result set in a file. You can use the generated export file as input for migrating to another platform. This file is portable between ASCII and EBCDIC character sets, and also supports double-byte characters.
IMPORT	Insert data into tables using the information in an export file. If a tablespace or table does not exist, this command creates tablespace, table, and indexes for the record, using the information in the export file, and inserts the data.
REM, REMARK, and --	Indicate comment statements.

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
RENAME	Rename a PeopleSoft record, a field in one record, or a field in all records.
REPLACE_ALL	This is a variation of the IMPORT command. If a table already exists, use this command to drop the table and its indexes from the database. It then does the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. creates the table.</li> <li>2. creates any triggers.</li> <li>3. inserts the data.</li> <li>4. creates indexes.</li> </ol>
REPLACE_DATA	This is a variation of the IMPORT command. Delete data in existing tables and insert the corresponding data from the export file.
REPLACE_VIEW	Recreate specified views found in the database.
RUN	Run a specified .DMS file from within a PeopleSoft Data Mover script. The file cannot contain nested RUN commands.
SET	When a command is followed by valid SET parameters, it forms a statement that establishes the conditions under which PeopleSoft Data Mover runs the PeopleSoft Data Mover and SQL commands that follow.
SET IGNORE_ERRORS	(Optional) If this command is set, then all errors produced by the SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE command are ignored. Otherwise, the system stops on errors.
SET BASE_LANGUAGE	Swap individual language tables. You should swap individual tables only when there is an error with any of the tables after the SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE command.
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE	Swap all the language tables from PSRECDEFN.

**See Also**

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Commands, page 29](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Command Modifiers, page 42](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Using SET Parameters, page 46](#)

## Supported SQL Commands

With PeopleSoft Data Mover, you can use supported SQL commands in scripts on any supported database platform. Except as noted in the following discussion regarding standard SQL commands, you can use all of the supported SQL commands with the following Data Mover SET statements:

- SET LOG
- SET NO COMMIT
- SET NO TRACE

### ***Standard SQL Commands with DMS Scripts***

PeopleSoft Data Mover supports the following standard SQL commands:

- ALTER
- COMMIT
- CREATE
- DELETE
- DROP

---

**Note.** With DROP commands, any drop errors are ignored. The script continues, but the errors are reported in the log.

---

- GRANT
- INSERT

---

**Important!** INSERT cannot be used with SET NO COMMIT or SET NO TRACE.

---

- ROLLBACK
- UPDATE
- TRUNCATE

---

**Warning!** PeopleSoft Data Mover does not support SELECT statements, because they require a SQL FETCH function.

---

### ***Standard SQL Commands with SQL Files***

PeopleSoft Data Mover supports all SQL commands and other database-specific function calls that are supported by the database engine.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft Data Mover runs only files with the extension *.SQL*.

---

## Nonstandard SQL Commands

With PeopleSoft Data Mover, you can also use the following nonstandard SQL commands created by PeopleSoft: STORE and ERASE. Use the commands to change COBOL SQL statements in PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL.

The STORE command first deletes the existing stored statement from PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL, and then inserts the new statement using the following syntax:

```
STORE progname_type_stmtname
```

For example:

```
STORE PTPMAIN_S_MSGSEQ
SELECT MAX (MESSAGE_SEQ) , PROCESS_INSTANCE
  FROM PS_MESSAGE_LOG
  WHERE PROCESS_INSTANCE = :1
  GROUP BY PROCESS_INSTANCE
;
```

The ERASE command deletes one or all stored statements from PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL. When deleting a single statement, you use the *progname\_type\_stmtname* format as shown for STORE. For example:

```
ERASE PTPMAIN_S_MSGSEQ;
```

When deleting all SQL statements for a particular program, you include only the program name in the command line format. For example:

```
ERASE PTPMAIN;
```

## Expressing Dates and Time in SQL Used in Data Mover

When you need to express dates and time in Data Mover SQL statements, use PeopleSoft meta-SQL date and time constructs, such as %CURRENTDATEOUT, %CURRENTTIMEOUT, %CURRENTDATETIMEOUT, %DATEIN, %TIMEIN, and so on.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode Language Reference*, "Meta-SQL Elements."

## Truncating Tables

Occasionally, it is necessary to delete all the rows in a table from Data Mover. Data Mover supports the use of the TRUNCATE command. When used, Data Mover resolves the command to the current database syntax using PeopleTools meta-SQL constructs.

For best performance, using the TRUNCATE command is recommended, rather than performing a mass DELETE operation, which can encounter performance issues where large tables and triggers are involved.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode Language Reference*, "Meta-SQL Elements," %TruncateTable.

## Data Mover Commands Compared to SQL Commands

The following table shows the relationship between SQL and PeopleSoft Data Mover commands. *DDL* refers to data definition commands, which define the structure of a database. *DML* refers to data manipulation commands which define the contents of a database.

<b>Function</b>	<b>Command Type</b>	<b>Supported SQL Commands</b>	<b>Data Mover Commands</b>
Create tables, tablespaces, and indexes.	DDL	CREATE	IMPORT REPLACE_ALL
Create views.	DDL	CREATE	REPLACE_VIEW
Drop tables.	DDL	DROP	REPLACE_ALL
Modify tables.	DDL	ALTER	None
Modify PeopleSoft records.	DDL	None	RENAME
Delete <i>all</i> rows	DDL	TRUNCATE	None
Insert rows.	DML	INSERT STORE	IMPORT REPLACE_ALL REPLACE_DATA
Delete rows.	DML	DELETE ERASE	REPLACE_DATA
Update rows.	DML	UPDATE	None
Encrypt rows.	DML	None	ENCRYPT_PASSWORD
Select rows.	Query	None	EXPORT
Save or don't save changes.	Transaction	COMMIT ROLLBACK	SET (when used with COMMIT or NO COMMIT)
Control or run other PeopleSoft Data Mover commands.	Environment	None	SET RUN

<i>Function</i>	<i>Command Type</i>	<i>Supported SQL Commands</i>	<i>Data Mover Commands</i>
Denote an explanatory statement.	Comment	None	REM REMARK --

## PeopleSoft Data Mover COMMIT Statements

PeopleSoft Data Mover issues COMMIT statements after most successful SQL commands, except for EXPORT and IMPORT. For EXPORT and IMPORT, PeopleSoft Data Mover issues a COMMIT after each record. With IMPORT, a SET COMMIT *n* command performs a COMMIT after the system inserts every *n* rows.

If you are executing native SQL in PeopleSoft Data Mover, and no COMMIT statements exist in the SQL script, PeopleSoft Data Mover issues a COMMIT after each successful SQL statement. For example, if you run a PeopleSoft Data Mover script that contains three update commands, and the third command fails, the first and second update commands are committed, but the third command is not.

---

## Using the Development Environment

This section discusses how to:

- Sign in to the development environment.
- Navigate the Data Mover window.

## Signing In to the Development Environment

To start PeopleSoft Data Mover in the Windows development environment:

1. Select Start, Programs, PeopleSoft Group, Data Mover.

If you don't have a PeopleSoft Data Mover shortcut, you can add one to the desktop. The executable to launch is: *PS\_HOME\bin\client\winx86\psdmt.exe*

2. Sign in using the appropriate ID and password.

In regular mode, use a user ID and password. In bootstrap mode, use a system access ID and access password, such as SYSADM.

## Navigating the Data Mover Window

The PeopleSoft Data Mover interface consists of two horizontal panes: an input pane and an output pane. The input pane is on top.



The status bar at the bottom of the window provides the following information:

- Database name (for example, QEDMO, PT850HR, and so on).
- Database type (for example, Oracle, Sybase, and so on).
- Operating mode (regular or bootstrap).
- Trace status (on or off).

The input pane displays the script that you open. In this pane, you view and edit PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts.

The output window displays the results after running a script. If you encounter any errors, the output window shows where the script failed. In a multidatabase environment, always check the information at the top of the output to ensure that you run the script against the appropriate database. Specifically, verify the information on the Database line.

---

**Note.** By default, the results in the output window are saved to the file DATAMOVE.LOG, which is written to the default log directory as specified in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager (on the Edit Profile, Common tab). You can specify a different file name.

---

The status of the SQL Trace utility appears on the right-hand end of the status bar. Use PeopleSoft Data Mover with tracing turned off. There are several ways to disable the SQL Trace utility (for the Microsoft Windows environment) before starting PeopleSoft Data Mover. You can use:

- PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.
- PeopleTools options.
- A Data Mover command (NO TRACE).

The operating mode on the status bar indicates either regular mode or bootstrap mode. If you connect to the database in regular mode, the operating mode status is blank. The operating mode is bootstrap if you sign in using the access ID and password.

---

**Note.** Verify the mode that you are using. Most commands require regular mode to run successfully.

---

### **See Also**

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Using SET Parameters, page 46](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," NO TRACE, page 53](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," PeopleSoft Data Mover Operating Modes, page 8](#)

---

## **Creating and Running PeopleSoft Data Mover Scripts**

This section provides overviews of command types and syntax rules and discusses how to:

- Create and edit scripts.

- Prepare to run export scripts.
- Run scripts.

## Understanding Command Types

A PeopleSoft Data Mover script can contain two types of commands:

- Data Mover commands.

Use these commands to export and import database information and to otherwise modify the database. PeopleSoft Data Mover commands also control script execution, call other PeopleSoft Data Mover files, and indicate comments.

- SQL commands.

You can use both standard and nonstandard SQL commands that modify the database.

## Understanding Syntax Rules

To create or edit PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts, follow these syntax rules to ensure that the commands run successfully.

### ***Delimiters***

With the exception of double-hyphen (--) comment statements, every command statement must be followed by a delimiter.

Valid delimiters are:

- Semicolon (;)

A semicolon can appear on the same line as the command itself, or by itself on the line immediately following a command statement. For example, the following two examples of the semicolon delimiter are valid:

```
SET OUTPUT c:\temp\abc.dat;  
SET LOG c:\temp\new.log  
;
```

- Forward slash (/)

This delimiter can be used only on a line by itself, in column 1, on a line immediately following a command statement. For example:

```
IMPORT *  
/
```

### ***Multiline Statements***

With the exception of double-hyphen (--) comment statements, statements can span multiple lines. For example:

```
EXPORT absence_hist  
WHERE absence_type = 'A';
```

### **Multiline Comments**

A double-hyphen (--) comment statement does not require a delimiter termination. However, each statement can't span more than one line. Be sure to add a space after the double hyphen before you start the comment. For example:

Correct:

```
-- This script imports the information stored in  
-- the ABC.DAT file.
```

Incorrect:

```
--This script imports the information stored in  
the ABC.DAT file.
```

### **White Space**

Command statements can contain any amount of white space between items.

### **Case Sensitivity**

Statement text is not case-sensitive. For example,

```
IMPORT *
```

is equivalent to

```
import *
```

### **String Constants**

String constants are case-sensitive and must be surrounded by single quotation marks. For example, 'ABC' is treated differently than 'Abc' or 'abc'.

### **Record Names and Table Names**

In PeopleSoft Data Mover, when a record name needs to be specified as one of the elements in the command statement syntax, as in an IMPORT statement, you can specify either the record name or the corresponding table name. For example, the following IMPORT statements are equivalent:

Correct:

```
IMPORT job;
```

Correct:

```
IMPORT ps_job;
```

However, when a table name is required for one of the elements in the command statement syntax, you must use the table name, not the record name. For example:

Correct:

```
IMPORT job AS ps_process;
```

Incorrect:

```
IMPORT job AS process;
```

## Creating and Editing Scripts

When you use PeopleSoft Data Mover to manipulate the information in a database, you can either write a new script or open and edit an existing script that is similar to the one that you want to create.

The default file extension for scripts is *.DMS*, which stands for *Data Mover script*.

### ***Creating a New Script***

To create a new script:

1. Select File, New.

When you first launch PeopleSoft Data Mover, a new file appears automatically. .

2. Enter the script text (that is, the code) in the input pane, which appears on top.

Using proper Data Mover syntax, enter the command statements that you want the script to run.

3. Save the script.

Select File, Save. In the Save As dialog box, select the Save as Unicode check box (if appropriate) and click Save.

### ***Editing an Existing Script***

To edit an existing PeopleSoft Data Mover script:

1. Select File, Open.
2. Select the file and click OK.

By default, you view only *.DMS* files. You can select *All Files* from the Files of type drop-down list box to view all file types. After you open a script, it appears in the PeopleSoft Data Mover input pane.

3. Modify the script.

If the file that you opened is not a *.DMS* file, verify that it conforms to the required syntax rules and that it doesn't contain unsupported SQL commands.

4. Save the script with a new name.

Select File, Save As.

In the Save As dialog box, enter a file name, select the Save as Unicode check box (if appropriate) and click Save.

If the script is edited in Unicode format, then the default save is Unicode. However, if the file is opened in ASCII format, then the default is ASCII.

**See Also**

Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Understanding Data Mover Scripts, page 9

Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Understanding Syntax Rules, page 16

## Preparing to Run Export Scripts

Before running a PeopleSoft Data Mover export script, you must first prepare the database.

To prepare for an export:

1. Load DDL model information by running all DDL\*.DMS files through PeopleSoft Data Mover.
2. To change the DDL model information, use the DDL Model Defaults utility in PeopleTools Utilities.
3. Run DDDAUDIT.SQR and fix any errors that it finds.
4. Run SYSAUDIT.SQR and fix any errors that it finds.
5. Use the SQL Alter function in Application Designer to alter all tables.

Either let the files alter in place or run the script that it generates to alter any tables that it marks as out of synchronization.

6. Use the SQL Create function in Application Designer to create all records, using the *If table exists ... Never recreate* option.

**See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration, "Using PeopleTools Utilities"*

Chapter 4, "Ensuring Data Integrity," page 79

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Application Designer Developer's Guide*

## Running Scripts

Through PeopleSoft Data Mover, you can run DDL, DML, and SQL scripts created with the following tools:

- PeopleSoft Data Mover (DMS scripts).
- Build SQL functionality in Application Designer (SQL scripts).
- Platform-specific SQL utilities (SQL scripts).

---

**Note.** You can also schedule PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts using PeopleSoft Process Scheduler. This can be useful in scheduling audit routines or extracting data from the PeopleSoft database. Additionally, logs and data files generated by PeopleSoft Data Mover can be posted to the report repository in PeopleSoft Process Scheduler so that they can be viewed either through Process Monitor or Report Manager.

---

When running scripts through PeopleSoft Data Mover, keep the following items in mind:

- Turn off the SQL Trace utility to run PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts.

If SQL Trace is enabled, disable it on the Trace tab in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager before you run the script. You can also enter the SET NO TRACE statement within scripts. This disables SQL Trace for the DMS script even if it is enabled in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.

- Records defined using the PeopleSoft Data Mover EXPORT and IMPORT commands can have a maximum of 500 columns, and they can have multiple long columns within the limitations for long columns set by the database platform.

Check with the database vendor for restrictions on the number of long columns allowed for the platform.

- On DB2 UDB platforms, locks can occur on system catalogs.

Do not run unattended PeopleSoft Data Mover sessions. Close the session as soon as all scripts terminate.

- To run a SQL script, you must open it by selecting File, Open so that the SQL runs properly.

Do not copy and paste SQL from another source into PeopleSoft Data Mover.

---

**Note.** If you plan to import or export files greater than 2 gigabytes (GB) on UNIX, you must enable large file support at the operating system level.

---

To run a script:

1. Select File, Open.
2. Select one of the following types of script to run.

- PeopleSoft Data Mover files (.DMS).

These are the files created using PeopleSoft Data Mover.

- Query files (.SQL).

These are the files created using the Build SQL functionality in Application Designer or using a query tool specific to a relational database management system (RDBMS), such as PL/SQL on Oracle.

- All files.

Select to view all available files in a directory. Only .DMS and .SQL files are valid file types for PeopleSoft Data Mover.

---

**Note.** SELECT commands are not supported. When performing upgrades, use the SQL utility for the platforms to run .SQL scripts, not PeopleSoft Data Mover.

---

3. Select File, Run.

You can monitor the script's progress in the output pane, which reveals any error messages and displays the message *Script Completed* when processing has ended.

## Using the Database Setup Utility

This section discusses how to:

- Access the Database Setup utility.
- Work with the Database Setup utility.
- Check the generated script.

Typically, you use the Database Setup utility during PeopleSoft installations and upgrades, not on a daily basis. You use this utility to create PeopleSoft Data Mover import scripts that load data into a PeopleSoft database.

---

**Note.** If you are performing an installation, use the documentation included in your PeopleSoft installation guide, which provide specific details regarding your applications, languages, and RDBMS. This section provides a general overview and is not specific to the installation procedure.

---

## Accessing the Database Setup Utility

To access the Database Setup utility:

1. Sign in to PeopleSoft Data Mover in bootstrap mode.

Use the access ID and password rather than your PeopleSoft user ID and password.

2. Select File, Database Setup.

---

**Note.** If you sign in to PeopleSoft Data Mover using regular mode, not bootstrap mode, the Database Setup menu item is not available.

---

## Working with the Database Setup Utility

This section discusses the dialog boxes that make up the utility.

### ***Database Setup***

<b>Select Target Database</b>	Select the RDBMS against which to run the database setup script. For instance, if the database that you are creating will run on an Oracle server, select <i>Oracle</i> .
<b>Database Type</b>	PeopleSoft supports non-Unicode (ANSI) and Unicode database types. Select the appropriate type for the system. For some RDBMS types, Unicode is not available.
<b>Select Character Set</b>	Select a character sets. Your choices vary depending on the database type that you selected.

## Select PeopleSoft Application

<b>PeopleSoft Application</b>	Only the applications that you have licensed appear. Select the applications for which you want to create PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts. To add applications selectively, use the Add button. To add all applications available, use the Add All button.
<b>Data Mover Scripts to Create</b>	Use the Remove button to remove a single application, or use the Remove All button to clear the list box.
<b>Database Type</b>	<p>Specify what the result of running the script should be. There are two database codes: <i>PT</i> for PeopleTools and <i>EP</i> for PeopleSoft applications. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Demo</i>: Select to create a demonstration database.</li> <li>• <i>System</i>: Select to create a system database.</li> <li>• <i>Add New Language</i>: Select to add support of new languages to an existing database.</li> <li>• <i>Add New Product</i>: Select to add a new PeopleSoft product to the current system. With this option selected, only non-PT database codes appear.</li> </ul>

## Database Parameters

<b>Database Name</b>	Enter the name of the database against which to run the script. The database name that appears is the database to which you are currently signed on. If the script that you are creating will be run against another database, specify the appropriate name here. If you generate a script for a database other than the current database, the system uses a default database using the following convention: <i>XXDMO</i> for demonstration databases and <i>XXSYS</i> for system databases. The <i>XX</i> represents the product code, such as <i>HR</i> .
<b>Symbolic ID</b>	Enter the ID used as the key to retrieve the access ID and access password. For initial installation, set it equal to the database name.
<b>Access ID</b>	This ID is the RDBMS ID with which PeopleSoft applications are ultimately connected to the database once the PeopleSoft system validates the user or connect ID. It typically has all the RDBMS privileges necessary to access and manipulate data for an entire PeopleSoft application.
<b>Access Password</b>	Enter the password associated with the access ID.
<b>Connect ID</b>	This ID is used for the initial connection to the database. Any two-tier connection requires a connect ID. A connect ID is a valid user ID, that when used during logon, sign-in takes the place of PeopleSoft user IDs for the sign-in process.



<b>Table Owner</b>	(DB2 UDB for z/OS) This field populates the CREATOR field in the system catalog table SYSIBM.SYSTABLES. You determine the name of the table owner ID during the initial installation.
<b>Index Storage Group</b>	(DB2 UDB for z/OS) Enter the storage group where the index spaces are created.
<b>Table Space Storage Group</b>	(DB2 UDB for z/OS) Enter the storage group for tablespaces. This value must be the same as that used in the XXDDL.SQL script when you create tablespaces during the installation.

## Checking the Generated Script

After running the Database Setup utility, check the output directory for the generated script. Some commands are added that call other scripts and perform various functions. These commands are added to reduce the number of scripts and commands that you must run manually. For example, note that the following commands appear at the end of the script:

- REPLACE\_VIEW

This command creates views for the new database.

- CREATE\_TEMP\_TABLE

This command creates any necessary temporary table images. The number of temporary tables is determined by the value for the Temp Table Instances setting in PeopleTools options (Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options) plus the number of PeopleSoft Application Engine temporary tables.

- SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE

If you selected a base language other than English, this command modifies the system to recognize that language as the base language. The default PeopleTools language is English if the PSSTATUS table is not available.

- RUN

This command runs the CURRXXX.DMS script to load the system with the appropriate currency information, and it runs MSGTLXXX.DMS to load the system with the appropriate PeopleTools messages (error and informational messages). The XXX represents the language code, such as FRA for French. The system runs these scripts only if you have selected a base language other than English.

---

**Note.** After each DDL create table, import data, and DDL create indexes command, PeopleSoft Data Mover issues an UPDATE STATISTICS command (except on z/OS), which improves the performance of subsequent commands, such as the REPLACE\_VIEW command.

---

### See Also

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," CREATE TEMP TABLE, page 29](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," SWAP BASE LANGUAGE, page 41](#)

---

## Using the PeopleSoft Data Mover Command-Line Interface

This section provides an overview of the PeopleSoft Data Mover command-line interface and discusses how to:

- Set up UNIX to run PeopleSoft Data Mover.
- Set up tracing.
- Run Data Mover scripts from the command line.

## Understanding the PeopleSoft Data Mover Command-Line Interface

The PeopleSoft Data Mover command-line interface enables you to run PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts from the command line in UNIX and Microsoft Windows environments. The command-line interface is designed only for running scripts, not creating and editing scripts. In Microsoft Windows, you create and edit scripts using the PeopleSoft Data Mover development environment. In UNIX, you can use any supported text editor.

When using the command-line interface, the results of the script run appear in the command-line window, much like the contents of the output pane in the PeopleSoft Data Mover GUI. The system also writes this information to the log file.

The PeopleSoft Data Mover command line supports the environment variable `$PS_HOME` on UNIX and `%PS_HOME%` on Windows.

---

**Note.** Although the command-line interface also runs on Windows machines, this documentation primarily discusses UNIX.

---

---

**Important!** The PeopleSoft Data Mover command line on UNIX is intended to increase performance with large database loads during installation. Use the PeopleSoft Data Mover Windows interface for other types of scripts.

---

## Setting Up UNIX to Run PeopleSoft Data Mover

Before running the PeopleSoft Data Mover command-line interface on UNIX, verify that Tuxedo is installed. Tuxedo is required for PeopleSoft Data Mover to run on UNIX.

Next, configure the `psconfig.sh` shell script to set the UNIX and PeopleTools environment variables properly for Data Mover, then run the script. You must run it from the `PS_HOME` directory.

---

**Note.** The UNIX environment requires certain platform-specific environment variables. These variables are set automatically, but you can reconfigure the `psconfig.sh` script file to change their values.

---

### **UNIX Environment Variables**

Data Mover environment variables for UNIX are stored in the `psconfig.sh` script. When you run `psconfig.sh`, several environment variables are automatically set to default values that reflect a standard PeopleSoft Data Mover install.

To modify them, you must edit `psconfig.sh` or manually change the environment.

<b>Statement</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>\$DM_HOME=\$HOME/PS_DM</code>	Data Mover output, log file and trace file path. This environment setting needs to point to a writable location in case of a secure, read-only PS_HOME environment.  The default setting is <code>\$HOME/PS_DM</code>
<code>PS_DM_DATA_IN=\$PS_HOME/data</code>	Specifies the directory where PeopleSoft Data Mover searches for input data (.DAT) files. The default setting is <code>\$PS_HOME/data</code> .
<code>PS_DM_DATA_OUT=\$DM_HOME/data</code>	Specifies the directory where PeopleSoft Data Mover writes the output data (.DAT) files. The default setting is <code>\$DM_HOME/data</code> .
<code>PS_DM_SCRIPT=script_path;export PS_DM_SCRIPT</code>	<code>\$PS_DM_SCRIPT</code> specifies the location of the PeopleSoft Data Mover script files. The default setting is <code>\$PS_HOME/scripts</code> .
<code>PS_DM_LOG=log_path;export PS_DM_LOG</code>	<code>\$PS_DM_LOG</code> specifies the location of PeopleSoft Data Mover log files. The default is <code>\$DM_HOME/log</code> , as in as in <code>\$HOME/PS_DM/log</code> .

---

**Note.** `$DM_HOME/log` is an environment variable for UNIX specifying a location to which Data Mover has write access in the case of a read-only PS\_HOME configuration.

---



---

**Note.** If you want to perform tracing under UNIX, you must set additional environment variables.

---

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Setting Up Tracing, page 25](#).

## Setting Up Tracing

To enable tracing for PeopleSoft Data Mover, you must set the `PS_SERVER_CFG` environment variable to point to the Data Mover configuration file, which contains parameters for tracing and character set:

- In Windows, you can set `PS_SERVER_CFG` in the System control panel, or issue the following command in a batch file or at a command prompt:

```
set PS_SERVER_CFG=%PS_HOME%\setup\psdmtx.cfg
```

- In UNIX, edit `psconfig.sh` to include the following statement:

```
PS_SERVER_CFG=$PS_HOME/setup/psdmtx.cfg;export PS_SERVER_CFG
```

To configure tracing for PeopleSoft Data Mover, you must edit the `psdmtx.cfg` file to specify the appropriate tracing behavior. Use the *TraceSql* bitfield parameter to set the level of the SQL trace by adding together the numeric values that represent each degree of tracing required. The values are defined as follows:

<b>Bit Value</b>	<b>Type of Tracing</b>
1	SQL statements.
2	SQL statement variables.
4	SQL connect, disconnect, commit and rollback.
8	Row Fetch (indicates that it occurred, not data).
16	All other API calls except ssb.
32	Set Select Buffers (identifies the attributes of columns to be selected).
64	Database API specific calls.
128	COBOL statement timings.
256	Sybase Bind information.
512	Sybase Fetch information.
4096	Manager information.
8192	Mapcore information.

For example, if you want to trace Sybase bind and fetch information, enter:

```
TraceSql=768
```

After running PeopleSoft Data Mover, look for the generated trace log file in *PS\_CFG\_HOME* \log\APPSRV.LOG.

For UNIX, the TraceFile environment variable enables you to configure the trace file path and name. The system only uses the TraceFile value when TraceSql is set to a value greater than 0. The default value of TraceFile is DM\_HOME/datamover.trc. For example,

```
TraceFile=%DM_HOME%/datamover.trc
```

## Running Data Mover Scripts from the Command Line

The PeopleSoft Data Mover command line program is located as follows:

- Microsoft Windows: *PS\_HOME*\bin\client\winx86
- UNIX: *PS\_HOME*/bin

At a command prompt, change to the program directory and issue the **psdmtx** command with the appropriate parameters.

## Standard Command Line Syntax

Use the following standard syntax to run most Data Mover scripts:

```
psdmtx -CT dbtype [-CS server] -CD database_name -CO user_ID -CP user_password
  [-CI connect_ID -CW connect_password] [-I process_instance]
-FP dms_filepath
```

The value of each parameter follows the parameter name, separated by zero or more spaces. It doesn't need to have quotation marks around it, even if it has internal spaces — the system treats all text following the parameter name as part of the value, up to the next parameter or the end of the command line.

The `-CS server` parameter is required only for the Informix and Sybase database platforms.

---

**Note.** You must enclose a value in quotation marks only when it includes a hyphen or forward slash, or to include leading or trailing spaces. If the value itself includes a quotation mark character, precede the double quote with a backslash (\).

---

To display a listing of all the command-line parameters and their arguments at the command prompt, enter:

```
psdmtx /help
```

## Standard Command Line Parameters

The following table lists the standard command-line parameters and arguments for running the **psdmtx** command:

Parameter	Argument	Example
-CT	Specify the database type. Valid values are DB2ODBC, DB2UNIX, INFORMIX, MICROSOFT, ORACLE, and SYBASE.  <b>Note.</b> Notice the spelling of MICROSOFT.  DB2ODBC is the database type for DB2 z/OS.	-CT ORACLE
-CS	(Optional) Specify the name of the database server for the database to which you're connecting.  <b>Note.</b> This parameter is required only if you specify INFORMIX or SYBASE as the database type.	-CS pt-sun05
-CD	Specify the name of the database to connect to, as you would when signing in to PeopleSoft.	-CD HR844DMO
-CO	Specify the PeopleSoft user ID you're using to sign in.	-CO JPHAM2
-CP	Specify the user password for the PeopleSoft user ID you specified.	-CP MYPASS

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Argument</b>	<b>Example</b>
-CI	(Optional) Specify the connect ID used to connect to the database server.  <b>Note.</b> This parameter is required only if you're running PeopleSoft Data Mover in regular mode.	-CI people
-CW	(Optional) Specify the password for the Connect ID you specified.  <b>Note.</b> This parameter is required only if you're running PeopleSoft Data Mover in regular mode.	-CW people
-I	(Optional) Specify the Process Scheduler process instance.  <b>Note.</b> This parameter is required only if you're running PeopleSoft Data Mover from PeopleSoft Process Scheduler. You generally enter the predefined meta-string %%INSTANCE%% in the process type definition, and PeopleSoft Process Scheduler inserts the correct value at runtime.  <i>See Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, "Defining PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Support Information," Pages Used to Define Process Type Definitions.</i>	-I %%INSTANCE%%
-FP	Specify the file name and path of the PeopleSoft Data Mover script to run.	-FP \$PS_HOME/scripts/test.dms
/help	No value required.	<b>psdmtx</b> /help

Following is an example of a standard **psdmtx** command line on a UNIX system:

```
psdmtx -CT DB2UNIX -CD FS845A1 -CO PSOFT -CP PSOFT
-CI people -CW people -FP fs845aldbo.dms
```

### Using a Parameter File

Rather than submitting parameters manually on the command line, you can have PeopleSoft Data Mover read a file that contains appropriate parameters. Create a text file that contains a complete set of parameters as you would enter them on the command line.

If you submit a parameter file name and path to PeopleSoft Data Mover as the first parameter in the command line, PeopleSoft Data Mover reads the contents of the file and interprets them as parameters entered on the command line. For example:

```
psdmtx c:\dms\myparmfile.txt
```

---

**Note.** You must enter the full path to the parameter file.

---

---

**Warning!** For security reasons, after PeopleSoft Data Mover interprets the contents, it immediately deletes the parameter file.

---

---

## Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Commands

This section provides the details of syntax and use for each of the PeopleSoft Data Mover commands. This section also discusses PeopleSoft Data Mover command modifiers, such as AS, WHERE, and IGNORE\_DUPS, which can be used to modify certain commands.

### CHANGE\_ACCESS\_PASSWORD

#### Syntax

`CHANGE_ACCESS_PASSWORD SymbolicIDnewAccessPswd`

#### Description

Use this command to reset the access password and make it transparent to users.

The CHANGE\_ACCESS\_PASSWORD command performs the following operations:

- Selects the ACCESSPSWD field from PSACCESSPRFL for the specified symbolic ID.
- Changes the access ID's database password to the new access password that you specify (for Oracle, Sybase and Microsoft SQL Server only).
- Updates PSACCESSPRFL for the specified symbolic ID with the new access password.

#### Parameters

LOG and NO TRACE

### CREATE\_TEMP\_TABLE

#### Syntax

`CREATE_TEMP_TABLE {record | *}`

#### Description

Creates temporary table images for use with PeopleSoft Application Engine programs. To customize the number of temporary tables, you need to modify the PeopleTools Options page or updated the PSOPTIONS table using the following SQL:

```
UPDATE PSOPTIONS SET TEMPTBLINSTANCES = number
```

You also need to review the number of temporary tables allotted for PeopleSoft Application Engine programs

---

**Note.** For security reasons, this command is disabled for z/OS.DMS scripts generated by the Database Setup utility.

---

## CREATE\_TRIGGER

### Syntax

```
CREATE_TRIGGER { * | recordname }
```

### Description

Creates database triggers on the specified table.

---

**Note.** If you use CREATE\_TRIGGER in bootstrap mode, the system automatically activates SET IGNORE ERROR. This enables PeopleSoft Data Mover to continue processing until all of the view definitions have been processed, and all errors have been written to the current .LOG file (or an error log file). This is similar to the REPLACE\_VIEW behavior.

---

## ENCRYPT\_PASSWORD

### Syntax

```
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD { userID | * } ;
```

### Description

Encrypts one or all user passwords (user passwords and access passwords). When encrypting a single user's password, the user ID must be present in PSOPRDEFN. You can use an asterisk instead of a name to encrypt all passwords in PSOPRDEFN.

### Parameters

LOG, NO COMMIT, and NO TRACE.

### Example

Here's an example of how to encrypt a single user password (FS) already listed in PSOPRDEFN:

```
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD FS ;
```

To encrypt all user passwords in PSOPRDEFN, enter:



```
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD *;
```

## EXPORT

### Syntax

```
EXPORT {record | *} [WHERE conditions];
```

### Description

Creates a single export file containing the specified database contents. The result set can contain any of the following: a single PeopleSoft record, a group of records, or the entire database. You can use the export file as input for the PeopleSoft Data Mover IMPORT command to migrate the data within the platform or to another platform.

---

**Note.** This command is not available in bootstrap mode.

---

Records exported using EXPORT can have a maximum of 500 total columns and multiple long columns within the limitations for long columns set by the database platform. Check with the database vendor for restrictions on the number of long columns allowed for the platform.

When you export all records using EXPORT\*, PeopleSoft Data Mover orders the records alphabetically (with the exception of PSLOCK, which is the last record exported). After each record, PeopleSoft Data Mover indicates how many records remain. After all the tables are exported, then the views are exported.

---

**Warning!** The WHERE clause, when used in this command, supports only US-ASCII (seven-bit ASCII) values. Characters beyond this range can produce errors in the export file.

---

### Parameters

LOG, NO COMMIT, NO DATA, NO TRACE, NO VIEW, and OUTPUT.

---

**Note.** SET NO VIEW is only valid with EXPORT \*.

---

---

**Note.** If SET OUTPUT is not used, PeopleSoft Data Mover writes to the default file name, DATAMOVE.DAT.

---

### Example

To export a single record, use an EXPORT command for the specific record. For example:

```
EXPORT PS_JOB;
```

---

**Note.** When specifying a particular record in the EXPORT command (as shown in the previous example), the specified record must be a table, not a view.

---

To export all PeopleSoft records, including views, enter

```
EXPORT * ;
```

### See Also

Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Command Modifiers, WHERE

## IMPORT

### Syntax

```
IMPORT {record | *} [IGNORE_DUPS]
      [AS new_table_name] [WHERE conditions];
```

### Description

The IMPORT command:

- creates database spaces.
- creates nonexisting tables and indexes.
- appends non-duplicate rows to records.
- creates views if the export file was created using EXPORT \* and imported using IMPORT \*.

---

**Warning!** All duplicate row-checking depends on the existence of a unique index. If no unique indexes are created before loading the data, there is a potential for duplicate data.

---

In the IMPORT statement, the AS clause is only valid if you specify a table name.

Using \* with AS or WHERE is allowed in cases where the imported data file consists *only* of a single table. For example,

```
IMPORT * AS table_name
```

If the data file consists of the more than one table when using \* AS or WHERE, the system returns the following error message:

Error: The Input File *file\_name* contains *number\_of\_records* records.

The table name that you specify immediately after the AS command modifier must not exceed 18 characters (including the *ps\_* prefix). If you do specify a table\_name that exceeds 18 characters, the following error appears: *Error: Unable to process create statement.*

See *and PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode API Reference*, "AESession Class," [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," WHERE](#), page 45.

Records defined using IMPORT can have a maximum of 500 columns with multiple long columns. The number of long columns allowed is determined by the limitations for long columns set by the database platform. Refer to your database vendor documentation for restrictions on the number of long columns allowed for the platform.

There are two variations of IMPORT that you can use:

- REPLACE\_ALL
- REPLACE\_DATA

## Parameters

All except OUTPUT.

INPUT is a required parameter.

---

**Note.** IGNORE\_DUPS is only valid in bootstrap mode.

---

## Example

To import a single record from an export file, use an IMPORT command for that record. For example:

```
SET INPUT file_name;  
IMPORT PS_JOB;
```

To import all PeopleSoft records from an export file, including views, enter:

```
SET INPUT file_name;  
IMPORT *;
```

## Globalization Considerations

PeopleSoft Data Mover offers a base-language-independent method for moving application data between databases. PeopleSoft Data Mover loads a single DAT file, detects the target database base language, and inserts the data into the correct base or related language table.

If Oracle provides a software fix, you don't need to swap the base language before importing it into a database with a different base language. For example, suppose that a fix is sent with the base language English (ENG) and the related language Japanese (JAP). In this case, you can import this file directly into a database where the base language is JAP and the related language is ENG.

Upon EXPORT, the system adds the LANGUAGE\_CD (language code) to the generated DAT file. For example:

```
SET BASE_LANGUAGE ENG
```

Then, when you use the IMPORT command to import the generated DAT file, the system detects the LANGUAGE\_CD in the DAT file and compares it with the LANGUAGE\_CD in the target database to determine how to swap the base language and related language tables.

---

**Note.** Base language is the database base language. It can be any PeopleSoft-supported language.

---

Consider the following points when running the IMPORT command:

- This feature is enabled whenever you import a DAT file.
- Running the IMPORT command may have an unavoidable adverse affect on performance.

**See Also**

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," REPLACE ALL, page 37](#)

[Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," REPLACE DATA, page 37](#)

**REM, REMARK, and --****Syntax**

```
REM comments;  
REMARK comments;  
-- comments
```

**Description**

Each of these three command variations indicates explanatory text in a PeopleSoft Data Mover script.

**Example**

Here are three examples demonstrating the use of each:

```
REM  This example demonstrates the use of the REM command to set off script  
    comments.  
    These statements can span multiple lines and must be terminated with a valid  
    delimiter;  
REMARK  The REMARK command variation has the same restrictions as REM  
/  
--  This example demonstrates the use of two dashes to denote script  
--  comments.  No delimiters are required, but statements can not  
--  exceed one line without using another double-dash.
```

When using a double hyphen (--), as in the third example, you need at least one space after the double hyphen, before the start of the actual text of the comment. Otherwise, you receive a syntax error.

When used in conjunction with a comment prefixed by REM or REMARK, the forward-slash delimiter (/) should be *by itself* on the last line of that comment. In such cases, instead of using a forward-slash (/), you can also use a semicolon (;) by itself on this last line. The forward slash (/) can also be used by itself without a REM or REMARK statement, in lieu of blank lines, which are also allowed in a script.

**RENAME****Syntax**

```
RENAME {RECORD record | FIELD {field | record.field}}  
AS new_name;
```

## Description

Renames a PeopleSoft record, a field in one record, or a field in all records.

---

**Note.** This command is not available in bootstrap mode.

---

**Warning!** Using RENAME only modifies a definition in the PeopleSoft tables. To write the record and field change to the system tables, you must use Application Designer to modify the affected definitions.

---

To rename a record field, you must qualify the original name of the field with the record name. If you don't qualify the record name, PeopleSoft Data Mover attempts to globally change the field name in all records.

Renaming a record field is only possible through PeopleSoft Data Mover.

To rename a record field:

1. Perform the rename in PeopleSoft Data Mover.

For example:

```
RENAME FIELD RECORD.FIELD AS NEWFIELD; COMMIT;
```

2. In Application Designer, create a project that includes the record that contains the field that you renamed, and save the project.

In the case of a subrecord field rename, the subrecord along with *all* tables that contain that subrecord must be inserted into the project.

3. Select Build, Settings.

- Select the Alter tab.
- Select Adds and Renames.
- Clear Changes and Deletes.

---

**Note.** Drop column and change column length do not apply.

---

- Select the Scripts tab and select output settings.
- Specify an output file and click OK.

4. Select Build, Project.

- Select Alter Tables (Create Indexes is selected by default).
- Click Build.
- Click Yes to continue the build process.

5. Run the generated SQL script using the query tool.

This adds the new field to the tables within the project.

---

**Note.** For subrecord field renames *only*, data is not automatically migrated from the old field to the new field. You will need to migrate this data manually.

---

To remove the old field from the tables:

1. In Application Designer, open the project that you created using the preceding steps.

- Select Build, Settings.
- Select the Alter tab.
- Select Drop column if data present.
- Select Deletes.
- Clear Adds and Renames.
- Select the Scripts tab.
- Give the output file a different name and click OK.

2. Select Build, Project.

- Select Alter Tables (Create Indexes is automatically selected).
- Click Build.
- Click Yes to continue the build process.

3. Run the generated SQL script using the query tool.

The old field should no longer appear on the tables included in the project.

## Parameters

LOG, NO COMMIT, and NO TRACE.

## Example

Here's an example of how to rename a record:

```
RENAME RECORD absence_hist AS absent_hist;
```

Here's an example of how to globally rename a field:

```
RENAME FIELD effdt AS currdate;
```

Here's an example of how to rename a recfield:

```
RENAME FIELD course_tbl.duration_days AS duration_d;
```

## REPLACE\_ALL

### Syntax

```
REPLACE_ALL {record | *}  
[AS new_table_name];
```

### Description

This is a variation of the IMPORT command. If a table already exists, use this command to drop the table and its indexes from the database. It then:

1. creates the table.
2. creates any triggers.
3. inserts data.
4. creates indexes.

In the REPLACE\_ALL statement, the AS clause is only valid if you specify a particular record. It is not valid and should not be used with REPLACE\_ALL \*.

The table name that you specify after the AS command modifier should not have more than 18 characters (including the *ps\_* prefix). Specifying a table name that is greater than 18 characters invokes the following error message: *Error: Unable to process create statement.*

---

**Note.** Records defined using REPLACE\_ALL can have a maximum of 500 total columns and multiple long columns within the limitations for long columns set by the database platform. Check with the database vendor for restrictions on the number of long columns allowed for the platform.

---

### Parameters

All except IGNORE\_DUPS and OUTPUT. INPUT is a required parameter.

## REPLACE\_DATA

### Syntax

```
REPLACE_DATA {record | *};
```

### Description

This command is a variation of the IMPORT command. Use it to delete data in existing tables and insert the corresponding data from the export file.

## Parameters

COMMIT, EXECUTE\_SQL, EXTRACT, INPUT, INSERT\_DATA\_ONCE, LOG, NO COMMIT, NO TRACE, NO VIEW, SIZING\_SET, SPACE, START, and VERSION. INPUT is a required parameter.

## REPLACE\_VIEW

### Syntax

```
REPLACE_VIEW {view | *};
```

### Description

Recreates one or all specified views in the database.

### Parameters

LOG, NO COMMIT, NO TRACE, and START.

---

**Note.** If you use REPLACE\_VIEW in bootstrap mode, the system automatically activates SET IGNORE ERROR. This enables PeopleSoft Data Mover to continue processing until all of the view definitions have been processed, and all errors have been written to the current .LOG file.

---

## RUN

### Syntax

```
RUN dms_file_name;
```

### Description

Runs a DMS file from within a script. The specified file can contain any supported SQL commands, PeopleSoft Data Mover commands, or SET statements, but it cannot contain any RUN commands.

The RUN command cannot contain a directory path. The RUN command uses the same directory as the current PeopleSoft Data Mover script in which RUN is used.



## SET

### Syntax

```
SET parameter_1;
SET parameter_2; ...
SET parameter_n;
```

### Description

The SET command, when combined with valid SET parameters, creates statements that establish the conditions under which PeopleSoft Data Mover runs a script.

A SET statement controls the processing environment for the commands in a script until another SET statement intervenes between commands. At that point, all SET parameters are reset to their default values.

### Example

```
SET LOG c:\temp\new.log
SET OUTPUT c:\temp\new.dat;
/
EXPORT absence_hist;
EXPORT employee_tbl
/
SET NO DATA
/
REMARK All other SET parameters will be reset to defaults at this point;
EXPORT bank_branch_tbl;
```

In the previous script, the specified log and output files (NEW.LOG and NEW.DAT) are used for the first two EXPORT commands. Then, because SET NO DATA interrupts the script commands, all other SET parameters are reset to their default values. So, for the third EXPORT and any subsequent PeopleSoft Data Mover or SQL commands, the log file used is the default log file, DATAMOVE.LOG, and the output file used is the default output file, DATAMOVE.DAT.

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," Using SET Parameters, page 46.](#)

## SET BASE\_LANGUAGE

### Syntax

```
SET BASE_LANGUAGE current_language_code;
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE recordname;
```

### Description

Use only when there is an error with any of the tables after the SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *new\_language\_code* command.

---

**Note.** Never run SET BASE\_LANGUAGE *current\_language\_code* and SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *recordname* commands before SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *new\_language\_code*.

---

## SET IGNORE\_ERRORS

### Syntax

```
SET IGNORE_ERRORS;  
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE language_code;
```

### Description

Use this command in conjunction with the SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE command.

### Example

Here's an example of how to swap one table (without the SET IGNORE\_ERRORS command, it stops on error):

```
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE DUT;
```

Here's an example of how to ignore all errors and swap all tables:

```
SET IGNORE_ERRORS;  
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE JPN;
```

When the SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE command is run after SET IGNORE\_ERRORS, the PSOPTIONS SET LANGUAGE\_CD is automatically updated with new base language, even if errors were recorded.

When the command has run, you should then examine the log and swap the individual record names that failed using SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *recordname* command

## SET COMMIT

### Syntax

```
Set COMMIT level;
```

### Description

Sets the commit level for inserting rows and not for DDL statements. If the level is set to 0, commits are only done when all rows for a record are inserted. Due to the expense of recompiling and rebinding after a commit, the default is 0.

---

**Note.** There are performance implications associated with the SET COMMIT command. For a large database with millions of rows, there is significant degradation in performance. However, for a small database, performance slows down somewhat. Run the SET COMMIT command only as necessary.

---

## Parameters

The default is to commit at the end of the record.

## Example

The following examples demonstrate how to use SET COMMIT in conjunction with SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE:

```
Set COMMIT 2;  
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE FRA;
```

or

```
Set COMMIT 2;  
SET_BASE_LANGUAGE ENG;  
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE MY_RECORD;
```

## SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE

### Syntax

```
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE new_language_code;
```

or

```
SET_BASE_LANGUAGE current_language_code;  
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE recordname;
```

### Description

Installs any language other than English.

The command swaps all the language tables from PSRECDEFN. It gets all table names that contain related tables, and it swaps one table at a time. It copies the base table into the related table, updates the related record into the base table, and then deletes the related record from the related table.

If successful, the command updates PSOPTIONS SET LANGUAGE\_CD to the new base language.

Swapping an individual table (SET\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *current\_language\_code* and SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *recordname*) is used only when there is an error with any of the tables after the SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *new\_language\_code* command has been run.

---

**Note.** Never run a combination of SET\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *current\_language\_code* and SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *recordname* command before SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE *new\_language\_code*.

---

## Example

To swap English for Canadian French, enter the following:

```
SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE CFR
```

CFR is the new language code.

---

**Note.** During the initial installation, the Database Setup utility generates a script that automatically swaps the base language if, while in the Database Setup interface, you select a base language other than English.

---

---

## Using PeopleSoft Data Mover Command Modifiers

The following commands enable you to modify a PeopleSoft Data Mover command to limit its scope, rename the item being processed, or control error messaging.

### AS

#### Syntax

```
{IMPORT | REPLACE_ALL} record  
  AS table_name;
```

#### Description

Changes the name of a record and then imports it. When using this modifier, keep the following points in mind:

- If used with an IMPORT, the record is not imported if the table name specified in the IMPORT command already exists in the database.
- When using the AS command modifier, you can specify either the record or table name for the record or table specified preceding the AS.

However, you must always specify the table name (not the record name) for the record or table specified following the AS. The name specified following the AS is the actual name that is used for the table to be created.

- This modifier is not supported for records containing trigger definitions.

#### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL

## Example

The following example imports a new record or table originally named PS\_JOB and creates it as PS\_PROCESS:

```
IMPORT job
  AS ps_process;
```

Also correct:

```
IMPORT ps_job
  AS ps_process;
```

Incorrect:

```
IMPORT ps_job
  AS process;
```

Incorrect:

```
IMPORT job
  AS process;
```

The last two examples are incorrect because process is specified, instead of ps\_process. This means that the table created is named PROCESS, but it should be named PS\_PROCESS to comply with the convention that all non-PeopleTools tables have the prefix PS\_.

The table name that you specify following the AS command modifier should not have more than 18 characters (including the ps\_ prefix). Specifying a table name that is greater than 18 characters invokes the following error message: *Error: Unable to process create statement.*

When you import a record in this way, it is only created in the system tables, not in the PeopleSoft tables. You must also create the record in the PeopleSoft tables, such as PSRECDEFN.

To create a table after running the IMPORT command:

1. Launch Application Designer.
2. Create or clone the new record.

Using the job and process example from the previous discussion, you would open JOB and then select File, Save As and rename the record to PROCESS.

---

**Note.** The PS\_ prefix does not appear in Application Designer.

---

3. Select Build, Current Object.
4. In the Build dialog box, select Create Tables under Build Options.

You may also want to make sure that all the appropriate options are set on the Build Settings tabs.

## IGNORE\_DUPS

### Syntax

```
SET IGNORE_DUPS;  
IMPORT {record | *};
```

### Description

Ignores duplicate-row error messages from the database. The IMPORT process continues despite any duplicate-rows errors in the output window and log file. When IGNORE\_DUPS is set, bulk loading, the ability to load more than one row at a time, is turned off. By default, bulk loading is on and inserts up to 100 rows into a table at a time. Because turning off bulk loading slows performance, you should use this feature only when required.

---

**Note.** SET IGNORE\_DUPS is only valid in bootstrap mode.

---

### Parameters

IMPORT.

## UPDATE\_DUPS

### Syntax

```
SET UPDATE_DUPS;  
IMPORT {record | *};
```

### Description

On command, PeopleSoft Data Mover imports a new row and updates an existing row.

---

**Note.** This command is valid for both bootstrap mode and regular mode. In regular mode, if the table is identified as a language table, the system automatically resolves and swaps the base and related language tables.

---

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," IMPORT, page 32.](#)

### Parameters

IMPORT.

## WHERE

### Syntax

```
Data Mover Command {record | *} WHERE
    condition(s) [:var#1_type, _var#1_value, var#2_type, var#2_value, ... var#n_type,
var#n_value];
```

---

**Note.** In an EXPORT statement, the WHERE modifier must be on the same line as the EXPORT command.

---

### Description

Retrieves a partial set of rows from the data source. The data source could be a data file or the database. The syntax and conditions of a Data Mover WHERE clause are similar to a WHERE clause in SQL. You can write the WHERE clause with comparison operands in-line or as bind variables. You can also use nested SELECT statements.

---

**Warning!** When comparing string or character values, use only US-ASCII (seven-bit ASCII) values. Characters beyond this range can produce errors in the export file.

---

### Parameters

EXPORT

IMPORT

### Example

Here's an example of a WHERE clause using both an inline operand and bind variables in an EXPORT script:

```
EXPORT JOB WHERE
    EFFDT > :1 AND
    HOURLY_RT > :2
    AND GRADE = 'ADV'; DATE, 1994-01-01, NUMBER, 100;
```

There are no single or double quotation marks around the bind data, as they are not necessary, and dates are formatted as YYYY-MM-DD. The valid data types for binding are CHAR, NUMBER, DATE, TIME, DATETIME, LONG, and IMAGE. Not all database platforms support LONG or IMAGE data types in the WHERE clause, so you should not use WHERE clauses with these data types.

The following operators are supported in an import WHERE clause: =, < >, <, >, <=, >=, and simple uses of AND and OR. For example, in the following formula, if A, B, and C are true, or if D is true, or if E is true, then the whole statement is true

```
WHERE
    A = :1 AND B = :2 AND C = :3
    OR D = :4
    OR E = :5; NUMBER, 10, NUMBER, 20, NUMBER, 30, NUMBER, 0, NUMBER, 1;
```

---

## Using SET Parameters

The following parameters can be appended to a SET command to create a valid SET statement.

### COMMIT

#### Syntax

```
SET COMMIT #of_rows;
```

#### Description

Sets the commit level only for inserting rows and not for DDL statements. If the level is set to 0, commits are only done when all rows for a record are inserted. Due to the expense of recompiling and rebinding after a commit, the default is 0.

#### Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL, and REPLACE\_DATA.

### CREATE\_INDEX\_BEFORE\_DATA

#### Syntax

```
SET CREATE_INDEX_BEFORE_DATA;
```

#### Description

Creates the index before inserting rows into a record. The default method is to insert rows into a record and then create the index.

#### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

### DBSPACE

#### Syntax

```
SET DBSPACE {old_dbname.old_spacename} AS {new_dbname.new_spacename};
```



## Description

The DBSPACE command is similar to the SPACE command, but it is designed to handle the combination of DBNAME.DDLSPACENAME. On DB2 UDB, the DBNAME or DDLSPACENAME alone is not necessarily unique. However, the combination of the two (DBNAME.DDLSPACENAME) provides a unique relationship. For example, DBSPACE would be needed in the following scenario:

```
PSFSDMO.HRAPP
PSHRDMO.HRAPP
PSPTDMO.HRAPP
```

---

**Note.** This command is supported only on DB2 UDB for z/OS. You use this command in place of the SPACE command used on other platforms.

---

## Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## Example

The wildcard (\*) character is permitted for the database name and space name parameters to apply to all values being processed for the specific parameter in which the wildcard character is used. The following are examples of using this command to achieve one of the following:

To change a specific DBNAME/DDLSPACENAME combination to a single new combination:

```
SET DBSPACE old_dbname.old_spacename AS new_dbname.new_spacename
```

To keep the current database name the same but change the specific space name to a new name:

```
SET DBSPACE *.old_spacename AS *.new_spacename
```

To keep the current space name the same, but change the specific database name to a new name:

```
SET DBSPACE old_dbname.* AS new_dbname.*
```

---

**Warning!** Because of the large number of objects delivered in the PeopleSoft logical databases, do not override all old database name or space name values to a single new database name or space name value when building a SYS or DMO database. However, this feature may be useful in working with smaller data files that contain a smaller number of objects.

---

For large databases, do not use the following commands:

```
SET DBSPACE *.* AS new_dbname.new_spacename
```

```
SET DBSPACE *.* AS *.new_spacename
```

```
SET DBSPACE *.* AS new_dbname.*
```

You can use multiple SET DBSPACE statements to override the space name in the .DAT file. This enables you to override multiple databases in the same section of the script. For example:

```
SET DBSPACE PSFSDMO.* AS MYFSDMO1.*;
SET DBSPACE PSFSDMOF.* AS MYFSDMO2.*;
SET DBSPACE PSFSDMOD.* AS MYFSDMO3.*;
SET DBSPACE PSFSDMOM.* AS MYFSDMO4.*;
```

## DDL

### Syntax

```
SET DDL {RECORD | INDEX | UNIQUE INDEX | SPACE} {object_name | *}
      INPUT parm AS value;
```

---

**Note.** The `object_name` is only available for the SPACE option, not the RECORD, INDEX, and UNIQUE INDEX. The RECORD, INDEX, and UNIQUE INDEX are available for the \*, not the `object_name`.

---

### Description

Substitutes values for the parameters specified in the DDL template commands. Substitute the *parm* and *value* placeholders for an actual parameter and its value. If an asterisk is used instead of an object name, a SQL update on PSDDLDEFPARMS is performed on the parameter and value upon successful completion of the IMPORT or REPLACE\_ALL command that corresponds to the SET DDL statement.

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

### Example

Below are some examples of DDL template SET commands from a DB2 UDB import script:

```
SET DDL RECORD      * INPUT dbname      AS ps910dg0;
SET DDL INDEX       * INPUT stogroup     AS wps04sg;
SET DDL SPACE       * INPUT stogroup     AS wps04sg;
```

## EXECUTE\_SQL

### Syntax

```
SET EXECUTE_SQL [AFTER] sql_statement;
```

### Description

Performs the SQL statement specified at the beginning of a transaction. Typically, this command is used to set up a specific cursor environment before PeopleSoft Data Mover begins processing. For example, in DB2 UDB, use this command to set the current setID, or for Oracle, use this command to designate a specific rollback segment.

This command doesn't run for DDL SQL statements. For example, in DB2 UDB, you cannot set the current setID before creating spaces, tables, indexes, or views.

## Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL, and REPLACE\_DATA.

# EXTRACT

## Syntax

```
SET EXTRACT {COMMAND | DDL | INPUT | SPACE | OUTPUT file_name};
```

## Description

Extracts various types of information from an export file (the DAT file specified in the corresponding SET INPUT command that precedes the IMPORT or REPLACE ALL command) and writes this information to the user-defined output file specified in the SET EXTRACT OUTPUT *file\_name* statement.

---

**Note.** You must use SET EXTRACT OUPUT before issuing any other SET EXTRACT statements.

---

EXTRACT INPUT writes out any statements from the DAT file that are associated with the tables being imported. EXTRACT DDL writes out any CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, or CREATE UNIQUE INDEX statements from the DAT file. EXTRACT COMMAND writes out the EXPORT statements from the DAT file.

When EXTRACT statements are issued, no SQL CREATE or INSERT statements are executed. The associated IMPORT or REPLACE\_ALL command is not actually executed, so no import is performed.

## Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

# IGNORE\_DUPS

## Syntax

```
SET IGNORE_DUPS;
```

## Description

Ignores duplicate-row error messages from the database; the IMPORT process continues despite any duplicate-row errors displayed in the output window and log file. You can set this command for the entire import script or by record, using IGNORE\_DUPS as a command modifier.

When IGNORE\_DUPS is set, bulk loading, the ability to load more than one row at a time, is turned off (to allow checking for duplicates, so that duplicate rows can be ignored or bypassed). By default, bulk loading is on and inserts many (100) rows into a table at a time. Because turning off bulk loading slows performance, use this feature only when required or by record.

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," IMPORT, page 32.](#)

See [Chapter 2, "Using PeopleSoft Data Mover," IGNORE\\_DUPS, page 44.](#)

## Parameters

IMPORT.

---

**Note.** The command SET IGNORE\_DUPS is only valid in bootstrap mode. This prevents the loss of data during a PeopleSoft Data Mover import of a language table in regular mode.

---

## INPUT

### Syntax

```
SET INPUT file;
```

### Description

Specifies the name of the exported file to import; typically this file has a .DAT extension, though this is not a requirement. Because this statement is required to do an import, there is no default file.

If you don't specify a path for this file, PeopleSoft Data Mover searches for the file in the following locations in the order presented:

- It searches the Data Mover input directory as defined in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager on the Edit Profile, Common tab.
- If the input directory setting is blank (not set) on the Edit Profile, Common tab, PeopleSoft Data Mover searches the C:\TEMP directory.

### Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL, and REPLACE\_DATA.

## INSERT\_DATA\_ONCE

### Syntax

```
SET INSERT_DATA_ONCE record;
```

## Description

Skips (that is, bypasses importing) the specified record if there is already one or more rows in the table corresponding to that record. If the table is empty, only a single row is inserted.

## Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL, and REPLACE\_DATA.

# LOG

## Syntax

```
SET LOG file;
```

---

**Note.** You must specify a file name for the SET LOG statement or else a log file is not created. If you do not want to specify a log file name, omit the SET LOG statement completely.

---

## Description

Specifies a user-defined file name for the log file that is created when running a PeopleSoft Data Mover script or command. If the SET LOG statement is omitted completely, a default log file is created with the name DATAMOVE.LOG. PeopleSoft Data Mover writes this DATAMOVE.LOG file to the default log directory, which is *DM\_HOME*\log.

The system uses the PeopleSoft Data Mover log directory specified on the Edit Profile, Common tab in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager. If the preceding setting is blank, the log file is written to C:\TEMP.

---

**Note.** If you use the SET LOG statement but do not specify a file name and path, PeopleSoft Data Mover writes the user-defined log file to the default log directory according to the same rule.

---

When checking the DATAMOVE.LOG file in a multidatabase environment, make sure you are examining the correct log file. At the top of the output file, verify the date and the database name.

```
Logging status in C:\TEMP\datamove.log
Started: Fri Mar 17 13:47:15 2001
Data Mover Release: 8.4
Database: HR702U40
...
Ended: Fri Mar 17 13:47:20 2001
Successful completion
```

## Parameters

All.

## NO DATA

### Syntax

```
SET NO DATA;
```

### Description

During an export, the NO DATA command prevents data from being exported. In an import, this command prevents data from being inserted.

### Parameters

EXPORT, IMPORT, and REPLACE\_ALL.

## NO INDEX

### Syntax

```
SET NO INDEX;
```

### Description

Prevents indexes from being created during an IMPORT or a REPLACE\_ALL command.

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## NO RECORD

### Syntax

```
SET NO RECORD;
```

### Description

Prevents records from being created during an import

## Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## NO SPACE

### Syntax

```
SET NO SPACE;
```

### Description

Prevents tablespaces from being created. This is the default setting. You can use this statement to reset the default after executing a SET SPACE statement.

## Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## NO TRACE

### Syntax

```
SET NO TRACE;
```

### Description

Sets the PeopleSoft trace flag (TraceSQL) in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager to *Off* for the commands that follow, until the next SET statement. This is the recommended method of executing commands. If SET NO TRACE is specified, then no trace file is created, even if you specify a trace file in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager on the Trace tab. Commands that you run *without* specifying SET NO TRACE do trace SQL, if SQL tracing is enabled in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.

By default, the trace file is written to *DM\_HOME\trace*. The default trace file name is datamover.trc.

---

**Note.** This statement cannot be used with an INSERT command.

---

## Parameters

All.

## NO VIEW

### Syntax

```
SET NO VIEW;
```

### Description

Prevents views from being created.

### Parameters

EXPORT \* only, IMPORT \* only, REPLACE\_ALL \* only, and REPLACE\_DATA \* only.

## OUTPUT

### Syntax

```
SET OUTPUT file;
```

---

**Note.** You must specify a file name for the SET OUTPUT statement or else an output file is not created. If you do not want to specify an output file name, omit the SET OUTPUT statement completely.

---

### Description

Specifies a user-defined file name for the output file that is created by the corresponding EXPORT statement. If the SET OUTPUT statement is omitted completely, a default output file with the name DATAMOVE.DAT is created. The location that the output file is created is determined by the following:

- The system uses the PeopleSoft Data Mover output directory specified on the Edit Profiles, Common tab in PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.
- If the previous setting is blank, the output file is created in the C:\TEMP directory.

---

**Note.** If you use the SET OUTPUT statement but do not specify a file name and path, PeopleSoft Data Mover writes the user-defined output file to the default output directory.

---

### Parameters

EXPORT.



## SIZING SET

### Syntax

```
SET SIZING_SET n;
```

### Description

Specifies the sizing set number as defined on the DDL Model Defaults page. The default is 0. To use this parameter, the specified sizing set must be defined in the export file.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Using PeopleTools Utilities."

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## SPACE

### Syntax

```
SET SPACE old spcname AS new_spcname;
```

### Description

Use for all operating systems other than z/OS.

Renames the default space names to customized space names. To name all record default space names to a single space name, substitute \* for a space name.

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

### Example

```
SET SPACE * AS PS;
```

## START

### Syntax

```
SET START [AFTER] record;
```

### Description

Designates where in the export file to start the import process. The default is to start at the beginning of the file. To start immediately after a particular PeopleSoft record in the file, use SET START AFTER. This SET statement is useful for restarting a script after an error.

If the AFTER parameter is omitted, the import process starts at the record that is specified in the SET START statement. If the AFTER parameter is specified, the import process starts after the record specified in the SET START statement.

---

**Note.** If the same record name appears multiple times in the same DAT file, the SET START AFTER command begins after the last occurrence of the record name in the DAT file.

---

When you use the SET START command with REPLACE\_VIEW and no DAT file specified, you designate at which (or after which) view in the database to start. Views are created in alphabetical order.

### Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL, REPLACE\_DATA and REPLACE\_VIEW.

## STATISTICS

### Syntax

```
SET STATISTICS { ON | OFF };
```

### Description

Sets UPDATE STATISTICS to on or off. The default value is on. Set the value to off if you do not want to update statistics after an IMPORT. This command works only in bootstrap mode.

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## UNICODE

### Syntax

```
SET UNICODE { ON | OFF }
```

### Description

This command is recommended for use in bootstrap mode for an initial database load. It specifies whether the database is Unicode or non-Unicode.

---

**Warning!** If the database is already fully loaded, DO NOT use this command because it could result in the wrong value ENABLE\_UNICODE flag being set on the PSSTATUS table.

---

### Parameters

IMPORT and REPLACE\_ALL.

## VERSION

### Syntax

```
SET VERSION sql_table.columncondition;
```

### Description

Verifies the version of the database for importing.

### Parameters

IMPORT, REPLACE\_ALL and REPLACE\_DATA.

### Example

Suppose that you state the following:

```
SET VERSION PSLOCK.TOOLSREL="8.4"
```

PeopleSoft Data Mover verifies that the TOOLSREL column in PSLOCK equals 8.4. This avoids importing an export file into the wrong database. Use the SQL table name to indicate which PeopleSoft record to check.

---

## Using Script Examples

This section provides several example script files. Review these scripts to see how you can use PeopleSoft Data Mover to accomplish various tasks.

### Exporting Databases

#### Description

This example shows how to export a database.

#### Example

```
SET OUTPUT c:\temp\pt.dat;  
SET LOG c:\temp\pt.log;  
EXPORT *;
```

### Building Databases

#### Description

This example shows how to build a database.

#### Example

```
set log c:\temp\hcengd.log;  
set input c:\HRDMO\data\hcengd.db;  
set no view;  
set no space;  
set no trace;  
import *;  
update PSLOCK set OWNERID = 'ownerid';  
update PSOPRDEFN set ACCESSID = 'accessid', ACCESSPSWD = 'accesspw',  
  OPERPSWD = '000000000000000000' where OPRTYPE = 0;  
update PSACCESSPRFL set ACCESSID = 'accessid', ACCESSPSWD = 'accesspw',  
  VERSION = 0, ENCRYPTED = 0;  
set log c:\temp\grant.log;  
encrypt_password *;
```

### Recreating All Views

#### Description

This example shows how to recreate all views.

## Example

```
SET LOG c:\temp\view.log;  
REPLACE_VIEW *;
```

## Importing with REPLACE\_ALL with a Commit Level

### Description

This example shows how to import with REPLACE\_ALL with a commit level.

### Example

```
SET INPUT c:\ptdvl\bin\exp2.dat;  
SET LOG c:\ptdvl\bin\exp2.log;  
SET COMMIT 2;  
REPLACE_ALL employee_review;  
REPLACE_ALL course_tbl  
    WHERE days_duration = :1 AND course_type > :2;number,1,char,C;  
REPLACE_ALL absence_hist  
    WHERE return_dt > :1;date,1988-01-01;
```

## Combining SQL Commands and IMPORT

### Description

This example shows how to combine SQL commands and IMPORT.

### Example

```
SET INPUT c:\ptdvl\bin\exp2.dat;  
SET COMMIT 10;  
SET START AFTER course_tbl;  
SET IGNORE_DUPS;  
DELETE FROM ps_absence_hist WHERE emplid = '8001';  
IMPORT *;
```



## Chapter 3

# Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager, archiving strategy, and archiving techniques, and discusses how to:

- Access the Data Archive Manager homepage.
- Manage archive objects.
- Define archive queries.
- Manage archive templates.
- Archive data to history.
- Audit archive processes.

---

**Note.** The Archive Data tool delivered with previous releases of PeopleTools is a deprecated feature, and has been replaced by this Data Archive Manager.

---

### See Also

[Appendix H, "Archive Data Tool \(Deprecated in PeopleTools 8.44\)," page 363](#)

---

## Understanding PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager

In any enterprise application, the ability to purge and archive transactional data is critical to data management. You need to have consistent methods to archive transactional data before your database increases to unmanageable sizes. PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager provides an integrated and consistent framework for archiving data from PeopleSoft applications.

Using a predefined template, you can select any queries and multiple objects that meet your archiving and restoration requirements. Leveraging the Archive Query in PeopleSoft Query, you can easily define your archive template.

To better manage the archive process, you don't have to make any commits to the database until the entire batch has completed.

PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager includes the following main elements:

- Archive object definition.

An archive object is a collection of tables that you archive. The object definition determines how you archive data from a table. For base tables within an archive object, PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager archives data based on a user specified query. For non-base tables within an archive object, PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager archives data based on the archived data of the base table. This implementation eliminates the requirement of having query definitions for non-base tables.

- Archive query definition.

PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager uses PeopleSoft Query to define selection criteria from the base table of the base archive object (for example, archive all rows in JRNL\_HEADER where BUSINESS\_UNIT = 'ABC01').

- Archive template definition.

An archive template can contain multiple objects and multiple queries. One of the archive objects in the archive template must be a base object. You can simply define the selection criteria to archive from the base table without specifying criteria for all records in the archive template. Within the archive template, you must specify the AE processes to run before and after the data has been archived, for each of the archiving processes.

- Archive job definition.

You define archive jobs to archive data to history. Before you submit an archive job, you must first define the archive job information including the Archive Template, Archive Process, and Commit Processing. You can submit archive jobs in a batch using the process scheduler. As part of the process, PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager prompts you for run time parameters such as bind variables and the query to use.

- Restore query definition.

You define restore jobs to restore any subset of archived data to production tables. As with archive jobs, you must first define the job information, and then run the job using the process scheduler.

- Archive auditing.

To facilitate auditing, PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager retains a record of the following:

- What process was executed.
- Who ran the batch process.
- When the process was executed.
- Which Archive ID and record was affected.
- What SQL statement was executed.

---

## Understanding Archiving Strategy

This section discusses:

- Archiving strategy.
- History tables.



## Archiving Strategy

Determining an archiving strategy is essential for using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager efficiently. This strategy depends on how the archived data will be used. The following describes the strategy for archiving to history table:

- Use history tables for storing archived data.
- Enable reporting and queries from history tables.
- Must have a secondary step to delete archived data from online tables.
- Must have additional database space.

The system is designed to provide as much flexibility as possible. By reviewing your business requirements, you will be able to determine which strategic step best fits your business needs.

Here is a high-level-overview of the steps:

1. You move data into the history tables.

This is known as the selection process. This enables you to query the selected data for information and copy data from the online tables into the history tables.

2. If you accidentally delete the data from the online tables, there is a process to restore the data back from the history tables.

This rollback process is the optional second step.

3. When you no longer need to reference the data from the history tables, you can delete them completely from the system.

## History Tables

Archiving to history tables involves using tables that you create for the sole purpose of storing archived data. You must determine whether the archived data should be stored in the history tables temporarily or on a long-term basis.

By definition, history tables are identical copies of the online tables. However, history records must include PSARCHIVE\_SBR sub-record that contains the archive ID and batch number. Some PeopleSoft applications deliver history tables prebuilt for use in common archiving processes. If you design a custom archiving scheme, you need to create the history tables using Application Designer.

### ***History Table Considerations***

After the archive process moves the data into the history table, the data resides in both the online tables and in the history table; you then have two options:

- Deleting the archived data from the online tables.
- Leaving the archived rows in the online tables such that the data exists in parallel.

## ***Building History Tables***

Before you run the archiving process, you must first create (or build) the history tables.

You must build one history table for each table to be archived. The history table must be identical to the archive table. PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager uses the PSARCHIVE\_SBR sub-record that contains PSARCH\_ID and PSARCH\_BATCHNUM to denote when a piece of data was archived and to uniquely identify it.

The following example uses the record JRNL\_HEADER.

To build a history table:

1. Open Application Designer.
2. Open the JRNL\_HEADER table.
3. Select File, Save As and name the history table with an appropriate name, such as JRNL\_HEADER\_HST.
4. When prompted to copy the PeopleCode associated with the table, click No.
5. Select Insert, Sub-Record then insert the PSARCHIVE\_SBR sub-record.
6. Save the record.
7. Build the table by selecting Build, Current Object .
  - Select the following build options: Create Tables and Create Indexes.
  - Select the following build execute options: Execute and Build script.
  - Click Build.

---

## **Understanding Archiving Techniques**

This section discusses:

- Business requirements analysis.
- Commits.
- Performance enhancement.
- Index considerations.
- Data limitations.

## Business Requirements Analysis

It is important to devise a business strategy before archiving the data. First, you must identify the tables that you want to archive. This includes identifying all of the parent and child tables associated with the tables. Failing to identify all of the related tables can cause corruption to the database. Next, you must know exactly which data to archive. It is important to recognize which rows are safe to remove from the online tables. Remember to remove only the data that is not required to maintain the day-to-day business and reporting.

Consider PeopleSoft General Ledger as an example. General Ledger contains the greatest amount of data to be archived because it is the module where the majority of reporting is required. There are two sets of data types that need to be maintained: balance information and transactional information. Balance information is retained in the ledger records. You might require balance information for online and reporting purposes to be available for a three-year period. On the other hand, transactional data is maintained in the journal header and line tables. Suppose that you require only one year of transactional data to be retained in the system for online purposes, but three years to be retained for reporting purposes.

Any data beyond the above time frames for balances and transactions can be archived and is only be accessed through reports. The data can be archived to history tables. If data were to be archived into history tables, the data would still be available online for reporting purposes. However, you could not view it through standard PeopleSoft Internet Architecture pages without special configuration. In addition, reports would need to be modified to access the data in history tables. Moving archived data to secondary storage devices is generally used for long-term data retention. This option is preferred for data that is rarely retrieved, and secondary storage devices are usually used to satisfy legal requirements.

## Commits

By default, the Archive Selection, Remove from History, Rollback, and Delete processes issue commits after each record has been processed unless Row-based processing or Unit-of-Work processing have been specified.

## Enhancing Performance

For better performance and increased speed during archiving processes, consider dropping the indexes before inserting data from online tables into history tables.

## Index Considerations

Index considerations include:

- Database differences.
- Non-unique indexes.

### ***Platform Considerations***

The database platform may have a limitation on the number of columns that an index can contain. Some have a restriction of 16 columns for an index. If the table that you want to archive already has 16 keys, then you can't add other keys (PSARCH\_ID and PSARCH\_BATCHNUM from PSARCHIVE\_SBR sub-record) to the corresponding history table.

To solve this problem, you can create the history table with the PSARCH\_ID and PSARCH\_BATCHNUM as non-key fields.

### ***Non-Unique Indexes***

The SQL generated by the Data Archive Manager assumes that index keys identify unique rows. All records that you intend to archive must have unique indexes. Records with non-unique indexes cannot be archived.

## **Data Limitations**

*For Oracle databases only*, due to platform and meta-SQL restrictions, Data Archive Manager does not support archiving of records with LONG, IMAGE, or ATTACHMENT columns if you have not performed a data type switch. If you have performed a data type switch, there are no limitations. The selection process (inserting data from the online records to the history records) will result in the loss of the long, image, or attachment columns in the history record.

However, this restriction applies only to templates archived using set-based processing. Long, image, and attachment data are archived to history records (and back to the transactional records) if the template is archived using row-based processing.

---

**Note.** This potential limitation applies *only* to Oracle databases. No other databases are affected.

---

---

## **Accessing the Data Archive Manager Homepage**

The Data Archive Manager homepage provides you with access to all of the functionality in PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager, including the Query Manager. Alternatively, you can select each menu item directly without accessing the homepage, with the exception of Query Manager.

Select PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Homepage to access the PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager homepage.

## Data Archive Manager Homepage

<a href="#">Manage Archive Objects</a>	To implement data archiving, you are required to define what needs to be archived. Each archive object consists of one or more records that you want to archive. Records defined in an archive object must be related by keys.
<a href="#">Manage Archive Templates</a>	Archive templates define how data could be archived. Each archive template contains definitions for archive objects, archive queries, and application engine processes.
<a href="#">Archive Data To History</a>	Select template on which to perform archive processes.
<a href="#">Audit Archiving</a>	View details of previously archived items.
<a href="#">Query Manager</a>	Create queries to use in archive templates.

### Data Archive Manager Homepage

<b>Manage Archive Objects</b>	Click to access the Manage Archive Objects page, where you can define the objects to be archived. Each object is a logical grouping of records. The records specified in an archive object must be related by keys  See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Managing Archive Objects, page 68.</a>
<b>Manage Archive Templates</b>	Click to access the Manage Archive Templates page, where you can define an archive template. Archive templates define how data should be archived. Each archive template enables you to specify archive objects, archive queries, and application engine processes.  See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Managing Archive Templates, page 69.</a>
<b>Archive Data to History</b>	Click this link to access the Archive Data To History page where you can define a job to move data between transactional tables and history tables.  See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Managing Archive Templates, page 69.</a>
<b>Audit Archiving</b>	Click this link to access the Audit Archiving page where you can view the details of previous archive processes.  See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Auditing Archive Processes, page 76.</a>
<b>Query Manager</b>	Click this link to access the Query Manager page in PeopleSoft Query, where you can create a query for your archive process.

**See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Query*

---

## Managing Archive Objects

This section provides an overview of the base table and non-base tables, and discusses how to manage archive objects.

### Understanding the Base Table and Non-base Tables

A base table is a table that contains all the keys by which all other tables in the archive object is archived from. Each archive object can have one and only one base table. You can define the selection criteria to archive from the base table.

Non-base tables are joined together by common keys. In each archive object, non-base tables are archived based on the archived data of the base tables. You don't need to define archive criteria for non-base tables.

### Page Used to Manage Archive Objects

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Manage Archive Objects	PSARCHOBJDEFN	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Manage Archive Objects	Use this page to group archive records into archive objects.

## Managing Archive Objects

Access the Manage Archive Objects page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Manage Archive Objects).

<b>Archiving Record</b>	Select the name of the record with the transactional data that you want to archive.
<b>Base Record</b>	Select this check box if the record that you select is the base record of this archive object. By definition, there can only be one base record per archive object.
<b>History Record</b>	Select the history record to which you want to archive the transactional data. You must first create the history record manually using Application Designer. An error message will appear if the history table has been defined incorrectly.

---

## Defining Archive and Restore Queries

You can use PeopleSoft Query to define selection criteria to archive data from transactional tables to history tables. Each of the queries to be used by the Data Archive Manager must be defined as an *Archive* type or *Restore* type.

For an archive query, you must also select *Public* as owner. The first record of the archive query must be the same as the base table of the base record of the archive template. Otherwise, an error message appears.

A restore query is a type of archive query that is based on the history table rather than the online table.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Query*.

---

## Managing Archive Templates

This section discusses how to manage archive templates.

### Page Used to Manage Archive Templates

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Manage Archive Templates	PSARCHTEMPDEFN	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Manage Archive Templates	Use this page to define the archive template.

### Managing Archive Templates

Access the Manage Archive Templates page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Manage Archive Templates).

Manage Archive Templates

Archive Template: PBTEST

Description:

Archive Template Objects

Find | View All |

First 1 of 1 Last

Base Object	*Archive Object	Link Record
<input type="checkbox"/>		

Selective Archiving Queries

Find | View All |

First 1 of 1 Last

*Query Name	Description

☐ Template Allows Selective Restoring of Data From History

Selective Restoring Queries

Find | View All |

First 1 of 1 Last

*Query Name	Description

AE Processes

Find | View All |

First 1 of 1 Last

*Archive Process	Pre AE Program	Post AE Program

Manage Archive Templates page

Archive Template Objects

Base Object

Select this check box if the archive object that you select is the base object of this archive template. Be definition, there can only be one base object per archive template. Data from tables in non-base objects are archived based on archived data from the link table in the base object.

Archive Object

Insert from the list of archive objects previously defined in the database.

Description

Displays the description of the query.

Link Record

If the archive object is not a base object, a link record must be defined. Similar to the concept of a foreign key constraint, the link table is used to "link" data between the base record of the non-base objects to archived data of any record in the base object. By this definition, only records that are defined in the base object of the archive template can be used as link records.

70

Copyright © 1988, 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.



### **Queries Run on Archive Objects**

<b>Query Name</b>	Select from a list of queries defined in the template. The selection determines how PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager will generate the where clause for the base table of the base object at runtime. Only queries of the type <i>Archive</i> or <i>Restore</i> can be defined in the Archive Template. You can insert multiple archive or restore queries into the template.
<b>Description</b>	Displays the description of the query.

### **Queries Run on Restore Objects**

<b>Query Name</b>	Select from a list of queries defined in the template. The selection determines how PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager will generate the where clause for the base table of the base object at runtime. Only queries of the type <i>Archive</i> or <i>Restore</i> can be defined in the Archive Template. You can insert multiple archive or restore queries into the template.
<b>Description</b>	Displays the description of the query.

### **AE Processes**

<b>Archive Process</b>	<p>Specify a PeopleSoft Application Engine archive process. Valid options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Archive Selection</i></li> <li>• <i>Archive Delete</i></li> <li>• <i>Archive Rollback</i></li> <li>• <i>Remove from History</i></li> </ul> <p>You can define different Application Engine (AE) programs to run for each of the archiving processes. For example, you can define an Application Engine program called SEL_PRE that creates summary data in a work table before the Archive Selection process (Pre-AE) is executed. If you perform a rollback, you might want to create an Application Engine program called RBK_POST that executes after the Archive Rollback process (Post-AE) to remove the summary data in the work table.</p>
<b>Pre AE Program</b>	Select the custom Application Engine program that you want to run against your data before archiving.
<b>Post AE Program</b>	Select the custom Application Engine programs that you want to run against your data after archiving.

---

## Managing Archive Jobs

This section discusses how to:

- Define archive jobs.
- View details.
- Define archive query binds.

### Pages Used to Manage Archive Jobs

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Archive Data To History	PSARCHRUNCTRL	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History	Use this page to submit batch Application Engine jobs through Process Scheduler.
Archive Run Control Details	PSARCHEXAMRUNCNTL	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History, View Details	Use this page to view the details of the data
Define Query Bind Variables	PSARCHRUNQRYBND	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History, Define Binds	If you've defined prompts for the selection query that you use for the job, use this page to define the archive query bind variables for your archiving process.

### Defining Archive Jobs

Access the Archive Data To History page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History).

Run Control ID: 007

[Report Manager](#)

[Process Monitor](#)

Run

Archive Template

'Archive Template:

Archive Process

'Process Type 

Selection

 copying from on-line tables to history tables

Selection Criteria

☒ Selective Query

☐ Batch Number

Commit Processing

☐ Commit at End

☒ Set-Based Processing

☐ Row-Based Processing

☐ Audit Row Count

Manage Archive Jobs page

Archive Template	Select the archive template to use for this batch job. Choosing a restore or an archive template is the way you choose the type of job to run.
Run	Click to run this batch job after defining the archive process and commit processing.
View Details	Click to access the Archive Run Cntl Details page to view the SQL and row counts of this batch job.

Note. If you're using bind variables, you must save the run control data before clicking the View Details link.

See Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Viewing Details, page 75.

Archive Process

Use this section to manage the processes that are associated with the selected archive template. As the archiving process runs, counters are inserted into work tables to indicate which records have been processed (for both set-based and row-based operations) and the number of rows processed (for row-based operations only).

For commits by table, the database server commits only after each record is processed. If the process fails in the middle of processing a record (say, the database logs were full), it will perform a rollback of everything that has not committed.

For commits by row, if the process fails for any reason, the counters keep track of only those rows that have been committed to the database. When the Application Engine job is restarted, it skips all the rows that have been committed, and begins with the first uncommitted row.

### Process Type

Select an option:

- Select Delete to delete data from transaction tables. Data rows will be deleted from the transaction tables only if they've already been archived in the history tables.
- Select Rollback to copy data from history tables back to transaction tables.

---

**Important!** History rows have the same keys as their corresponding transaction rows, so attempting to copy them to the transaction tables will fail with a duplicate key error if the transaction rows still exist. Before running a rollback process for a given archive job, you must first run a delete process to delete the transaction rows for the same job, so that the history rows can be successfully copied into the transaction tables.

---

- Select Remove from History to delete data from the history tables.

### Selective Query

Specify the archive or restore query defined within the archive template to use at run time. If there are bind variables, you will be prompted to enter the bind variables when you click the Define Binds link.

### Define Binds

Click to access the Define Query Bind Variables page.

See [Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," Defining Archive Query Binds, page 76.](#)

### Batch Number

For archiving processes that are based on data in the history tables (such as delete data from transactional tables, copy data from history tables to transactional tables, and delete data from history tables), you will be prompted to enter an Archive Batch Number.

### Batch Number

For archiving processes that are based on data in the history tables (such as delete data from transactional tables, copy data from history tables to transactional tables, and delete data from history tables), you will be prompted to enter an Archive Batch Number.

### Audit Row Count

Select to audit the number of rows in the record that meet the criteria. This number is displayed in the Number of Rows field on the Audit Archiving page.

## Commit Processing

By default, batch processing is performed by the Data Archive Manager using set-based processing. Unless specified using the check boxes below, a commit is issued to the database after each table is processed within the Archive Template

### Commit at End

Data Archive Manager processes data using set-based processing, but doesn't issue any commits to the database server until the entire process has completed.

For example, if your Archive Template is defined with Pre- and Post- AE programs, the Data Archive Manager will first execute the Pre-AE program, then it will process all of the tables in the Archive Template, then it will execute the Post-AE program. Upon successful execution of all these steps, a commit will be issued to the database.

When you select this option, the set-based processing option is automatically selected as well.

### Commit by Table

Data is processed by passing a single SQL statement per record to be archived to the database server. A commit is issued to the database server after successful completion of each SQL statement.

### Commit by Row

Data Archive Manager processes data one row at a time using PeopleCode fetches. This method of archiving is more memory intensive and takes longer than set-based processing. However, for archiving processes that contain significant amounts of data, row-based processing could be used to reduce adverse affects on the database server

Row-based processing is appropriate when you're archiving large amounts of data from transactional tables and wish to issue commits more frequently. If you select this option, you must enter a commit frequency.

### Commit Frequency

Specify the number of rows to process before issuing a commit to the database.

## Viewing Details

Access the Archive Run Control Details page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History, View Details).

### View SQL

Select to view the archive selection SQL for the archive object. The View Details page appears, with a text box containing the SQL, for example:

```
%InsertSelect(CONF_OB2_PARENT, CONF_OB2_PAR_HS)
FROM PS_CONF_OB2_PAR_HS WHERE
PSARCH_ID = 'CONFDEMO' AND PSARCH_BATCHNUM = 1
```

### Count Rows

Select to view the number of rows of the archive object that the archiving process will affect in the related database. The View Details page appears, with a description of the number of rows that will be processed by Data Archive Manager.

## Defining Archive Query Binds

Access the Define Query Bind Variables page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Archive Data to History, Define Binds).

Click the Reset Query Bind Variables button, and a prompt page appears where you can enter the new query bind values. The prompt page appears only if you have defined prompts for the selection query that you use for the job. When you enter the query bind values and click OK, they appear as read-only information on the Define Query Bind Variables page. Click OK to return to the Archive Data To History page.

---

## Auditing Archive Processes

This section discusses how to audit the details of previous archiving processes:

### Page Used to Audit Archive Processes

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Audit Archiving	PSARCHIVEAUDIT	PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Audit Archiving	Use this page to view details of previous archiving processes.

### Audit Archiving

Access the Audit Archiving page (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager, Audit Archiving).

<b>User ID</b>	Select which user to audit.
<b>Archive ID</b>	Select an existing archive ID to audit.
<b>From Date</b>	Select a start date for the audit.
<b>To Date</b>	Select an ending date for the audit.
<b>Search</b>	Click this button to have the system create the audit report and display the appropriate fields on the page.
<b>Delete</b>	Click this button to purge audited rows based on the criteria specified.
<b>Archive ID</b>	Select an existing archive ID.
<b>Event Date/Time</b>	Displays the date and time that corresponds to the date when the data was archived for that particular archive number.

<b>Archive Process</b>	Displays the archive process you want to run.
<b>Archive Batch Number</b>	Displays the batch number of the archive process.
<b>Record (Table) Name</b>	Displays the name of the table that you want to archive.
<b>Number of Rows</b>	Displays the number of rows to be archived. <hr/> <b>Note.</b> This field displays valid information only if you selected Audit Row Count on the Archive Data to History page. <hr/>
<b>User ID</b>	Displays the user ID that you want to audit.
<b>Run Control ID</b>	A unique ID to associate each user with his or her own run control table entries.
<b>Process Instance</b>	A unique number that identifies each process request. This value is automatically incremented and assigned to each requested process when the process is submitted to run.
<b>View Details</b>	Click this button to view the SQL detail of previous archiving processes.





## Chapter 4

# Ensuring Data Integrity

This chapter provides an overview of data integrity tools and discusses how to:

- Run SQL Alter (Structured Query Language alter).
- Run DDDAudit.
- Run SYSAUDIT.

---

## Understanding Data Integrity Tools

PeopleSoft provides several tools to ensure the integrity of the data that is stored in the PeopleSoft system, such as SQL Alter , SYSAUDIT, and DDDAUDIT. You may want to use these tools during upgrades and system customizations, to verify the PeopleSoft system and check how it compares to the actual SQL objects.

It is good practice to run and read the audit reports, which include SYSAUDIT, DDDAUDIT and ALTER audit, after making changes such as:

- applying patches.
- applying bundles.
- performing database upgrades.

Running the audits helps you to make sure that the tables are internally and externally synchronized.

Furthermore, it is recommended that you schedule regular maintenance runs of these audits, for example weekly, enabling you to discover and resolve any data integrity issues in a timely manner.

---

## Running SQL Alter

The primary purpose of the Application Designer SQL Alter function is to bring SQL tables into accordance with PeopleTools record definitions. You can run SQL Alter in an audit-only mode that alerts you to discrepancies between record definitions and SQL tables, but that doesn't actually perform an alter.

To audit tables or views:

1. In Application Designer, choose the records that you want to audit.

You have the option of auditing the active record definition, the selected records in the project workspace, or all the records that are in the current project.

2. Select the Build menu and select the appropriate option for the records that you want to audit.

If you're auditing an open record definition, choose Build, Current Object. If you select one or more records in the project workspace, you can select Build, Selected Objects. If you want to audit all records in the current project, select Build, Project.

The Build Scope shows a list of all the records that are affected, or audited in the case.

3. Select Alter tables as the Build Option and select Build script file as the Build Execute option.
4. Click Settings and choose the Alter tab in the Build Settings dialog.
5. In the Alter Any group box, select the situations for which you want an Alter performed.
6. Select the Scripts tab.

You use the Scripts tab to specify the output for the build scripts in one file, in two files, where the file is generated, and so on.

7. Select Write Alter comments to script.

Performing alters with this option enabled adds comments to the SQL script about what fields are being manipulated.

8. Choose the other script file options.
9. Click OK to close the Build Settings dialog and return to the Build dialog.
10. Press Build on the Build dialog.

## Understanding Table and Column Audits

The SELECT statements that are produced by auditing with SQL Alter deal with inconsistencies between PeopleTools tables and SQL in the definition of tables or columns. A SQL table is equivalent to a record in Application Designer, and a column is equivalent to a field.

To fix problems that are found in the system tables and columns, you need to know how PeopleSoft field types correspond to SQL data types:

<i><b>Application Designer Field Type</b></i>	<i><b>SQL Data Type</b></i>	<i><b>SQL Description</b></i>
Character	CHAR	Alphanumeric; fixed length.
Long character	LONGVAR	Alphanumeric; variable length.
Date	DATE	Dates; stored as fixed length; displayed in various formats.
Number or signed number	SMALLINT	Numeric; integers only (no decimals); 1 to 4 digits (and 5 digits if RawBinary).

<i>Application Designer Field Type</i>	<i>SQL Data Type</i>	<i>SQL Description</i>
Number or signed number	INTEGER	Numeric; integers only (no decimals); 5 to 9 digits (and 10 digits if RawBinary).
Number or signed number	DECIMAL	Numeric; either (1) 10 or more digits or (2) contains decimal positions.

---

**Note.** In Application Designer, if a field is specified as required, or if a field is numeric and does not have a format of Phone, SSN (social security number), or SIN, you need to initialize the starting value of the column and specify the NOT NULL attribute in SQL.

---

## Running DDDAUDIT

This section discusses DDDAUDIT queries.

The Database Audit Report (DDDAUDIT) finds inconsistencies between PeopleTools record and index definitions and the database objects. This audit consists of queries that check tables, views, indexes, and triggers.

DDDAUDIT.SQR. is located in *PS\_HOME\sqr*.

When you run DDDAUDIT.SQR, its results are written to a file called DDDAUDIT.LIS in the \TEMP folder. After running DDDAUDIT, view the .LIS file by using any text editor.

## DDDAUDIT Queries

The following table lists the names of each query that DDDAUDIT performs on the PeopleSoft system, what it means if rows are returned, and how to resolve the inconsistency.

---

**Note.** The query names in this table are arranged alphabetically, and are not necessarily in the order in which they appear in DDDAUDIT.LIS:

---

<i>Query</i>	<i>If Rows are Returned?</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
INDEX-1	Indexes are defined in Application Designer and not found in the database.	Use Application Designer to create the index.
INDEX-2	Indexes are defined in the database and not found in Application Designer.	If the index is valid, use Application Designer to define the index. Otherwise, drop the index.

<b>Query</b>	<b>If Rows are Returned?</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
INDEX-3	Uniqueness or the number of keys in the Index Definition do not match between Application Designer and the database.	See INDEX-1.
TABLE-1	SQL table names are defined in the Data Designer that are not blank and not the same as the record name.	Use Application Designer to enter the record name as the Non-Standard SQL Table Name.
TABLE-2	SQL tables are defined in the Data Designer and not found in the database.	If you want to delete the record definition, use Application Designer (select File, Delete).  Otherwise, to create the SQL table, use Application Designer. This command also creates the appropriate indexes for keys, duplicate order keys, alternate keys, and list items.
TABLE-3	SQL tables are defined in the database and not found in the Data Designer.  SYSINDEXES and SYSTABLES can be ignored in these results.  For Informix: PSALTERLONG can also be ignored.	If the table is not valid, drop it.  Otherwise, define a new record in Application Designer.
TABLE-4	Tablespace is not defined for the SQL table in Application Designer.	If you're using or migrating to a relational database management system that uses table spaces, you should use Application Designer to assign table spaces to these tables.
TABLE-5	Table contains more than 500 fields.	Use Application Designer to adjust the number of fields on the table, as needed.
VIEWS-1	Views are defined in the Data Designer and not found in the database.	If you want to delete the view definition, use Application Designer (select File, Delete).  Otherwise, to create the SQL view, use Application Designer.
VIEWS-2	Views are defined in the database and not found in the Data Designer.	If the view is not valid, Drop it.  Otherwise, define a new view in Application Designer.

<i>Query</i>	<i>If Rows are Returned?</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
TRIGGER-1	Trigger defined in the Application Designer and not found in the database.	Delete the definition if it is not needed. Otherwise, use Application Designer to create the trigger in the database.

---

## Running SYSAUDIT

This section provides an overview of how to run SYSAUDIT and discusses audits for:

- Application Engine integrity.
- Clear list integrity.
- EDI Manager integrity.
- Field integrity.
- Feeds integrity.
- Integration Broker integrity.
- Menu integrity.
- Optimization integrity.
- Page integrity.
- PeopleCode integrity.
- Process Scheduler.
- Query integrity.
- Record integrity.
- Related language integrity.
- Security integrity.
- SQL integrity.
- Tree integrity.
- Translate integrity.
- PSLOCK integrity.
- XML Publisher integrity.

## Understanding How to Run SYSAUDIT

The System Audit (SYSAUDIT) identifies orphaned PeopleSoft objects and other inconsistencies within the system. An example of an orphaned object is a module of PeopleCode that exists, but which does not relate to any other objects in the system.

Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Perform System Audit. Select the appropriate check boxes to run the audits that you want.

System Audit

Run Control ID:pttest

[Report Manager](#)[Process Monitor](#)

Run

Long Description:

Integrity Audit

☒ Audit AE Integrity

☒ Audit Clear List Integrity

☒ Audit EDI Manager Integrity

☒ Audit Field Integrity

☒ Audit Menu Integrity

☒ Audit Security Integrity

☒ Audit Page Integrity

☒ Audit Optimization Integrity

☒ Audit XML Publisher Integrity

☒ Audit Style Sheet Integrity

☒ Audit Feeds Integrity

☒ Audit PeopleCode Integrity

☒ Audit Query Integrity

☒ Audit Record Integrity

☒ Audit Related Lang Integrity

☒ Audit SQL Integrity

☒ Audit Tree Integrity

☒ Audit Translates Integrity

☒ Audit PSLOCK Version Integrity

☒ Audit Integration Broker

☒ Audit Connected Query

System Audit page

<b>Audit AE Integrity</b>	Audits PeopleSoft Application Engine program definitions and components.
<b>Audit Clear List Integrity</b>	Audits the SYSCLRLIST* component.
<b>Audit EDI Manager Integrity</b>	Audits the EC* component for EDI Manager.
<b>Audit Field Integrity</b>	Audits the DBFLD* component for Application Designer fields.
<b>Audit Integration Broker</b>	Runs a collection of audits to on the Integration Broker configuration.
<b>Audit Menu Integrity</b>	Audits the MENU* component for Application Designer menus.
<b>Audit Optimization Integrity</b>	Audits the definitions for Optimization Engine.
<b>Audit Page Integrity</b>	Audits the PNL* component for Application Designer pages.

<b>Audit PeopleCode Integrity</b>	Audits the PCM* and PRG* components for PeopleCode programs.
<b>Audit Query Integrity</b>	Audits the QRY* component for PeopleSoft Query.
<b>Audit Record Integrity</b>	Audits the REC* and VIEWT* components for Application Designer records.
<b>Audit Related Lang Integrity</b>	Audits Related Language Integrity. Query the *LANG component.
<b>Audit Security Integrity</b>	Audits the AUTH*, OPRDF* components for PeopleTools Security.
<b>Audit SQL Integrity</b>	Audits the referential integrity of the tables supporting SQL objects in the db component.
<b>Audit Tree Integrity</b>	Audits the TREE* component.
<b>Audit Translates Integrity</b>	Audits the XLAT* component.
<b>Audit PSLOCKS Version Integrity</b>	Audits the VERSN* component.
<b>Audit XML Publisher Integrity</b>	Audits the referential integrity of the tables of the definitions that are associated with XML Publisher.
<b>Audit Style Sheet Integrity</b>	Audits the referential integrity of the tables of the definitions that are associated with style sheets.
<b>Audit Feeds Integrity</b>	Audits the referential integrity of the tables of the definitions that are associated with feeds.
<b>Audit Connected Query Integrity</b>	Audits the referential integrity of the tables of the definitions that are associated with connected query.

To run SYSAUDIT:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Perform System Audit.
2. When prompted, enter a new run control ID and click OK.
3. Select the desired Integrity Audit options.
4. Click Run.
5. Select the appropriate settings on the Process Scheduler Request page, and click .OK.

### **Accessing SYSAUDIT Output**

When you run SYSAUDIT, you can specify the type and format of the output on the Process Scheduler Request page, as you can with any Process Scheduler request. By default, the results are written to the configured report repository as an Adobe Acrobat PDF file called SYSAUDIT\_*runctrl\_ID*.pdf, where *runctrl\_ID* is the run control ID you specified for the audit.

The tables in the following sections list the names of each of the audit queries that SYSAUDIT performs on the PeopleSoft system, what it means if rows are returned, and how to resolve the discrepancies that the audit report uncovers.

---

**Note.** The query names in these tables are arranged alphabetically, and are not necessarily in the order in which they appear in the output.

---

### See Also

*Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, "Submitting and Scheduling Process Requests," Scheduling Process Requests*

## Application Engine Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
AE-01	This audit lists the AE programs without any sections.	<p>If the affected program is delivered by PeopleSoft and is not modified, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, use the Application Engine designer to either create valid sections for the program or remove the program. It is not possible to recover the missing sections.</p>
AE-02	This audit lists the AE sections without AE programs.	<p>If the affected program is delivered by PeopleSoft and is not modified, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is a customization, it is not possible to recover the missing program. Restore it from a backup if needed.</p> <p>Run SysAECleanUp.dms to remove any orphans remaining after you have followed the steps above.</p>



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
AE-03	This audit lists the AE state records without AE programs.	<p>If the affected record is delivered by PeopleSoft, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, ignore the warnings or restore the program from a backup. It is not possible to recover the missing program.</p>
AE-04	This audit lists the AE state records without record definitions.	<p>If the affected record is delivered by PeopleSoft, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, use Application Designer to remove invalid records from the program definition or create record definitions.</p>
AE-05	This audit lists the AE section details without base section definitions.	<p>If the affected program is delivered by PeopleSoft and is not modified, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, ignore the warnings or restore the program from a backup. It is not possible to recover the missing sections.</p>
AE-06	This audit lists the AE steps without sections.	<p>If the affected program is delivered by PeopleSoft and is not modified, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is a customization, it is not possible to recover the missing program. Restore it from a backup if needed.</p> <p>Run SysAECleanUp.dms to remove any orphans remaining after you follow the steps above.</p>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
AE-07	This audit lists the AE Call Section actions referring to nonexistent sections	<p>If the affected program is delivered by PeopleSoft and is not modified, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, use the Application Engine either to open the program containing the Call Section and change it to call the correct section, or create the required section.</p>
AE-08	This audit lists the AE Log Message actions without an AE step.	<p>If the affected record is delivered by PeopleSoft, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is a customization, it is not possible to recover the missing program; restore it from a backup if needed.</p> <p>Run SysAECleanUp.dms to remove any orphans remaining after you follow the steps above.</p>
AE-09	This audit lists the AE actions without an AE step.	<p>If the affected record was delivered by PeopleSoft, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program was converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is a customization, it is not possible to recover the missing program; restore it from a backup if needed.</p> <p>Run SysAECleanUp.dms to remove any orphans remaining after you follow the steps above.</p>
AE-10	This audit lists the AE temp tables that are attached to invalid AE programs.	<p>If the affected temp table was delivered by PeopleSoft, contact the GCS.</p> <p>If the affected program is converted as part of an upgrade, this may be a symptom that the conversion failed. Contact the GCS.</p> <p>Otherwise, ignore the warnings or restore the program from a backup. It is not possible to recover the missing programs.</p>
AE-11	This audit lists the orphaned AE PeopleCode.	<p>Because of platform issues and Structured Query Report (SQR), this check may not be included in the audit report. Run SysAECleanUp.dms to clean up these orphans.</p>

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
AE-12	This audit lists the orphaned AE SQL objects.	Because of platform issues and SQR, this check may not be included in the audit report. Run SysAECleanUp.dms to clean up these orphans.
AE-13	This audit verifies that PS_AEONLINEINST contains the correct number of rows.	Run ps_aeonlineinst.dms. If you do not have the Data Mover script, contact the GCS.
AE-14	This audit verifies that PS_AEINSTANCENBR contains the correct number of rows.	Run ps_aeinstancenbr.dms. If you do not have the Data Mover script, contact the GCS.
AE-15	This audit verifies that PS_AELOCKMGR contains a row .	Resolution may vary based on implementation. Contact the GCS.

---

**Note.** Locate the Data Mover scripts in the PS\_HOME\scripts directory unless otherwise noted.

---

## Clear List Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
SYSCLRLIST-01	Entries in PSACTIVITYDEL and PSACTIVITYDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-02	Entries in PSAEAPPLDEL and PSAEAPPLDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-05	Entries in PSCOLORDEL and PSCOLORDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-06	Entries in PSFMTDEL and PSFMTDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SYSCLRLIST-07	Entries in PSHOLIDAYDEL and PSHOLIDAYDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-09	Entries in PSIMPDEL and PSIMPDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-10	Entries in PSMENUDEL and PSMENUDEFN are not mutually exclusive	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-11	Entries in PSPCMPROGDEL and PSPCMPROG are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-12	Entries in PSPNLDEL and PSPNLDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-13	Entries in PSPNLGRPDEL and PSPNLGRPDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-14	Entries in PSPRCSRUNCDEL and PSPRCSRUNCNTL are not mutually exclusive	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-15	Entries in PSPROJECTDEL and PSPROJECTDEFN are not mutually exclusive	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-16	Entries in PSQRYDEL and PSQRYDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-17	Entries in PSRECDEL and PSRECDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-18	Entries in PSRECURDEL and PS_PRCsRECUR are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SYSCLRLIST-19	Entries in PSSTYLEDEL and PSSTYLEDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-20	Entries in PSTOOLBARDEL and PSTOOLBARDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-21	Entries in PSTREEBRADEL and PSTREEBRANCH are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-22	Entries in PSTREEDEL and PSTREEDEFN are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-23	Entries in PSTREESTRDEL and PSTREESTRCT are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.
SYSCLRLIST-24	Entries in XLATTABLEDEL and XLATTABLE are not mutually exclusive.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.

## Connected Query Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SysConqrs-01	Identifies Connected Query definitions in the PSCONQRSMAP table that do not exist in the PSCONQRSDEFN table.	Delete the invalid definition from the PSCONQRSMAP table and the PSCONQRSFLDREL table (if it exists).
SysConqrs-02	Identifies Connected Query definitions in the PSCONQRSDEFN table that do not exist in the PSCONQRSMAP table.	Delete the invalid definition using Connected Query Manager.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SysConqrs-03	Identifies Connected Query definitions in the PSCONQRSFLDREL table that do not exist in the PSCONQRSMAP table.	Delete the invalid definition using Connected Query Manager or delete invalid definition directly from the PSCONQRSFLDREL table and the PSCONQRSDEFN table (if it exists).
SysConqrs-04	Identifies Connected Query definitions being used in the PSCONQRSRUNCNTR table that do not exist in the PSCONQRSDEFN table.	Delete the invalid definition from the PSCONQRSRUNCNTR table and the PSCONQRSRUNPRM table (if it exists).
SysConqrs-05	Identifies Connected Query definitions being used in the PSCONQRSRUNPRM table that do not exist in the PSCONQRSRUNCNTR table.	Delete the invalid definition from the PSCONQRSRUNPRM table.
SysConqrs-06	<p>Verifies query definition usage according to the following rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Query definitions being used in PSCONQRSMAP table should exist in PSQRYDEFN table.</li> <li>Only public query definitions should be used for public Connected Query definitions.</li> <li>Private query definitions can be used for private Connected Query definitions only if they have the same owner.</li> </ul>	<p>If the query referenced in a Connected Query definition does not exist, delete it or open it in the Connected Query Manager and correct query selection and file mapping.</p> <p>If a public Connected Query uses a private query, delete it or open it in the Connected Query Manager and correct query selection and file mapping.</p> <p>You can also save an invalid Connected Query as a private query (with the same owner) with a new name and delete the original invalid public query. After deleting the original Connected Query, save the new private Connected Query using the original name.</p>
SysConqrs-07	<p>Verifies Connected Query structure (PSCONQRSMAP table), ensuring:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No duplicate parents exist for child queries.</li> <li>No duplicate combinations of parent and child queries exist for a Connected Query.</li> </ul>	Delete the invalid definition using Connected Query Manager.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SysConqrs-08	Verifies Connected Query structure (PSCONQRSMAP table), ensuring a parent(root) query is defined for all Connected Query definitions.	Delete the invalid definition using Connected Query Manager.
SysConqrs-09	Verifies Connected Query structure (PSCONQRSMAP table), checking if any parent query exists as a child query.	Delete the invalid definition using Connected Query Manager.
SysConqrs-10	Verifies Connected Query structure (PSCONQRSMAP table), ensuring that the number of child queries should be equal to the maximum value of the SEQNUM field.	Open the Connected Query and re-map member query fields.  If the Connected Query can't be opened, it should be deleted using Connected Query Manager.

## EDI Manager Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
ECINMPFL-1	Inbound work records that are not found in the PSRECDEFN table.	Either modify the inbound map definition to not use the Inbound Row ID Work Record (ECINMAPFILE), or create the Work Record Definition.
ECINMPFL-2	Inbound work record EC Map ID is not found in the PS_ECMAPDEFN table.	Create an entry in the map definition table (ECMAPDEFN).
ECINMPFD-1	Inbound work record fields are not found with valid EC Map ID and EC File Row ID combination from the PS_ECMAPFILE table	Either remove the invalid map ID from the Inbound Work Record (ECINMAPFLD), or create an Inbound Row ID Work Record entry.
ECINMPFD-2	Inbound work record fields from PS_ECMAPFLD are not found in PSRECFIELD	Either remove the invalid entry in the inbound work record or create the record/field definition.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
ECINMPRC-1	Target inbound records are not found in the PSRECDEFN table	Either modify the inbound map definition to not use the Inbound Row ID Target Record (ECINMAPREC), or create the Work Record Definition.
ECINMPRC-2	Target inbound EC Map ID is not found in the PS_ECMAPDEFN table	Either remove the invalid map ID from the Inbound Row ID Target Record or create an entry in the Map Definition table.
ECINMPRF-1	EC Map ID/EC File Row ID combination is not found in PS_EGINMAPREC for the target inbound record field in PS_EGINMAPRECFLD	Remove the invalid map ID from the Inbound Target Record.
ECINMPRF-2	A Field for a Record in PS_EGINMAPRECFLD was not found in PSRECFIELD	Create the appropriate definitions in PSRECFIELD or remove the invalid map ID from the Inbound Target Record.
ECINMPRF-4	A related record in PS_EGINMAPRECFLD is not found in PSRECDEFN	Either create the record definition or remove the reference to the related record in the Inbound Target Record.
ECINMPRF-5	An EC Related Record in PS_EGINMAPRECFLD does not have a valid EC Related Row ID from PS_EGINMAPREC	Either remove the reference to the related record from the Inbound Target Record or create an appropriate entry in the Inbound Row ID Target Record.
ECINMPRF-6	A related field in PS_EGINMAPRECFLD is not found in PSRECFIELD	Either remove or correct the reference to the related field record from the Inbound Target Record or create the correct definition in PSRECFIELD.
ECOTMPRC-1	Target outbound records are not found in the PSRECDEFN table	Either modify the outbound map definition to not use the Outbound Target Record, or create the record definition.
ECOTMPRC-2	Outbound work record EC Map ID is not found in the PS_ECMAPDEFN table	Create an entry in the map definition table.
ECOTMPRC-3	Parent records from the outbound work record are not found in the PSRECDEFN table	Remove the reference to the parent record or create a record definition for the parent.



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
ECOTMPRC-4	File records from the outbound work record are not found in the PSRECDEFN table	Create a record definition for the file record.
ECOTMPFD-1	Outbound work record fields are not found with a valid EC Map ID and EC File Row ID combination from the PS_ECOUTMAPREC table	Either remove the entry from the Outbound Work Record (ECOUTMAPFLD) or create an entry in the Outbound Target Record (ECOUTMAPREC).
ECOTMPFD-2	Outbound work record fields from PS_ECOUTMAPFLD are not found in PSRECFIELD	Create the appropriate definitions in PSRECFIELD or remove the invalid map ID from the Outbound Work Record.
SYSECMGR-1	Inbound work record field does not exist in the type definitions in PSDBFIELD	<p>Select, PeopleTools, EDI Manager, Setup Trading Partners, Remove EDI Manager Objects. In the Delete EC Map field, delete all maps <i>except</i> the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AUDIT</li> <li>• BCWCB</li> <li>• CL_APP_V4</li> <li>• CL_CHNG_V4</li> <li>• CL_EFT_V4</li> <li>• CL_ORIG_V4</li> <li>• OUAC-LAW-A</li> <li>• OUAC-LAW-U</li> <li>• OUAC-PT</li> <li>• OUAC-TEA-A</li> <li>• OUAC-TEA-U</li> <li>• OUAC_UAS_A</li> <li>• OUAC_UAS_U</li> <li>• TS130_MAP</li> <li>• TS189_MAP</li> </ul>

## Feeds Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
FEED-01	Feed referencing a nonexistent feed data type.	Remove the feed referencing the nonexistent feed data type from the feed definition table.
FEED-02	Feed data type Integration Broker operations table referencing a nonexistent feed data type.	Remove the Integration Broker operations referencing the nonexistent feed data type from the feed data type Integration Broker operations table.  Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_DTYPE_IBSO WHERE PTFP_DATATYPE_ID= ' &lt;DATATYPEID &gt; '</pre>
FEED-03	Default feed attributes table referencing a nonexistent feed data type.	Remove the default feed attributes referencing the nonexistent feed data type from the default feed attributes table.  Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_DTYPE_ATTR WHERE PTFP_DATATYPE_ID= ' &lt;DATATYPEID &gt; '</pre>
FEED-04	Feed attributes table referencing nonexistent feed.	Remove the feed attributes referencing the nonexistent feed from the feed attributes table.  Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ATTRS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= ' &lt;FEEDID&gt; '</pre>
FEED-05	Feed data source settings table referencing a nonexistent feed.	Remove the data source settings referencing the nonexistent feed from the feed data source settings table.  Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_SETTINGS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= ' &lt;FEEDID&gt; '</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
FEED-06	Feed data source parameters table referencing a nonexistent feed.	<p>Remove the data source parameters referencing the nonexistent feed from the feed data source parameters table.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PARMS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;'</pre>
FEED-07	Feed security table referencing a nonexistent feed.	<p>Remove the feed security referencing the nonexistent feed from the feed security table.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_SECURITY WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;'</pre>
FEED-08	User specified data source parameter table referencing a nonexistent feed.	<p>Remove the user specified data source parameters referencing the nonexistent feed from the user specified data source parameter table.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PVALS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;'</pre>
FEED-09	Admin personalization table referencing a nonexistent feed.	<p>Remove admin personalization data referencing the nonexistent feed from the admin personalization table.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ADMN_PREF WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;'</pre>
FEED-10	User personalization table referencing a nonexistent feed.	<p>Remove user personalization data referencing the nonexistent feed from the user personalization table</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_USER_PREF WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;'</pre>
GENERICFEED-01	Integration Broker Generic Feed referencing a nonexistent Integration Broker service operation.	<p>Remove the Integration Broker Generic Feed that references a nonexistent Integration Broker service operation.</p>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
WORKLISTFEED-01	Worklist feed referencing a nonexistent activity.	Remove the worklist feed that references a nonexistent activity.
WORKLISTFEED-02	Worklist feed referencing a nonexistent business process.	Remove the worklist feed referencing a nonexistent business process.
WORKLISTFEED-03	Worklist feed referencing a nonexistent event.	Remove the worklist feed referencing a nonexistent event.
WORKLISTFEED-04	Worklist feed referencing a nonexistent worklist name.	Remove the worklist feed referencing a nonexistent worklist name.
WORKLISTFEED-05	Worklist feed referencing a nonexistent "From" user.	Remove the worklist feed referencing a nonexistent user.
QUERYFEED-01	Query feed definition referencing a nonexistent query.	Remove the query feed referencing the nonexistent query.
QUERYFEED-02	Query feed parameter definition referencing a nonexistent query bind.	<p>Remove the query feed parameter referencing a nonexistent query bind.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PARMS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;' AND PTFT_FIELD_NAME = '&lt;FIELDNAME&gt;'</pre>
QUERYFEED-03	Query feed entry element maps to a template that referencing a nonexistent query result column.	<p>Remove query feed entry template referencing a nonexistent query result column.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ATTRS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID= '&lt;FEEDID&gt;' AND PTFT_FIELD_NAME = '&lt;QRYFLDNAME&gt;'</pre>

To remove a feed shown in these audits:

- FEED-01
- GENERICFEED-01
- WORKLISTFEED-01
- WORKLISTFEED-02

- WORKLISTFEED-03
- WORKLISTFEED-04
- WORKLISTFEED-05
- QUERYFEED-01

Run the following SQL:

```
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ADMN_PREF WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_USER_PREF WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ATTRS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_ATTRS_LANG WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_FEED WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_FEED_LANG WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PARMS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PARMS_LANG WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PUB_SITES WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PVALS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_PVALS_LANG WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_SECURITY WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
DELETE FROM PS_PTFP_SETTINGS WHERE PTFP_FEED_ID IN ('<FEEDID>');
```

## Field Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
FIELD-3	This query lists invalid default fields.	Modify the default value in record field properties.
FIELD-4	This query lists fields that are used in record definitions but do not exist in PSDBFIELD.	Define the field in Application Designer.
FIELD-5	This query lists fields that have multiple default field labels in PSDBFLDLABL.	Open the field, select the default label, and save.
FIELD-06	This query lists deleted fields that have orphaned field labels in PSDBFLDLABL.	Run this SQL:  DELETE FROM PSDBFLDLABL WHERE FIELDNAME NOT IN (SELECT FIELDNAME FROM PSDBFIELD)

## Integration Broker Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
IBRK-01	Message parts referencing a message/version that does not exist.	Most likely caused by moving a container message in a project and not including all the part messages. Always make sure that when moving a container message in a project, every part message is also included if it doesn't already exist in the target database.
IBRK-02	Rowset based messages referencing records that do not exist.	Most likely caused by moving a message in a project and not including records referenced in the message. Always make sure that when moving a rowset-based message in a project, every record that is not in the target database is also included in the project.
IBRK-03	Message parts must reference message/versions that are defined as part messages.	Most likely caused by moving a container message in a project and not including records referenced in the message. By definition, only part messages can be found in a container message. Always make sure that when moving a container message in a project, every part message contained is also in the project, unless the part message is already in the target database defined as a part message.
IBRK-04	Service operations need at least one version, the default.	Service operations cannot exist without a service operation version. These are separate managed objects and can therefore be added individually into a project. However, care must be taken when moving service operations in projects to always include the default version if it doesn't already exist in the target database.
IBRK-05	Service references service operation(s) that do not exist	<p>This audit reports any services that contain service operations that don't exist. Typically, this is caused when moving a service from one database to another by including the service in the project but not including all related service operations.</p> <p>Care must be taken when moving services to always include the associated service operations in the project, unless the same service already exists in the target database.</p>
IBRK-06	Service operation versions must have a valid Service operation	Service operations and service operation versions are separately managed objects. When moving service operation versions in a project, be sure to include the service operation with the same name unless the service operation already exists in the target database.
IBRK-07	Handlers must have a valid service operation.	Service operation handlers and service operations are separately managed objects. When moving handlers, be sure to include the related service operation unless the operation already exists in the target database.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
IBRK-08	<p>Routings must reference a valid service operation version.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> Routing IB_ADMIN_ROUTING is excluded because it is a dummy routing used during upgrade to 8.48.</p>	Service operation routings and service operation versions are separately managed objects. When moving routings, be sure to include the related service operation version unless the operation version already exists in the target database.
IBRK-09	Routings must reference valid nodes	Service operation routings and nodes are separately managed objects. When moving routings, be sure to include any related Node that doesn't exist in the target database.
IBRK-10	Routings must reference valid service operation handlers	Service operation routings and service operation Handlers are separately managed objects. When moving routings, be sure to include the related service operation Handlers that appear in the routing component unless the Handlers already exist in the target database.
IBRK-11	Routing parameters must reference valid transform application engine programs	Service operation routings reference application engine transform programs. When moving routings, be sure to include any referenced Application Engine programs unless the programs that appear in the routing parameter component already exist in the target database.
IBRK-12	Routing parameters must reference valid message/version combinations.	Service operation routings reference messages. When moving routings, be sure to include any referenced messages unless the messages that appear in the routing parameter component already exist in the target database.
IBRK-13	Service operation versions need to reference valid messages	Service operation versions reference messages. When moving versions in a project, be sure to include any referenced messages unless the messages that appear in the service operation or service operation versions component already exist in the target database.
IBRK-14	Service operation versions need to reference valid queues	Service operation versions reference Integration Broker queues. When moving versions in a project, be sure to include any referenced queues unless the queues that appear in the service operation or service operation versions component already exist in the target database.
IBRK-15	Service operation versions need to reference valid transform programs	Service operation versions reference application engine transform programs. When moving versions in a project, be sure to include any referenced application engine programs unless the programs that appear in the service operation versions component already exist in the target database.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
IBRK-16	Service operation versions with validation turned on require each -- message to have a schema defined	Service operations versions with validation turned on (see the Service Operations component), require all referenced messages to have schemas defined. When moving service operation versions that have validation turned on, include all referenced messages unless the referenced messages already exist in the target database with valid schemas. Also note that when moving messages in projects the related schemas are not brought along. These need to be moved via Data Mover scripts. (PSIBMSGSCHEMA_IMP.DMS and PSIBMSGSCHEMA_EXP.DMS)
IBRK-17	Component interface handlers should reference valid component interfaces.	Service operation handlers that are of type CI reference component interfaces. When moving service operation handlers, be sure to also include any referenced component interfaces in the project unless the CIs already exist in the target database.
IBRK-18	Application class handlers should reference valid application packages	Service operation handlers that are of type Application Class reference application classes. When moving service operation Handlers, be sure to also include any referenced application classes in the project unless they already exist in the target database. Care must be taken to make sure that the referenced application class PeopleCode is also included in the project.
IBRK-19	Part messages need to have a schema defined.	When moving messages in projects, the related schemas are not brought along. The schemas need to be moved using Data Mover scripts. (see PSIBMSGSCHEMA_IMP.DMS and PSIBMSGSCHEMA_EXP.DMS). For part messages, having a schema is mandatory.
IBRK-20	Container messages need to have a schema defined.	When moving messages in projects, the related schemas are not brought along. These need to be moved using Data Mover scripts. (see PSIBMSGSCHEMA_IMP.DMS and PSIBMSGSCHEMA_EXP.DMS). For container messages, having a schema is mandatory.
IBRK-21	Operations with duplicate routings.	This audit reports service operations with multiple active routings where the sender and receiver node are identical. There should never be multiple active routings where the sender and receiver node are identical for a service operation.  Delete or inactivate one of the offending routings for each service operation.



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
IBRK-22	Operations with duplicate ANY routings	<p>This audit reports service operations with multiple active routings where the sender node is set to <i>ANY</i>. There should never be multiple active routings where the sender node is set to <i>ANY</i> for a service operation.</p> <p>Delete or inactivate one of the offending routings for each service operation.</p> <p>You can change the status of one of the duplicate routings as follows:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSIBRTNGDEFN SET EFF_STATUS = 'I' WHERE ROUTINGDEFNNAME = &lt;NAME&gt; AND EFFDT = &lt;EFFDT&gt;</pre> <p>To delete a duplicate routing, select PeopleTools, Integration Broker, System Utilities, Service Administration. On the Routings tab, find the routing to remove and remove it. Alternatively, you can run the following set of SQL statements:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSIBRTNGDEFN WHERE ROUTINGDEFNNAME = &lt;NAME&gt; AND EFFDT = &lt;EFFDT&gt;</pre> <pre>DELETE FROM PSIBRTNGSUBDEFN WHERE ROUTINGDEFNNAME = &lt;NAME&gt; AND EFFDT = &lt;EFFDT&gt;</pre> <pre>DELETE FROM PSRTNGDFNPARM WHERE ROUTINGDEFNNAME = &lt;NAME&gt; AND EFFDT = &lt;EFFDT&gt;</pre> <pre>DELETE FROM PSRTNGDFNCONPRP WHERE ROUTINGDEFNNAME = &lt;NAME&gt; AND EFFDT = &lt;EFFDT&gt;</pre>
IBRK-23	Operation with no Service Relationship	<p>There should never be operations referencing services that don't exist. Typically, this is caused when importing a project containing a service operation that belongs to a service that does not exist in the target database.</p> <p>Always make sure that the services that a service operation belongs to exist in the target database or are included in the import project.</p> <p>All service operations must belong to at least one service.</p>
IBRK-24	DMS Handler referencing invalid message	<p>This audit identifies handlers of type Data Mover with a missing message. Certain Data Mover handlers require an associated message. When moving Data Mover handlers in a project, all related messages should also be included.</p> <p>To resolve issues, locate the message(s) in the database that was used to create the handler. Import that message into the target database (where you ran SYSAUDIT).</p> <p>If you can't locate the message, recreate the handler in the source database and then be sure to include both the handler and the related message in the project, and import the project.</p>

## Menu Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
MENU-01	A row in the MenuItem table has no corresponding row in the MenuDefinition table.	Issue the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSMENUITEM WHERE MENUName = 'x' ;
MENU-02	A component-type menu item specifies no component.	Use the Menu Designer to change each of these menu items to reference an existing component.
MENU-03	A menu item has a specified component, but that component has no corresponding row in the ComponentDefinition table.	Use the Menu Designer to change each of these menu items to reference an existing component.
MENU-04	A PeopleCode-type menu item has a specified enabling component, but that component is not specified for any component-type menu item within the same menu. (Such menu items never get enabled at runtime.)	Use the Menu Designer to change each of these menu items to reference a component that is associated with a component-type menu item within the same menu.
MENU-05	A menu has no rows in the MenuItem table.	Use the Menu Designer to add any appropriate menu items to each of these menus.

## Optimization Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
OPTZN-01	Problem type records that do not have matching record definitions.	Execute the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSOPTREC WHERE RECNAME = 'recordname' ;  DELETE FROM PSOPTFIELD WHERE RECNAME = 'recordname' ;

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
OPTZN-02	Optimization delete records that do not have matching definitions.	In Application Designer, open the base record definition properties. Clear the optimization delete record name, and perform an alter.
OPTZN-03	Optimization base record has fields that delete record does not.	Using Application Designer, delete the optimization delete record definition, drop the table, and recreate it by cloning the base record. Run Build. You may need to recreate triggers on the base record on some platforms where deferred processing is not done.
OPTZN-04	Optimization delete record has fields that base record does not.	Using Application Designer, delete the optimization delete record definition, drop the table and recreate it by cloning the base record. Run Build. You may need to recreate triggers on the base record on some platforms where deferred processing is not done.
OPTZN-06	Optimization base record defn has the trigger flag set but has no delete record name, or vice versa.	Using Application Designer, open the record definition properties, make sure that the optimization delete record name is set, and save. Build the record with the create triggers check box set to create optimization triggers.
OPTZN-07	Optimization records that need to have trigger flag set and do not.	Using Application Designer, open the record definition properties, make sure that the optimization delete record name is set, and save. Build the record with the create triggers check box set to create optimization triggers.
OPTZN-08	Optimization records that have trigger flag set but are not marked readable in any problem type.	Using Application Designer, open the record definition properties, clear the optimization delete record name and alter the record to drop optimization triggers as they are no longer needed but affect performance.
OPTZN-10	Optimization Tools table PSOPTSYNC does not have an entry for the listed opt records, that are marked READABLE in PSOPTREC.	Open the problem type definition in Application Designer, make sure that the readable flags are set correctly for each readable record, and save the problem type definition.
OPTZN-11	Optimization Tools table PSOPTSYNC does not have an entry with PROBINST = \$ALL\$ and is marked as NON SCENARIO_MANAGED and READABLE in PSOPTREC.	Using Problem Type Designer, make sure that the readable flags are set correctly for each readable record. Make sure that the scenario_managed flags are set correctly. Save the problem type definition.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
OPTZN-12	Optimization Tools table PSOPTSYNC has extra entries for the listed record names that are not there in PSOPTREC.	Submit the following SQL to remove extra entries in PSOPTSYNC table.  DELETE FROM PSOPTSYNC WHERE RECNAME NOT IN (SELECT RECNAME FROM PSOPTREC)
OPTZN-13	The following record names in Optimization Tools table PSOPTREC do not have at least one field listed in the PSOPTFIELD table.	Open the problem type definition in Application Designer. Make sure that for every record in the problem type definition at least one field is selected to be loaded in the problem instance.
OPTZN-14	For the following transaction parameter of type RECARRAY, the default value contains an invalid record name.	Open the problem type definition in Application Designer. Inspect the offending transaction parameter and make sure that the default value contains a valid record name.
OPTZN-15	PSOPTSOLVERCODE table is empty for the listed problem types.	You may ignore this if none of the problem types need a third-party solver. Otherwise, populate the PSOPTSOLVERCODE table with the third-party solver license key. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Optimization, Solver Licenses.
OPTZN-16	PSOPTSOLVERCODE table has a null licence key for the listed problem types.	You may ignore this if the plugin does not need a third-party solver. Otherwise populate the PSOPTSOLVERCODE table with the third-party solver licence key. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Optimization, Solver Licenses.
OPTZN-17	This query identifies readable base records in an analytic type that don't have an optimization delete record specified.	In Application Designer, either specify a delete record for the analytic type record, or clear the Readable check box for the analytic type record.
OPTZN-18	This query identifies base records in an analytic type that have an optimization delete record specified, but aren't readable.	In Application Designer, either select the Readable check box for the analytic type record, or don't specify an optimization delete record for the analytic type record.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
OPTZN-19	This query identifies base records and their associated delete records in an analytic type that don't have all fields in the same order.	In Application Designer, change the field order of one of the records to match the field order of the other record.
OPTZN-21	This query identifies fields in main records used in an analytic model that aren't selected in the analytic type associated with that model.	In Application Designer, either specify an appropriate record in the analytic model, or select the appropriate corresponding fields in the analytic type definition.
OPTZN-22	This query identifies fields in aggregate records used in an analytic model that aren't selected in the analytic type associated with the model.	In Application Designer, either specify an appropriate record in the analytic model, or select the appropriate corresponding fields in the analytic type definition.

## Page Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PAGE-01	Page definition's page field count is not equal to the count of its page fields in the PageField table, and there is at least one row in the PageField table for that page.	Enter the following SQL:  <pre>SELECT COUNT( * ) FROM PSPNLFIELD WHERE PNLNAME = 'x' ;  UPDATE PSPNLDEFN SET FIELDcount = count WHERE PNLNAME = 'x' ;</pre>
PAGE-02	Page definition's page field count is not equal to zero, but there are no rows in the PageField table for that page definition.	Enter the following SQL:  <pre>UPDATE PSPNLDEFN SET FIELDcount = 0 WHERE PNLNAME = 'x' ;</pre>
PAGE-03	A subpage contains itself as a page field.	Use the Page Designer to change each of these page fields to reference a different subpage.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PAGE-04	A row in the PageField has no corresponding row in the PageDefinition table.	Issue the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSPNLFIELD WHERE PNLNAME = 'x' ;
PAGE-05	A subpage-type page field has no corresponding row in the Page Definition table for its specified subpage.	Use the Page Designer to change each of these page fields to reference an existing subpage.
PAGE-06	A page field's specified record/field has no corresponding row in the RecordField table.	Use the Page Designer to change each of these page fields to reference an existing record/field.
PAGE-07	A row in the ComponentItem table has no corresponding row in the ComponentDefinition table.	Issue the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSPNLGROUP WHERE PNLGRPNAME = 'x' ;
PAGE-08	A component item's specified page has no corresponding row in the PageDefinition table.	Use Application Designer to replace each of these component items with one that references an existing page.
PAGE-09	A component's specified access detail page has no corresponding row in the PageDefinition table.	Use Application Designer to change each of these components to reference an access detail page that exists.
PAGE -10	A component's specified search record has no corresponding row in the RecordDefinition table.	Use Application Designer to change each of these components to reference a search record that exists.
PAGE-11	A component's specified add search record has no corresponding row in the RecordDefinition table.	Use Application Designer to change each of these components to reference an add search record that exists.
PAGE-12	There is a discrepancy between MAXPNLFLDID on the page definition table (PSPNLDEFN) and PNLFLDID on the page field table (PSPNLFIELD).	Use your SQL Editor to set PSPNLDEFN.MAXPNLFLDID equal to the highest PSPNLFIELD.PNLFLDID value for the page.

## PeopleCode Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
PEOPLECODE-1	The PeopleCode Name table contains a program name that does not exist in PcmProgram table	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSPCMNAME WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPCMPROG B WHERE B.OBJECTID1 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID1 AND B.OBJECTVALUE1 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE1 AND B.OBJECTID2 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID2 AND B.OBJECTVALUE2 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE2 AND B.OBJECTID3 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID3 AND B.OBJECTVALUE3 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE3 AND B.OBJECTID4 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID4 AND B.OBJECTVALUE4 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE4 AND B.OBJECTID5 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID5 AND B.OBJECTVALUE5 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE5 AND B.OBJECTID6 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTID6 AND B.OBJECTVALUE6 = PSPCMNAME.OBJECTVALUE6 ) </pre>

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
PEOPLECODE-2	The PeopleCode Program table contains a program name that does not exist in the PcmName table.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE NAMECOUNT &lt;&gt; 0 AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPCMNAME B WHERE PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID1 = B.OBJECTID1 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE1 = B.OBJECTVALUE1 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID2 = B.OBJECTID2 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE2 = B.OBJECTVALUE2 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID3 = B.OBJECTID3 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE3 = B.OBJECTVALUE3 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID4 = B.OBJECTID4 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE4 = B.OBJECTVALUE4 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID5 = B.OBJECTID5 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE5 = B.OBJECTVALUE5 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID6 = B.OBJECTID6 AND PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE6 = B.OBJECTVALUE6 ) </pre>



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PEOPLECODE-3	The PeopleCode Program table name count does not match the record count in PcmName table.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> UPDATE PSPCMPROG SET NAMECOUNT = (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSPCMNAME C WHERE C.OBJECTID1 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID1 AND C.OBJECTVALUE1 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE1 AND C.OBJECTID2 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID2 AND C.OBJECTVALUE2 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE2 AND C.OBJECTID3 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID3 AND C.OBJECTVALUE3 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE3 AND C.OBJECTID4 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID4 AND C.OBJECTVALUE4 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE4 AND C.OBJECTID5 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID5 AND C.OBJECTVALUE5 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE5 AND C.OBJECTID6 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTID6 AND C.OBJECTVALUE6 = PSPCMPROG.OBJECTVALUE6 ) </pre>
PEOPLECODE-4	PeopleCode contains invalid FILELAYOUT References.	Open the PeopleCode program in Application Designer and correct the invalid reference.
PEOPLECODE-5	PeopleCode reference to an invalid record or field.	Open the PeopleCode program in Application Designer and correct the invalid reference.
PEOPLECODE-6	PeopleCode reference to an invalid field.	Open the PeopleCode program in Application Designer and correct the invalid field name.
PEOPLECODE-7	There is orphaned Application Package PeopleCode.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE OBJECTID1 = 104 AND OBJECTID2 = 107 AND OBJECTVALUE2 NOT IN (SELECT APPCLASSID FROM PSAPPCLASSDEFN P WHERE P.PACKAGEROOT = OBJECTVALUE1 AND P.APPCLASSID = OBJECTVALUE2 ) </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PEOPLECODE-8	There is orphaned Application Package PeopleCode.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE OBJECTID1 = 104 AND OBJECTID2 = 105 AND OBJECTID3 = 107 AND OBJECTVALUE3 NOT IN (SELECT APPCLASSID FROM PSAPPCLASSDEFN P WHERE P.PACKAGEROOT = OBJECTVALUE1 AND P.QUALIFYPATH = OBJECTVALUE2 AND P.APPCLASSID = OBJECTVALUE3)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PEOPLECODE-9	There is orphaned Application Package PeopleCode.	<p>For Microsoft SQL Server, run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE OBJECTID1 = 104 AND OBJECTID2 = 105 AND OBJECTID3 = 106 AND OBJECTID4 = 107 AND OBJECTVALUE4 NOT IN (SELECT APPCLASSID FROM PSAPPCLASSDEFN F WHERE F.PACKAGEROOT = OBJECTVALUE1 AND F.QUALIFYPATH = RTRIM(OBJECTVALUE2)+ ':' + RTRIM(OBJECTVALUE3) AND F.APPCLASSID = OBJECTVALUE4)</pre> <p>For Informix, run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE OBJECTID1 = 104 AND OBJECTID2 = 105 AND OBJECTID3 = 106 AND OBJECTID4 = 107 AND OBJECTVALUE4 NOT IN (SELECT APPCLASSID FROM PSAPPCLASSDEFN F WHERE F.PACKAGEROOT = OBJECTVALUE1 AND QUALIFYPATH = TRIM(P.OBJECTVALUE2)    ':'    TRIM(P.OBJECTVALUE3) AND F.APPCLASSID = OBJECTVALUE4)</pre> <p>For all other DB platforms</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSPCMPROG WHERE OBJECTID1 = 104 AND OBJECTID2 = 105 AND OBJECTID3 = 106 AND OBJECTID4 = 107 AND OBJECTVALUE4 NOT IN (SELECT APPCLASSID FROM PSAPPCLASSDEFN F WHERE F.PACKAGEROOT = OBJECTVALUE1 AND QUALIFYPATH = RTRIM(P.OBJECTVALUE2)    ':'    RTRIM(P.OBJECTVALUE3) AND F.APPCLASSID = OBJECTVALUE4)</pre>

## Process Scheduler

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
PRCSSCHED-01	SQR-Related Process Definitions (PS_PRCSDDEFN) that override the PARMLIST field from the Process Type Definition (PS_PRCSTYPEDEFN).	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Override Options. Remove the value that is assigned to the Parameter List field.  <b>Note.</b> The PRRSCHED-01 query is intended to be a warning. If the override of the parameter list that is specified in the process type definition is intentional, then the above action can be bypassed.
PRCSSCHED-03	Process Definitions (PS_PRCSDDEFN), where the OUTDESTTYPE should be set to NONE.	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes Destination. In the Output Destination Options group, set the Type option to <i>(None)</i> .
PRCSSCHED-04	Process Definitions, where the API AWARE should be set to true.	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Process Definition. Select the check box that reads API Aware.  If API Aware is not marked, this process gets an incorrect run status when it's viewed from Process Monitor. For additional information, please refer to the Process Scheduler PeopleBook.
PRCSSCHED-05	Process Definitions, where process type is not found in the Process Type Definition .	This occurs when a Process Definition is copied from another PeopleSoft database by using project upgrade. However, the Process Type definition that is associated with this Process Definition is not copied into the database. Review the project upgrade that is used to create the Process Definition. Create another project upgrade to copy Process Type definition from the database where the Process Definition originated.
PRCSSCHED-06	Process Job Item (PS_PRCJOBITEM), where Process Type is listed as a job item, but is not found in the Process Definition (PS_PRCSDDEFN).	This occurs when a PSJob is copied from another PeopleSoft database by using a project upgrade. However, the Process Definition for one or more job items in the PSJob is not copied from the database. Review the project upgrade that is used to create the PSJob. Create another project upgrade to copy the Process Definitions that are identified in this report from the database where the PSJob originated.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PRCSSCHED-07	Server Class List (PS_SERVERCLASS), where Process Type is not found in the Process Type Definition (PS_PRCSTYPEDEFN).	This occurs when a Server Definition is copied from another database by using a project upgrade. However, a process type in the Server Class list is not found in the Process Type Definition. Create another project upgrade to copy the Process Type definition from the database where the Server Definition is created.
PRCSSCHED-08	Process Definitions, where the process category is invalid	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Process Definition. Correct the Process Category.
PRCSSCHED-09	Job Definitions, where the process category is invalid.	For the listed jobs, select Process Scheduler, Jobs, Job Definition. Correct the Process Category.
PRCSSCHED-10	Process Definitions, where the process category is missing.	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Process Definition. Specify a Process Category.
PRCSSCHED-11	Job Definitions, where the process category is missing.	For the listed jobs, select Process Scheduler, Jobs, Job Definition. Specify a Process Category.
PRCSSCHED-12	Server Categories, where a category defined for a server does not exist in process category definition.	For the listed servers, select Process Scheduler, Servers, Server Definition. Remove the invalid Process Category.
PRCSSCHED-13	Server Categories, where a server is missing a process category definition.	For the listed servers, select Process Scheduler, Servers, Server Definition.  A warning message appears when you open the page, and the missing Process Category is added to the server when the page is saved.
PRCSSCHED-14	Process Scheduler Queue, where a queued/pending request specifies a category that does not exist in process category definition.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PSPRCSQUE S WHERE S.RUNSTATUS IN ('5', '16') AND S.SERVERNAMERQST &lt;&gt; '' AND S.PRCSCATEGORY NOT IN (SELECT PRCSCATEGORY FROM PS_SERVERCATEGORY WHERE SERVERNAME = S.SERVERNAMERQST AND MAXCONCURRENT &gt; 0)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
PRCSSCHED-15	Process Definitions, where a process specifies an invalid destination folder.	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Destination. Correct the Destination Folder or blank it out.
PRCSSCHED-16	Process Definitions, where a process definition specifies a recovery process that does not exist.	For the listed processes, select Process Scheduler, Processes, Process Definition Options. Correct the recovery process or blank it out.
PRCSSCHED-17	Job Definitions, where a job definition specifies a recovery process that does not exist.	For the listed jobs, select Process Scheduler, Jobs, Job Definition Options. Correct the recovery process or blank it out.
PRCSSCHED-18	There are queued processes in tables used by Process Scheduler (PSPRCSPARMS and PSPRCSRQST) containing a DBNAME different than the current database name.	<p>This situation can occur when a database has been renamed.</p> <p>To resolve the database name, shut down the Process Scheduler server(s), and run the MGRPRCSTBL Application Engine program from the command line.</p> <p>See <i>Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Application Engine</i>, "Managing Application Engine Programs," Using the Command Line to Invoke Application Engine Programs.</p>

## Query Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
QUERY-01	Query Definition Select count does not match the record count that is in the Query Select table. The query definition is corrupt.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSQRYDEFN WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYSELECT WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYRECORD WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYFIELD WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYCRITERIA WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYEXPR WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYBIND WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y' </pre>
QUERY-02	Query Definition Expression count does not match the record count in the Query Expression table.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> UPDATE PSQRYDEFN SET EXPCOUNT = (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSQRYEXPR C WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y') WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y' </pre>
QUERY-03	Query Definition Bind count does not match the record count in the Query Bind table	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> UPDATE PSQRYDEFN SET BNDCOUNT = (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSQRYBIND WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y') WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y' </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
QUERY-04	Query Definition Record name does not exist in the Record Definition table.	See resolution for QUERY-07.
QUERY-05	Query Definition Record JoinRecord name does not exist in the Query Record table	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-06	Query Definition Record JoinField name does not exist in the Query Field table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-07	Query Field Record Name does not exist in Record Definition Table	<p>To salvage the query, you must use Application Designer to re-create the record definition.</p> <p>Having re-created the record, run Query and open the offending query. Remove or repair the affected areas and save the query.</p> <p>Or, if the query is not important, you can delete the entire query definition by using the resolution for QRY-01.</p>
QUERY-08	Query Definition Field name does not exist in the Field Definition table	<p>If the record on which this field appears is deleted, you have seen errors for every referenced field that belongs to the deleted record. If this is the case, see the resolution for QUERY-1.</p> <p>If this is not the case, some fields that the query depends on are either deleted or renamed. Run Query and open the offending query. Query automatically repairs itself and updates the query definition in the database.</p>
QUERY-09	Query Selection Record count does not match the record count in Query Record table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-10	Query Selection Field count does not match the record count in Query Field table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-11	Query Selection Criteria count does not match the record count in Query Criteria table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
QUERY-11A	Query Selection Criteria having count does not match the record count in Query Criteria table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-12	Query Selection Parent select number does not exist in Query Select table.	See resolution for QUERY-01.
QUERY-13	Query Criteria Selection-Left does not exist in the Query Selection table.	Run Query and delete the corrupted criteria entry. If you can't open the query, run the following SQL to delete the corrupted criteria entry:  DELETE FROM PSQRYCRITERIA WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y' AND CRTNUM = count
QUERY-14	Query Criteria Selection-Right1 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-15	Query Criteria Selection-Right2 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-16	Query Criteria Field-Left does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-17	Query Criteria Field-Right1 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-18	Query Criteria Field-Right2 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-19	Query Criteria Expression-Right1 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.
QUERY-20	Query Criteria Expression-Right2 does not exist in the Query Selection table.	See resolution for QUERY-13.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
QUERY-22	This audit identifies queries that were created without PUBLIC access.	This is normal; the audit insures that PeopleSoft does not deliver nonpublic queries as part of its standard delivered products.
QUERY-23	This audit identifies queries that reference non-existent database records. The query definitions are corrupt.	<p>This is an internal PeopleSoft audit. Call GCS for resolution.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSQRYDEFN WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYSELECT WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYRECORD WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYFIELD WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYCRITERIA WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYEXPR WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'  DELETE FROM PSQRYBIND WHERE OPRID = 'X' AND QRYNAME = 'Y'</pre>
QUERY-24	This audit identifies queries that were created with the name UNTITLED.	Queries should not be saved as UNTITLED. Either rename or delete these queries.
QUERY-25	This audit identifies queries that were created with blank query names.	You must either rename or delete these queries.
QUERY-26	This audit identifies queries that contain unions but select an unequal number of fields.	Ensure that every select statement in the query has an equal number of fields selected. These fields must also match in display type and length.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
QUERY-27	This audit identifies the queries that reference query translate fields that have been incorrectly modified to a non-translate type. When run in Microsoft Windows Query Manager, queries that reference these fields might return an inaccurate zero result set because the query metadata is corrupt.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>UPDATE PSQRYFIELD SET XLATTYPE = 1 WHERE FIELDNAME IN (&lt;list of fieldnames from the audit&gt;)</pre>

## Record Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
RECORD-1	Record Definition Field count does not match the number of records in Record Field table.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSRECFIELD WHERE RECNAME = 'X'; UPDATE PSRECDEFN SET FIELDCCOUNT = COUNT WHERE RECNAME = 'X';</pre>
RECORD-2	Record Definition Fields do not exist in Record Field table.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>UPDATE PSRECDEFN SET FIELDCCOUNT = 0 WHERE RECNAME = 'X';</pre> <p>Or</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECNAME = 'X';</pre>
RECORD-3	Record Definition Parent Record does not exist in Record Definition table.	Use Application Designer to open the definition. Select File, Object Properties, Use and specify a valid parent record.
RECORD-4	Record Definition SubRecord does not exist in Record Definition table.	Use Application Designer to open the definition. Select File, Object Properties, Type and specify a valid subrecord.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
RECORD-5	Record Definition Query Security Record does not exist in Record Definition table	Use Application Designer to open the definition. Select File, Object Properties, Use and specify a valid query security record.
RECORD-6	Record Field definitions contain record names that do not exist in the Record Definition table.	Run the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSRECFIELD WHERE RECNAME = 'X'
RECORD-7	DBField records do not exist for the following RecField table Fields.	Use Application Designer to open the definition and fix the invalid fields.
RECORD-8	Record definitions do not exist for the following RecField table SubRecords.	Use Application Designer to open the definition and fix the invalid fields.
RECORD-9	Invalid record definitions in record group definitions.	Run the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PS_REC_GROUP_REC WHERE RECNAME NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN)

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
RECORD-11	Record definitions that contain more than two Long character field types.	<p><b>Note.</b> The use of LONG data types can introduce performance overhead for multiple database platforms.</p> <p>For DB2 zOS, the use of multiple LONG fields in a single record definition is <i>highly discouraged</i>. The use of the LONG data type for DB2 zOS creates situations in which the maximum row length is determined by the page size, less the sum of the lengths of the columns that precede the LONG column in the row. This means that the length becomes variable as the size of the LONG changes. This can lead to performance overhead, and in some cases, LONG data that no longer fits the row. Judicious use of the LONG data type for DB2 zOS is required, and placing multiple LONGs in a single record definition is discouraged.</p> <p>For the Oracle platform, the judicious use of multiple LOB data types in a single record definition is recommended. The use of multiple LONG fields in a single record definition is supported. Multiple LONG support is made possible with the adoption of the CLOB (Character Large Object) and BLOB (Binary Large Object) Oracle LOB data types. While technically possible, you should exercise caution when using multiple LOBs in a single record definition because of potential performance overhead which might occur based on the placement and actual size of the LOB.</p>
RECORD-12	Record definitions with a blank or null record name value.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECNAME = ' '</pre>
RECORD-13	Temp records that specify a non-standard SQL table name.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSRECDEFN SET SQLTABLENAME = ' ' WHERE RECTYPE = 7 AND SQLTABLENAME &lt;&gt; ' '</pre>

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
RECORD-14	The Field Number field in the RecordField table has an invalid value.	<p>If the reported record was delivered by PeopleSoft or generated as part of an upgrade, contact the GCS. Run the following SQL to determine which fields need to be updated:</p> <pre> SELECT FIELD COUNT FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECNAME= 'X' ;  SELECT FIELDNUM FROM PSRECFIELD WHERE RECNAME= 'X' ORDER BY FIELDNUM; </pre> <p><b>Note.</b> The PSRECFIELD.FIELDNUM values should be numbered sequentially 1 through PSRECDEFN.FIELD COUNT. If any value is skipped then renumber the FIELDNUM values accordingly.</p>

## Related Language Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
SYSLANG-01	Base language records that are found in the PSRECDEFNLANG table.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSRECDEFNLANG WHERE LANGUAGE_CD = ( SELECT B.LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPTIONS B) </pre>
SYSLANG-02	Base language fields that are found in the PSDBFIELDLANG table.	<p>Check the value of LANGUAGE_CD on PSOPTIONS; this is the base language. Entries with this language code are found in PSDBFIELDLANG. Base language entries should only be in PSDBFIELD.</p> <p>After you establish that the base language entries in PSDBFIELD are correct, you delete them from PSDBFIELDLANG as follows:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSDBFIELDLANG WHERE LANGUAGE_CD = ( SELECT LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPTIONS ) </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SYSLANG-03	Foreign language records that are found in PSRECDEFNLANG table without related base records from PSRECDEFN.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PSRECDEFNLANG WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSRECDEFN B WHERE PSRECDEFNLANG.RECNAME = B.RECNAME) AND PSRECDEFNLANG.LANGUAGE_CD &lt;&gt; (SELECT C.LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPTIONS C)</pre>
SYSLANG-04	Foreign Language fields that are found in the PSDBFIELDLANG table without related Base Fields from PSDBFIELD.	Run the following SQL:  <pre>DELETE FROM PSDBFIELDLANG WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSDBFIELD B WHERE PSDBFIELDLANG.FIELDNAME= B.FIELDNAME) AND PSDBFIELDLANG.LANGUAGE_CD &lt;&gt; (SELECT LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPTIONS)</pre>
SYSLANG-05	Foreign Language translate fields that are found in the XLATTABLE table without related base language translate fields.	Either delete the offending entries using SQL, or use Application Designer to add the equivalent entries in the base language of the database. To delete the offending entries using your platform query tool, first, perform a SELECT to verify the rows indicated in the report. Then, delete the selected rows.  <pre>SELECT A.LANGUAGE_CD, A.FIELDNAME, A.FIELDVALUE, A.EFFDT FROM PSXLATITEMLANG A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSXLATITEM B WHERE A.FIELDNAME = B.FIELDNAME AND A.FIELDVALUE = B.FIELDVALUE AND A.EFFDT = B.EFFDT);  DELETE FROM PSXLATITEMLANG A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSXLATITEM B WHERE A.FIELDNAME = B.FIELDNAME AND A.FIELDVALUE = B.FIELDVALUE AND A.EFFDT = B.EFFDT);</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SYSLANG-07	Related Language records which are not valid records.	<p>In Application Designer, delete the specified Related Language Records. Or, use your platform query tool to delete the related language reference for each record that is listed. First, perform a SELECT to verify the rows indicated in the report. Then, update the selected rows.</p> <pre> SELECT A.RECNAME, A.RELLANGRECNAME, A.OBJECTOWNERID FROM PSRECDEFN A WHERE A.RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND A.RELLANGRECNAME NOT IN (SELECT B.RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN B) ORDER BY A.RECNAME;  UPDATE PSRECDEFN SET RELLANGRECNAME = ' ' WHERE RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND RELLANGRECNAME NOT IN (SELECT B.RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN B); </pre>
SYSLANG-08	The displayed Related Language Records are effective-dated but do not have an EFFDT field defined.	In Application Designer, add EFFDT to the specified related language table.
SYSLANG-09	The displayed Related Language records point to another Related Language record	<p>In Application Designer, delete the related language reference for each record that is listed. Or, use your platform query tool to delete the related language reference for each record that is listed. First, perform a SELECT to verify the rows indicated in the report. Then, update the selected rows.</p> <pre> SELECT A.RECNAME, A.RELLANGRECNAME, B.RELLANGRECNAME, A.OBJECTOWNERID FROM PSRECDEFN A, PSRECDEFN B WHERE A.RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND A.RELLANGRECNAME = B.RECNAME AND B.RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' ORDER BY A.RECNAME;  UPDATE PSRECDEFN SET RELLANGRECNAME=' ' WHERE RECNAME IN ( SELECT A.RELLANGRECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN A, PSRECDEFN B WHERE A.RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND A.RELLANGRECNAME = B.RECNAME AND B.RELLANGRECNAME &lt;&gt; ' '); </pre>
SYSLANG-13	Identify related language records that have more than one base record defined.	In Application Designer, remove the related language table link to one of the base records.



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SYSLANG-15	The displayed Related Language fields in the PSDBFLDLABLLANG table are orphaned.	<p>Using the platform query tool, first, perform a SELECT to verify the rows indicated in the report. Then, delete the selected rows.</p> <p>This is sample SQL. Adjust accordingly for your platform:</p> <pre> SELECT A.FIELDNAME, A.LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSDBFLDLABLLANG A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSDBFIELD B WHERE A.FIELDNAME = B.FIELDNAME) ORDER BY 1,2  DELETE FROM PSDBFLDLABLLANG A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSDBFIELD B WHERE A.FIELDNAME = B.FIELDNAME) </pre>
SYSLANG-16	Invalid language code found in PSOPRDEFN.	<p>Using your SQL query tool, issue a SELECT to verify the rows indicated in the report. Update the affected rows as shown in the following sample SQL.</p> <pre> SELECT OPRID, LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPRDEFN WHERE OPRID = 'VP1'  UPDATE PSOPRDEFN SET LANGUAGE_CD = 'ENG' WHERE OPRID = 'VP1' </pre>

## Security Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-1	<p>Authorized Signon Operator does not exist in the Class Definition table. Incomplete permission list: Orphan signon times:</p> <p>(Verifies the existence of permission lists owning signon times.)</p>	<p>Delete the extra signon times. If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security.</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSAUTHSIGNON WHERE CLASSID='x' </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-2	Incomplete permission list: Orphan page permissions: (Verifies the existence of permission lists owning page permissions.)	Delete the extra page permissions. If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security.  DELETE FROM PSAUTHITEM WHERE CLASSID= 'x'
SEC-3	Incomplete permission list: Orphan process groups: (Verifies existence of permission lists owning process groups.)	Delete the extra process group authorizations. If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security.  DELETE FROM PSAUTHPRCS WHERE CLASSID= 'x'
SEC-4	Incomplete permission list: Orphan process profiles: (Verifies existence of permission lists owning process profiles.)	Delete the extra process profiles. If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security.  DELETE FROM PSPRCSPRFL WHERE CLASSID= 'x'
SEC-5	Permission list references a nonexistent process group: (Verifies the existence of process groups.)	Delete the extraneous process groups. If this group should exist, recreate it.  DELETE FROM PSAUTHPRCS WHERE CLASSID= 'x' AND PRCSGRP = 'y'
SEC-6	User profile references a role that does not exist:	Open the user profile in PeopleTools Security and remove the reference to the Role that does not exist.
SEC-7	Role references a permission list that does not exist:	Open the Role in PeopleTools Security and remove the reference to the Permission List that does not exist.
SEC-8	Role references a user that does not exist in the PSOPRDEFN table.	Remove the user from the PSROLEUSER table.
SEC-9	Permission list references a role that does not exist in the PSROLEDEFN table.	Remove the role from the PSROLECLASS table.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-17	Primary Permission List specified for user does not exist in the Permission List Definition table: (Verifies the existence of Permission Lists Assigned to User Profiles Primary Permission List.)	<p>If this is a Permission List that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Primary Permission List value for the User Profiles via the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSOPRDEFN A SET A.OPRCLASS = '' WHERE A.OPRCLASS &lt;&gt; '' AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A.OPRCLASS)</pre>
SEC-18	User named in a User-Role relationship does not exist in the User Definition table: (Verifies the existence of Users owning Roles.)	<p>If this is a User that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the User from the Role.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSROLEUSER WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSOPRDEFN B WHERE B.OPRID = A.ROLEUSER)</pre>
SEC-19	Role named in a User-Role relationship does not exist in the Role Definition table: (Verifies existence of Roles owning Users.)	<p>If this is a Role that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Role from the User.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSROLEUSER WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSROLEDEFN B WHERE B.ROLENAME = A.ROLENAME)</pre>
SEC-20	Role named in a Role-Permission List relationship does not exist in the Role Definition table: (Verifies existence of Roles owning Permission Lists.)	<p>If this is a Role that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Role From the Permission List.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSROLECLASS WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSROLEDEFN B WHERE B.ROLENAME = A.ROLENAME)</pre>
SEC-21	Permission List named in a Role-Permission List relationship does not exist in the Permission List Definition table: (Verifies the existence of process groups.)	<p>If this is a Permission List that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Permission List from the Role.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSROLECLASS WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A.CLASSID)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-24	Row Level Security Permission List specified for user does not exist in the Permission List Definition table: (Verifies the existence of Permission Lists Assigned to User Profiles Row Security Permission List.)	<p>If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Row Security Permission List value for the User Profiles via the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSOPRDEFN A SET A.ROWSECCLASS = '' WHERE A.ROWSECCLASS &lt;&gt; '' AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A.ROWSECCLASS)</pre>
SEC-25	Process Profile Permission List specified for user does not exist in the Permission List Definition table: (Verifies the existence of Permission Lists Assigned to User Profiles Process Profile Permission List.)	<p>If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Process Profile Permission List value for the User Profiles via the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSOPRDEFN A SET A.PRCSPRFCLS = '' WHERE A.PRCSPRFCLS &lt;&gt; '' AND NOT EXISTS(SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A.PRCSPRFCLS)</pre>
SEC-26	Navigator Homepage Permission List specified for user does not exist in the Permission List Definition table: (Verifies the existence of Permission Lists Assigned to User Profiles Navigator Homepage Permission List.)	<p>If this is a permission list that should exist, recreate it through PeopleTools Security. Otherwise, Delete the Navigator Homepage Permission List value for the User Profiles via the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSOPRDEFN A SET A.DEFAULTNAVHP = '' WHERE A.DEFAULTNAVHP = '' AND NOT EXISTS(SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A. DEFAULTNAVHP)</pre>
SEC-27	Access Profile specified for user does not exist in the Access Profile table:	<p>If this is an Access Profile that should exist, recreate it through AppDesigner/DataMover and or your DBA. Otherwise, Manually Change the value to a valid Access Profile or blank via Security. It is not advised to blank out the Access Profile unless you intend to disable the User Profile. If so, you can delete the Access Profile value for the User Profiles via the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSOPRDEFN A SET A.SYMBOLICID = '' WHERE NOT EXISTS(SELECT 'X' FROM PSACCESSPRFL B WHERE B.CLASSID = A. SYMBOLICID)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-28	<p>Invalid entries in the PSAUTHITEM table.</p> <p>(Continues in next row)</p>	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSAUTHITEM WHERE (PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME NOT LIKE 'WEBLIB_%' AND PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME NOT IN ('CLIENTPROCESS', 'DATA_MOVER', 'IMPORT_MANAGER', 'OBJECT_SECURITY', 'QUERY', 'PERFMONPPMI') AND PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME NOT LIKE ('APPLICATION_DESIGNER%') AND PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME &lt;&gt; 'REN' AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSMENUITEM MI WHERE PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME = MI.MENUNAME AND PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME = MI.BARNAME AND PSAUTHITEM.BARITEMNAME = MI.ITEMNAME AND (MI.ITEMTYPE IN (0, 1, 2, 3,4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11) OR (MI.ITEMTYPE = 5 AND EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPNLGRPDEFN GD, PSPNLGROUP GI WHERE MI.PNLGRPNAME = GD.PNLGRPNAME AND MI.MARKET = GD.MARKET AND GD.PNLGRPNAME = GI.PNLGRPNAME AND GD.MARKET = GI.MARKET AND PSAUTHITEM.PNLITEMNAME = GI.ITEMNAME))) </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-28	(Continued)	<pre> OR (MI.ITEMTYPE = 9 AND EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPCMNAME PCN, PSPCMPROG PCP WHERE PCN.OBJECTID1 = 3 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE1 = MI.MENUNAME AND PCN.OBJECTID2 = 4 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE2 = MI.BARNAME AND PCN.OBJECTID3 = 5 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE3 = MI.ITEMNAME AND PCN.OBJECTID4 = 12 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE4 = 'ItemSelected' AND PCN.OBJECTID1 = PCP.OBJECTID1 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE1 = PCP.OBJECTVALUE1 AND PCN.OBJECTID2 = PCP.OBJECTID2 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE2 = PCP.OBJECTVALUE2 AND PCN.OBJECTID3 = PCP.OBJECTID3 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE3 = PCP.OBJECTVALUE3 AND PCN.OBJECTID4 = PCP.OBJECTID4 AND PCN.OBJECTVALUE4 = PCP.OBJECTVALUE4)) OR (MI.ITEMTYPE = 12 AND EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSXFERITEM XI WHERE MI.MENUNAME = XI.MENUNAME AND MI.ITEMNAME = XI.ITEMNAME)))) </pre>

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
SEC-28	(Continued)	<pre> OR (PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME LIKE 'WEBLIB_%' AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPCMPROG PCP WHERE PCP.OBJECTID1 = 1 AND PCP.OBJECTVALUE1 = PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME AND PCP.OBJECTID2 = 2 AND PCP.OBJECTVALUE2 = PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME))OR (PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME IN ('CLIENTPROCESS', 'DATA_MOVER', 'IMPORT_MANAGER', 'OBJECT_SECURITY', 'QUERY', 'PERFMONPPMI')) AND (PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' OR PSAUTHITEM.BARITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' OR PSAUTHITEM.PNLITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ')) OR (PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME LIKE ('APPLICATION_DESIGNER%')) AND ((PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME NOT IN (SELECT OBJNAME FROM PS_APP_DES_OBJECTS WHERE PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME = OBJNAME)) OR PSAUTHITEM.BARITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' OR PSAUTHITEM.PNLITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ')) OR PSAUTHITEM.MENUNAME = 'REN' AND ((PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' AND PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME NOT IN (SELECT OBJNAME FROM PS_APP_DES_OBJECTS WHERE PSAUTHITEM.BARNAME = OBJNAME)) OR PSAUTHITEM.BARITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' OR PSAUTHITEM.PNLITEMNAME &lt;&gt; ' ' ) </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-29	The displayed PSPRSMPerm rows contain invalid PORTAL_PERMType values.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSPRSMPerm WHERE PORTAL_PERMType = ' ' AND EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSPRSMPerm PP2 WHERE PSPRSMPerm.PORTAL_NAME = PP2.PORTAL_NAME AND PSPRSMPerm.PORTAL_REFTYPE = PP2.PORTAL_REFTYPE AND PSPRSMPerm.PORTAL_OBJNAME = PP2.PORTAL_OBJNAME AND PSPRSMPerm.PORTAL_PERMName = PP2.PORTAL_PERMName AND PP2.PORTAL_PERMType &lt;&gt; ' ');  UPDATE PSPRSMPerm SET PORTAL_PERMType = 'P' WHERE PORTAL_PERMType = ' ' AND EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSClASSDEFN WHERE CLASSID = PSPRSMPerm.PORTAL_PERMName); </pre>
SEC-30	Missing users in the PS_ROLEXlATOPR table.	Every User that is defined in the PSOPRDEFN table should have a corresponding Role User entry in the PS_ROLEXlATOPR table.
SEC-31	Verify that the user definition table PSOPRDEFN has an entry corresponding to each user assigned to a role.	<p>The role users returned by the audit do not have corresponding user IDs in the PSOPRDEFN table. That is, the user ID's don't exist. These role users should be removed from the PS_ROLEXlATOPR table.</p> <p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PS_ROLEXlATOPR A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSOPRDEFN B WHERE B.OPRID = A.OPRID) </pre>



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SEC-32	Verify that no inactive roles exist in the PSROLEDEFN table.	<p>The roles returned by the audit need to be fixed by either deleting them or making them active.</p> <p>To remove a role, use the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSROLEDEFN WHERE ROLESTATUS &lt;&gt; 'A'</pre> <p>Or, use the Delete Roles page. Select PeopleTools, Security, Permissions &amp; Roles, Delete Roles.</p> <p>To activate inactive roles, use the following SQL:</p> <pre>UPDATE PSROLEDEFN SET ROLESTATUS = 'A' WHERE ROLESTATUS &lt;&gt; 'A'</pre>
SEC-34	Incomplete permission list: orphan service operation.	<p>Use the Integration Broker interface to open the service operation listed in the audit. On the Web Service Access page, remove any invalid permission lists.</p> <p>Or, submit the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSAUTHWS A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSCLASSDEFN B WHERE B.CLASSID = A.CLASSID)</pre>

## SQL Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SQL-01	SQL text without a base definition.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSSQLTEXTDEFN WHERE SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT SQLID FROM PSSQLDEFN)</pre>
SQL-02	SQL definitions without SQL text.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSSQLDEFN WHERE SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT SQLID FROM PSSQLTEXTDEFN)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
SQL-03	SQL descriptions without a base definition.	Run the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSSQLDESCR WHERE SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT SQLID FROM PSSQLDEFN)
SQL-04	SQL descriptions without associated SQL text.	Run the following SQL:  DELETE FROM PSSQLDESCR WHERE SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT SQLID FROM PSSQLTEXTDEFN)
SQL-05	AE SQL without SQL definitions.	This reveals Application Engine SQL Actions that do not contain any SQL code within them.  Open the Application Engine program and complete the entry of the SQL before attempting to run the program.  If the empty SQL actions are delivered by PeopleSoft, open an incident with the GCS to report the corrupt AE program.
SQL-06	AE SQL that's not referenced.	This reveals an Application Engine SQL object that is not being referenced by an AE program. This indicates that the AE program is deleted but the associated SQL is not. The orphaned SQL does not cause issues other than consuming disk space.  If the orphaned SQL is delivered by PeopleSoft, open an incident with GCS to make sure that it is not a symptom of a larger problem, such as a corrupted AE application.
SQL-07	Record Views/Dynamic Views without SQL definitions.	Complete the entry of the record view or dynamic view before attempting to build or create the view. Each record should be opened, and the SQL should be entered as required.

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
SQL-08	View SQL that are not referenced by record or dynamic views.	<p>Run the following SQL:</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSSQLDEFN WHERE SQLTYPE = 2 AND SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECTYPE = 5 OR RECTYPE = 1)  DELETE FROM PSSQLDESCR WHERE SQLTYPE = 2 AND SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECTYPE = 5 OR RECTYPE = 1)  DELETE FROM PSSQLTEXTDEFN WHERE SQLTYPE = 2 AND SQLID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT RECNAME FROM PSRECDEFN WHERE RECTYPE = 5 OR RECTYPE = 1) </pre>

## Style Sheet Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
STYLESHEET-1	Orphaned free form style sheet data.	<p>Issue the following SQL to remove the orphaned rows:</p> <pre> DELETE * FROM PSCONTDEFN WHERE CONTYPE = 9 AND CONTNAME = %1;  DELETE * FROM PSCONTENT WHERE CONTYPE = 9 AND CONTNAME = %1;  DELETE * FROM PSCONTDEFNLANG WHERE CONTYPE = 9 AND CONTNAME = %1;  DELETE * FROM PSCONTENTLANG WHERE CONTYPE = 9 AND CONTNAME = %1; </pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
STYLESHEET-2	Orphaned free form style sheet definitions.	Use Application Designer to delete the free form style sheet(s).
STYLESHEET-3	Parent style sheet not found.	Open the affected style sheet(s) in Application Designer. Remove the reference to the nonexistent parent in the Parent Style Sheet dropdown on the Style Sheet Properties dialog box.
STYLESHEET-04	Sub Style Sheet not found.	Use Application Designer to delete references to any missing sub style sheets.

## Tree Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
TREE-01	Tree Structure table contains Level Record name that does not exist in Record Definition table	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-02	Tree Structure table contains Level Page name that does not exist in Page Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-03	Tree Structure table contains Node Record name that does not exist in Record Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-04	Tree Structure table contains Node Field name that does not exist in RecordField table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-05	Tree Structure table contains Node Page name that does not exist in Page Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-06	Tree Structure table contains Detail Record name that does not exist in Record Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.

<b><i>Query</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Resolution</i></b>
TREE-07	Tree Structure table contains Detail Record name that does not exist in Record Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-08	Tree Structure table contains Detail Page name that does not exist in Page Definition table.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-09	Tree Structure table contains Summary Tree that does not exist in Tree Level table.	See the following section on Notes for TREE-09.
TREE-10	Tree Structure table contains Level Menu-Menu Bar combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-11	Tree Structure table contains Node Menu-Menu Bar combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-12	Tree Structure table contains Detail Menu-Menu Bar combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-13	Tree Structure table contains Level Menu-Page combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-14	Tree Structure table contains Node Menu-Page combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.
TREE-15	Tree Structure table contains Detail Menu-Page combination that does not exist.	Use Tree Manager to open the structure and fix the invalid fields.

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
TREE-16	Tree Definition Level count does not match the record count in Tree Level table.	<p>Set the Count in the Tree Definition table to reflect the actual number of records that are in the PSTREELEVEL table for this tree branch. Note that a problem may occur if some levels are missing and there are still nodes referencing them. In this case, the nodes do not open the tree correctly. The third SELECT checks for the previous situation. If this is the problem, run PSTED, and define the missing levels, save the tree, and then close and reopen it.</p> <pre> SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREELEVEL WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt';  UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET LEVEL_COUNT = \$count WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt'; </pre>
TREE-17	Tree Definition Node count does not match the record count in Tree Node table.	<p>Set the count in the Tree Definition table to reflect the actual number of the records that are in the PSTREENODE table for this tree branch.</p> <pre> SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREENODE WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name';  UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET NODE_COUNT = \$count WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name'; </pre>

Query	Description	Resolution
		<p>For branched trees, use following SQL for each branch in the tree.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> For trees with branches, the UPDATE also uses a different TABLE NAME and there are two UPDATE statements.</p> <pre> SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREENODE WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name';  UPDATE PSTREEBRANCH SET NODE_COUNT = \$count WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name'  UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET NODE_COUNT = 0, WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name' </pre>
		<p>For trees without branches, do not include the "TREE_BRANCH=" lines. For example:</p> <pre> SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREENODE WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt'  SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREENODE WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt'  UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET NODE_COUNT = 0, WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' </pre>

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
TREE-18	Tree Definition Leaf count does not match the record count in Tree Leaf table.	<p>Set the Count in the Tree Definition table to reflect the actual number of records that are in the PSTREELEAF table for this branch.</p> <pre> SELECT COUNT ( * ) FROM PSTREELEAF WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name' ;  UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET LEAF_COUNT = \$count WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid' AND EFFDT = 'effdt' AND TREE_BRANCH = 'tree_branch_name' ; </pre>
TREE-19	Tree Definition contains Structure ID that does not exist in Tree Structure table	Use Tree Manager to create the structure that you desire by using the name that is reported in this audit.
TREE-20	Tree Definition contains Query Access Group structure with undefined levels and leaves.	<p>Query trees should have no leaves and no levels. This audit finds exceptions to that case in the definition counts.</p> <pre> UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET LEVEL_COUNT = 0 , LEAF_COUNT = 0 WHERE TREE_STRCT_ID = 'ACCESS_GROUP' AND (LEVEL_COUNT &lt;&gt; 0 OR LEAF_COUNT &lt;&gt; 0) ; </pre>
TREE-21	Tree Selector Control contains Tree name that is not defined in Tree Definition table.	<p>This audit flags records in the PSTREESELCTL tables for records that don't have a corresponding record in the PSTREEDEFN table.</p> <pre> DELETE FROM PSTREESELCTL A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSTREEDEFN B WHERE B.SETID = A.SETID AND B.TREE_NAME = A.TREE_NAME AND B.EFFDT = A.EFFDT) </pre>
TREE-22	Tree Definition Level count does not match level use.	See the section titled "Notes for TREE-22" below.



<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
TREE-23	Tree Level does not exist in Tree Definition table.	<p>Tree Level records in the PSTREELEVEL table exist for trees that don't exist in the PSTREEDEFN table.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSTREELEVEL A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSTREEDEFN B WHERE B.SETID = A.SETID AND B.TREE_NAME = A.TREE_NAME AND B.EFFDT = A.EFFDT)</pre>
TREE-24	Tree Node does not exist in Tree Definition table.	<p>Tree Node records in the PSTREENODE table exist for trees that don't exist in the PSTREEDEFN table.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSTREENODE A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSTREEDEFN B WHERE B.SETID = A.SETID AND B.TREE_NAME = A.TREE_NAME AND B.EFFDT = A.EFFDT)</pre>
TREE-25	Tree Leaf does not exist in Tree Definition table.	<p>Tree Leaf records in the PSTREELEAF table exist for trees that don't exist in the PSTREEDEFN table.</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSTREELEAF A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSTREEDEFN B WHERE B.SETID = A.SETID AND B.TREE_NAME = A.TREE_NAME AND B.EFFDT = A.EFFDT)</pre>
TREE-26	Tree Leaf ranges are not valid in Tree Definition table.	<p>Finds records in the PSTREELEAF table where RANGE_FROM is less than RANGE_TO.</p> <p>Use Tree Manager to open the tree and correct the invalid range values.</p>
TREE-27	Tree Leaf does not have parent Tree Node in Tree Definition table.	<p>Run this SQL:</p> <pre>DELETE FROM PSTREELEAF A WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM PSTREENODE B WHERE B.SETID = A.SETID AND B.TREE_NAME = A.TREE_NAME AND B.EFFDT = A.EFFDT AND B.TREE_NODE_NUM = A.TREE_NODE_NUM)</pre>

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
TREE-28	Tree Branch does not exist in Tree Branch table.	Refer to the "Tree Audit and Repair Utilities" chapter in the Tree Manager PeopleBook and run the Unbranch Tree Repair Utility so that all branches are removed from the tree.
TREE-29	Tree Branch does not exist in Tree Branch table.	Refer to the "Tree Audit and Repair Utilities" chapter in the Tree Manager PeopleBook and run the Unbranch Tree Repair Utility so that all branches are removed from the tree.
TREE-30	Tree Branch Node count does not match the record count in Tree Node table.	See Resolution for Tree-29.
TREE-31	Tree Branch Leaf count does not match the record count in Tree Leaf table	See Resolution for Tree-29.
TREE-32	Tree Node Num, Node Num End, or Level Num is invalid in Tree Branch table.	See Resolution for Tree-29.
TREE-33	Identify all orphan access group definitions as well as invalid access group definitions in the access group security.	Open Query Access Group Tree in Query Access Group Manager and update the identified Access Group so that a record is created in the Access Group Table.
TREE-34	Tree Definition Node Count Does Not Equal 0 for a Branched Tree.	See Resolution for Tree-29.
TREE-35	Tree Definition Leaf Count Does Not Equal 0 for a Branched Tree.	See Resolution for Tree-29.

### **Notes for TREE-09**

Lists any Summary Tree Structures that reference a level number that is on a Detail Tree that does not exist in the Tree Level table. Since a Summary Tree is a tree that is built off of the nodes from an existing Detail Tree at a given level, the level that is specified on the Summary Tree Structure must exist in the detail tree's PSTREELEVEL table. In this case, the Summary Tree is not usable from nVision or other reporting tools.

The situation could occur from several possible causes :

- Summary Tree is moved or imported into a new database but Detail Tree is not

- The levels on the Detail Tree are deleted after the Summary Tree structure is created.

To correct this :

1. First determine if Detail Tree exists and is in a valid state. This can be done by checking the name of the Detail Tree on the Summary Tree's Structure record; check the Summary Tree tab on the Tree Structure record for the Summary Tree. Note the tree name, setID, and level number.
2. If Detail Tree exists, check to see if the level number that is defined on the Summary Tree Structure (step 1) exists.
3. To correct the situation, either add missing level to detail tree or update Summary Tree Structure to refer to a valid detail tree and level number.

### **Notes for TREE-22**

This audit flags the Level Use type with the Level Count for conflicts. When the Level Use is N, there should be no levels defined, and when it is not N, levels should be defined. A problem in this audit may also report problems in the TREE-16 audit.

When the Level Use is N and the Level Count is 0 and TREE-16 does not indicate an error on the same tree, run the following SQL:

```
UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET USE_LEVELS = 'S'
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name' AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'
```

When the Level Use is S and the Level Count is 0 and TREE-16 does not indicate an error on the same tree, run the following SQL (after checking the resolution on TREE-16 to clean up any level records):

```
UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET LEVEL_COUNT = 0
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'
```

When the Level Use is not N and the Level Count is 0 and TREE-16 does not indicate an error on the same tree, run the following SQL (after checking the resolution on TREE-16 to clean up any level records):

```
UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET USE_LEVELS = 'N'
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'

UPDATE PSTREENODE SET TREE_LEVEL_NUM = 0
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'
```

When TREE-23 indicates an error on the same Tree with the Level Count on the PSTREEDEFN = number of PSTREELEVEL records (when the PSTREELEVEL has no levels for this tree, count is 0 ), run the following SQL:

```

SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PSTREELEVEL
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'

UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET LEVEL_COUNT = 0
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'

UPDATE PSTREEDEFN SET USE_LEVELS = 'N'
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'

UPDATE PSTREENODE SET TREE_LEVEL_NUM = 0
WHERE TREE_NAME = 'tree_name'
AND SETID = 'setid'
AND EFFDT = 'effdt'

```

## Translate Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
XLATT-1	Translate table Field does not exist in database Field.	Create the field by using Application Designer.
XLATT-3	Translate fields do not have associated translate values defined.	Edit translate field and enter translate value.

## PSLOCK Version Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<i>Query</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Resolution</i>
Manager-XXX Where XXX is the associated three-letter code of the object type.	Version Check of listed table against PSVERSION.	Run the VERSION Application Engine program.

## XML Publisher for PeopleSoft Integrity

The following table describes the audit queries and resolutions for this area:

<b>Query</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Resolution</b>
XMLP-1	Query Data Source does not exist in Query Definition table.	Remove the data source and all report definitions using the data source.
XMLP-2	Data Source Definition used by a Report Definition but does not exist in Data Source Definition table.	If this error is observed after the upgrade copy process, try copying the data source object from source database. If this is not the case, remove the report definition.
XMLP-3	Template Definition used by a Report Definition but does not exist in Template Definition table.	If this error is observed after the upgrade copy process, try copying the missing template definition from the source database. If this is not the case, remove the report definition.
XMLP-4	Template Definition not associated with any Report Definition.	Remove the template object.
XMLP-5	Template Definition associated with more than one Report Definition.	Delete all the report definitions using the template object and recreate them again from the user interface.
XMLP-6	Sub-Template Definition associated with any Report Definition.	Delete all the report definitions using the template object and recreate them again from the user interface.
XMLP-7	Template File does not exist in file table.	If this error is observed after the upgrade copy process, try copying the missing file definition from the source database. If this is not the case, the template definition should be deleted and recreated.
XMLP-8	PDF Map File does not exist in file table.	If this error is observed after the upgrade copy process, try copying the missing file definition from the source database. If this is not the case, the template definition should be deleted and recreated.
XMLP-9	XLIFF File does not exist in file table.	If this error is observed after the upgrade copy process, try copying the missing file definition from the source database. If this is not the case, the template definition should be deleted and recreated.
XMLP-10	File definition not used by template file definition.	Run Application Engine program PSXPCLEAN to delete orphan file definitions.

<b><i>Query</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Resolution</i></b>
XMLP-11	File data not referenced by file definition.	Run Application Engine program PSXPCLEAN to delete orphan file definitions.
XMLP-12	File definitions not referenced by file data.	Run Application Engine program PSXPCLEAN to delete orphan file definitions.

## Chapter 5

# Employing Database Level Auditing

This chapter provides an overview of database level auditing and discusses how to:

- Create audit record definitions.
- Work with auditing triggers.
- View audit information.
- Create queries to view audit records details.
- Use Microsoft SQL Server trigger information.
- Use DB2 UDB for z/OS trigger information.
- Use DB2 UDB for LUW trigger information.
- Use Oracle trigger information.
- Use Sybase trigger information.

---

## Understanding Database Level Auditing

PeopleSoft provides trigger-based auditing functionality as an alternative to the record-based auditing that Application Designer provides. Some countries require that you audit changes to certain data, while some companies audit who is making changes to sensitive data. This level of auditing is not only for maintaining the integrity of the data, but it is also a heightened security measure. PeopleSoft takes advantage of database triggers (offered by most database vendors), and when a user makes a change to a specified field that you are monitoring, the changed data triggers the audit.

The information that a trigger records could include the user that made a change, the type of change that is made, when the change is made, and so on. Because the trigger records the user ID of the user who is modifying the base table, it is essential that you have the `EnableDBMonitoring` domain parameter set in `PSADMIN` to retrieve that information.

---

**Note.** If you implement trigger-based auditing, be aware that there is an unavoidable amount of additional overhead associated with auditing, which can effect the system's overall performance.

`EnableDBMonitoring` isn't supported for Informix.

---

The elements that are involved with database level auditing are:

<b>Base Records</b>	The base record is the record that you want to monitor, or audit, as in PS_ABSENCE_HIST. Presumably, the base record contains fields that you want to monitor. Limit the auditing of tables to the application tables and avoid auditing PeopleTools tables.
<b>Audit Record</b>	The audit record is a custom record that you create with Application Designer. It stores the audit information for the fields on the base record that the trigger collects. Audit records begin with an AUDIT_ prefix.
<b>Trigger</b>	The trigger is the mechanism that a user invokes upon making a change to a specified field. The trigger stores the audit information in the audit table. PeopleSoft enables you to create triggers. A sample name for a trigger might be PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR.

---

**Note.** If you modify the record definition of the base record, then you must modify the audit record and re-create the associated trigger.

---

## Creating Audit Record Definitions

To audit a record using triggers, you must create a record definition in Application Designer and build the SQL table in which you store audit information. When creating the audit record, remove any attributes, such as Parent records, Query Security Records, and PeopleCode.

The easiest way to create an audit table is to open the record definition of the base record that you want to audit. Save it as a new record, prefaced with AUDIT\_.

---

**Note.** When you create a new audit record definition, be sure to name it with an AUDIT\_ prefix. Some processes, such as the Employee ID Change and Employee ID Delete in PeopleSoft HRMS product line, make changes to certain fields, such as EMPLID. These processes do not affect any record definitions that begin with the AUDIT\_ prefix, leaving the audit data secure.

---

Remove all edit and key attributes from the newly saved record. Add to the top of the audit record the following audit-specific fields:

- AUDIT\_OPRID
- AUDIT\_STAMP
- AUDIT\_ACTN

Make these fields required and keys. The following table explains the purpose of each audit-specific field.

---

**Note.** When you add these fields to the audit record, add them in the same order that they appear in the following table.

---



<i><b>Audit Field Name</b></i>	<i><b>Purpose</b></i>
AUDIT_OPRID	Identifies the user who causes the system to trigger the audits, either by performing an add, change, or delete to an audited field.
AUDIT_STAMP	Identifies the date and time that the audit is triggered.
AUDIT_ACTN	<p>Indicates the type of action the system audited. Possible action values include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>A</i> – Row inserted.</li> <li>• <i>D</i> – Row deleted.</li> <li>• <i>K</i> – Row updated, snapshot before update.</li> <li>• <i>N</i> – Row updated, snapshot after update.</li> </ul>

The audit table does not have to include all the columns of the base table. In fact, for performance reasons, it's best to only include those fields in the audit record that are deemed sensitive or significant. When adding fields to the audit record, PeopleSoft recommends that you conform to the order that they appear in the base record.

---

**Note.** This functionality allows for the Microsoft SQL Server requirement of not including ntext, text columns in the trigger syntax, as well as Oracle's requirement to exclude the LONG data type from audit records.

---

The following example compares the base table to the audit table, showing the audit-specific fields and the fields that are to be audited in the audit table.

<i><b>Base Table PS_ABSENCE_HIST</b></i>	<i><b>Audit Table PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE</b></i>
	AUDIT_OPRID
	AUDIT_STAMP
	AUDIT_ACTN
EMPLID	EMPLID
ABSENCE_TYPE	ABSENCE_TYPE
BEGIN_DT	

<i>Base Table PS_ABSENCE_HIST</i>	<i>Audit Table PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE</i>
RETURN_DT	
DURATION_DAYS	
DURATION_HOURS	
REASON	REASON
PAID_UNPAID	
EMPLOYER_APPROVED	
COMMENTS	

Once you save the record definition, you need to run the SQL Build procedure to build the SQL table in the relational database management system (RDBMS).

Following is an example of a SQL script for an audit record that audits the PS\_ABSENCE\_HIST table:

```
-- WARNING:
--
-- This script should not be run in Data Mover. It may contain platform
-- specific syntax that Data Mover is unable to comprehend. Please use the
-- SQL query tool included with your database engine to process this script.
--
USE PT8A
go
SET IMPLICIT_TRANSACTIONS ON
go
IF EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM SYSOBJECTS WHERE TYPE = 'U' AND NAME =
'PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE') DROP TABLE PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
go
CREATE TABLE PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE (AUDIT_OPRID CHAR(8) NULL,
    AUDIT_STAMP PSDATETIME NOT NULL,
    AUDIT_ACTN CHAR(1) NOT NULL,
    EMPLID CHAR(11) NOT NULL,
    ABSENCE_TYPE CHAR(3) NOT NULL,
    BEGIN_DT PSDATE NULL,
    RETURN_DT PSDATE NULL,
    DURATION_DAYS SMALLINT NOT NULL,
    DURATION_HOURS DECIMAL(2,1) NOT NULL,
    REASON CHAR(30) NOT NULL,
    PAID_UNPAID CHAR(1) NOT NULL,
    EMPLOYER_APPROVED CHAR(1) NOT NULL)
-- COMMENTS TEXT NULL) Text and Image Fields are not allowed
go
COMMIT
Go
```

If COMMENTS is not allowed during the actual creation of the audit table, drop the column or do not choose the column when you create the audit table definition.

## Working With Auditing Triggers

This section discusses how to:

- Define auditing triggers.
- Create and run the auditing triggers script.
- Delete auditing triggers.

A trigger is a database level object that the system initiates based on a specified event occurring on a table. Most RDBMS platforms support a form of database triggers.

### Defining Auditing Triggers

Access the Audit Triggers page (PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Update Database Level Auditing).

### Audit Triggers

Record (Table) Name: QEMD\_LEAGUE

Trigger

\*Audit Record Name:

Trigger Name: QEMD\_LEAGUE\_TR

Create Trigger Statement:

Generate Code

Audit Options

☐ Add

☐ Change

☐ Delete

Audit Triggers page

<b>Audit Record Name</b>	Use the Browse button to search the PSRECDEFN table. The Audit name must exist before a trigger can be created.
<b>Trigger name</b>	By default, the system names audit triggers by using the following naming convention <i>base record_TR</i> For example, ABSENCE_HIST_TR

<b>Audit Options</b>	Select from the options Add, Change or Delete.
<b>Create Trigger Statement</b>	The statement is populated when the Generate Code button is clicked. You can customize the script if you need to. It depends on your preference. One of the following sections contains RDBMS information to help you view the contents of the script.
<b>Generate Code</b>	Click this button when you complete the previous fields to generate the Trigger Statement.

To define an audit trigger

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Update Database Level Auditing.
2. Click Add a New Value.
3. Enter an existing base record.
4. On the Audit Trigger page, you need to choose the record to hold the auditing data, the audit record.
5. Select the events to audit, as in when data is added, changed, or deleted. You can select all of the options.
6. Click Generate Code.

This generates the SQL that ultimately creates the trigger.

7. Click Save.

All of this information, Record Name, Audit Record Name, Trigger Name, and Create Trigger Statement, gets saved to the PeopleSoft table, PSTRIGGERDEFN.

Perform these steps for each trigger that you want to create. After you create all the trigger statements, then you create and run the trigger script, which is described in the following section.

## Creating and Running the Auditing Triggers Script

After you create and modify all of the trigger statements, you need to create and run the trigger script against the database to create the triggers.

Access the Run Audtrgs page (PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Perform Database Level Audit).

<b>Create All Triggers</b>	If you select this check box, the Application Engine writes the Create Trigger statement to a file for every row in PSTRIGGERDEFN.
<b>Create Triggers on</b>	Specify the particular table that the Trigger statement should be created for.

To create and run a trigger script:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Auditing, Perform Database Level Auditing.
2. Indicate the triggers that you want to be included in the script, all in PSTRIGGERDEFN or just those that are related to a specific table.

3. Click Run.

This process invokes an Application Engine program that writes the Create Trigger statement to a file for every row in PSTRIGGERDEFN that you select (all or for a specific table).

The system writes the file to the location that is determined by the run location of the process. If it's run on the server, the file is created in the PS\_SRVRDIR directory. If it's run on a Windows workstation, the file is created in the directory that the %TEMP% environment variable specifies.

The file name is TRGCODEX.SQL, where X represents a digit that is determined by the number of files by the same name that already exist in the output directory.

4. After you create the SQL script, use the native SQL utility to run the script against the database.

## Deleting Auditing Triggers

To delete a trigger:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Audit, Update Database Level Auditing.
2. Open the trigger that you want to delete.
3. Clear all the Audit options (Add, Change, and Delete).
4. Click Generate Code.
5. Click Save.
6. Drop the trigger name from the database.

---

## Viewing Audit Information

Viewing the data that is in the audit record is important. That's why you're storing the information. Because the information resides in a table within the RDBMS, you can extract it and manipulate it to suit your reporting needs. This section provides samples of how the information appears in an audit record and some sample queries that you can construct with PeopleSoft Query.

The following example presents the contents of PS\_AUDIT\_ABSENCE after a trigger test:

AUDIT_OPRID	AUDIT_STAMP	AUDIT_ACTN	EMPLID	⇒
ABSENCE_TYPE	BEGIN_DT			
----->				
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:13.380	A	GORD	⇒
CNF	1981-09-12 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.123	K	8001	⇒
CNF	1981-09-12 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.123	K	8001	⇒
CNF	1983-03-02 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.123	K	8001	⇒
CNF	1983-08-26 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.133	N	8001	⇒
VAC	1981-09-12 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.133	N	8001	⇒
VAC	1983-03-02 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:36.133	N	8001	⇒
VAC	1983-08-26 00:00:00.000			
BARNEY07	2000-01-11 16:25:40.790	D	GORD	⇒
CNF	1981-09-12 00:00:00.000			
RETURN_DT	DURATION_DAYS	DURATION_HOURS	⇒	
REASON	PAID_UNPAID			
----->				
1981-09-26 00:00:00.000	14	.0	⇒	
None	P			
1981-09-26 00:00:00.000	14	.0	⇒	
	P			
1983-03-07 00:00:00.000	6	.0	⇒	
	P			
1983-09-10 00:00:00.000	13	2.0	⇒	
	P			
1981-09-26 00:00:00.000	14	.0	⇒	
	P			
1983-03-07 00:00:00.000	6	.0	⇒	
	P			
1983-09-10 00:00:00.000	13	2.0	⇒	
	P			
1981-09-26 00:00:00.000	14	.0	⇒	
None	P			
EMPLOYER_APPROVED	COMMENTS			
-----				
Y	This is the comments field			
Y				
Y				
Y				
Y	This is an update			
Y	This is an update			
Y	This is an update			
Y				

**Note.** For Microsoft SQL Server the AUDIT\_OPRID field value will be NULL.

## Creating Queries to View Audit Records Details

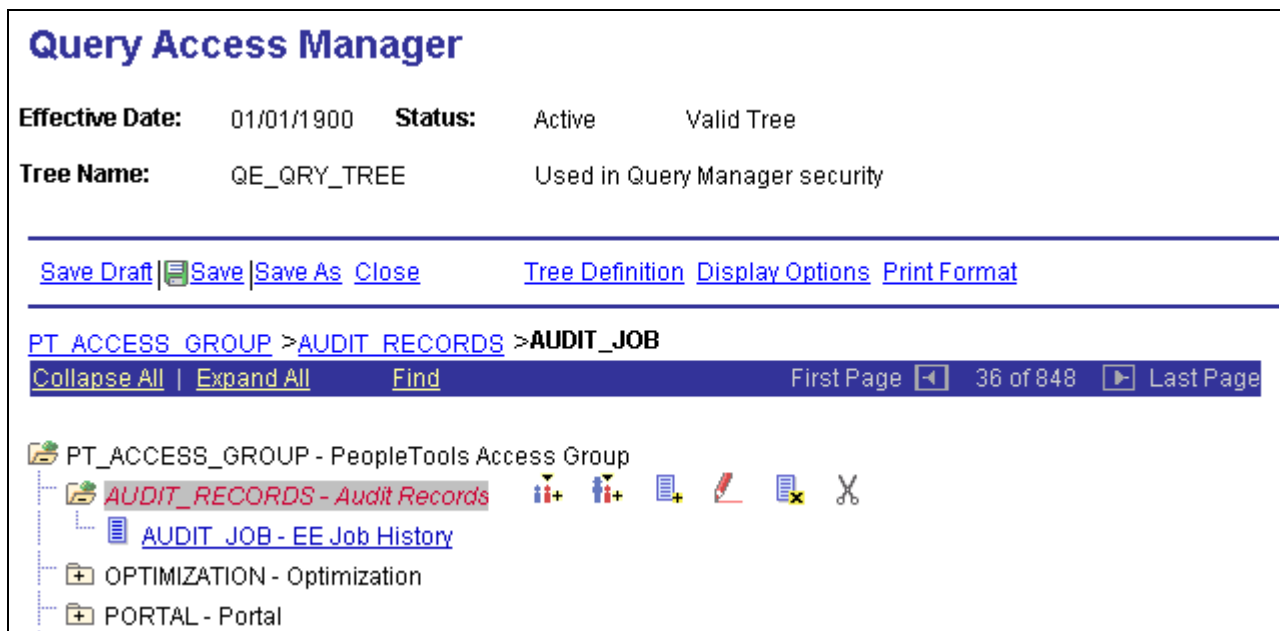
One way to view the information is to use PeopleSoft Query. This section assumes a working knowledge of PeopleSoft Query, and provides some sample queries that show the type of information that you can expect to view.

This section discusses how to:

- Create an access group.
- List all audit records in PS\_AUDIT\_ABSENCE.
- List all audit records for a specified user ID.
- List all audit records that contain an invalid OPRID.
- List all audit records for a specified time period.

## Creating an Access Group

To track audit records, it's useful to create an Access Group in Query Access Manager that contains all audit records. This makes it easier to access the audit records under PeopleSoft Query:



Query Access Manager

## Listing All Audit Records in PS\_AUDIT\_JOB

Select all the fields from AUDIT\_JOB. There are no extra criteria to add:

Records Query Expressions Prompts Fields Criteria Having View SQL Run

**Query Name:** New Unsaved Query **Description:**

Click folder next to record to show fields. Check fields to add to query. Uncheck fields to remove from query. Add additional records by clicking the records tab. When finished click the fields tab.

**Chosen Records**

**Alias Record**

A AUDIT\_JOB - EE Job History [Hierarchy Join](#)

**Fields** Find | View 100 First 1-50 of 220 Last

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AUDIT_OPRID - User ID	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AUDIT_ACTN - Action	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EMPLID - EmplID	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EMPL_RCD - Empl Rcd Nbr	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EFFDT - Effective Date	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EFFSEQ - Effective Sequence	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DEPTID - Department	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	JOBCODE - Job Code	

Query page

## Listing All Audit Records for a Specified User ID

This query is similar to the previous one but with the following criteria added:

Records Query Expressions Prompts Fields Criteria Having View SQL Run

**Query Name:** New Unsaved Query **Description:**

**Criteria** Customize | Find | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Logical	Expression1	Condition Type	Expression 2	Edit	Delete
	A.EFFDT - Effective Date	Eff Date <=	Current Date (EffSeq = Last)	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
AND	A.AUDIT_OPRID - User ID	equal to	:1	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Criteria page

The example shows the prompt for properties the AUDIT\_OPRID field:



Edit Prompt Properties

Field Name:

AUDIT\_OPRID

\*Type:

Character

\*Format:

Mixed Case

Length:

30

Decimals:

\*Edit Type:

Prompt Table

\*Heading Type:

RFT Short

Heading Text:

User

\*Unique Prompt Name:

BIND1

Prompt Table:

PSOPRDEFN

Edit Prompt Properties page

Set up a prompt for User ID against the PSOPRDEFN table. That way, when you run the query, you can specify a particular user ID. In this case, the query focuses on User ID *VP1*:

User: 

VP1

OK

Cancel

Prompt field


## Listing All Audit Records Containing an Invalid OPRID

This query is similar to the previous one, but you specify different criteria:

### Edit Criteria Properties

**Choose Expression 1 Type**  
☒ Field  
☐ Expression

**Expression 1**  

**Choose Record and Field**  
**Record Alias.Fieldname:**  
 A.AUDIT\_OPRID - User ID

**\*Condition Type:** not in list ▼

**Choose Expression 2 Type**  
☐ In List  
☒ Subquery

**Expression 2**  

**Define Subquery**  
[Define/Edit Subquery](#)

Edit Criteria Properties page


Click the Define/Edit Subquery link and select the OPRID field:

Records Query Expressions Prompts **Fields** Criteria Having View SQL Run

**Query Name:** AUDIT\_RECORDS\_BY\_OPRID      **Description:**

**Working on selection:** Subquery for A.AUDIT\_OPRID - User ID      [Subquery/Union Navigation](#)

View field properties, or use field as criteria in query statement.      [Reorder / Sort](#)

Col	Record.Fieldname	Format	Ord	XLAT	Agg	Heading Text	Add Criteria	Edit	Delete
1	B.OPRID - User ID	Char30				User		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">-</a>

Fields page

The subquery selects distinct User ID from PSOPRDEFN. This example shows the SQL for the query:

Records	Query	Expressions	Prompts	Fields	Criteria	Having	View SQL	Run
<b>Query Name:</b> AUDIT_RECORDS_BY_OPRID		<b>Description:</b>						
<b>Working on selection:</b> Subquery for A.AUDIT_OPRID - User ID		<a href="#">Subquery/Union Navigation</a>						
<b>Query SQL:</b>								
<pre> SELECT A.AUDIT_OPRID, A.AUDIT_ACTN, TO_CHAR(CAST((A.AUDIT_STAMP) AS TIMESTAMP), 'YYYY-MM-DD-HH24.MI.SS.FF'), A.EMPLID, A.EMPL_RCD, TO_CHAR(A.EFFDT, 'YYYY-MM-DD'), A.EFFSEQ, A.DEPTID, A.JOB_CODE, A.POSITION_NBR, A.POSITION_OVERRIDE, A.POSN_CHANGE_RECORD, A.EMPL_STATUS, A.ACTION, TO_CHAR(A.ACTION_DT, 'YYYY-MM-DD'), A.ACTION_REASON, A.LOCATION, A.TAX_LOCATION_CD, TO_CHAR(A.JOB_ENTRY_DT, 'YYYY-MM-DD'), TO_CHAR A.WRKS_CNCL_ID_LCL, A.BENEFIT_SYSTEM, A.WORK_DAY_HOURS, A.SUPERVISOR_ID, A.REPORTS_TO FROM PS_AUDIT_JOB A WHERE A.EFFDT =   (SELECT MAX(A_ED.EFFDT) FROM PS_AUDIT_JOB A_ED    WHERE A_ED.EFFDT &lt;= SYSDATE) AND A.EFFSEQ =   (SELECT MAX(A_ES.EFFSEQ) FROM PS_AUDIT_JOB A_ES    WHERE A.EFFDT = A_ES.EFFDT) AND A.AUDIT_OPRID NOT IN (SELECT DISTINCT B.OPRID FROM PSOPRDEFN B) </pre>								

View SQL page

## Listing All Audit Records for a Specified Time Period

This example shows a query containing the same fields as in the previous queries above, with different criteria:

Records	Query	Expressions	Prompts	Fields	Criteria	Having	View SQL	Run																																			
<b>Query Name:</b> AUDIT_RECORDS_BY_OPRID		<b>Description:</b>																																									
<input type="button" value="Add Criteria"/> <input type="button" value="Group Criteria"/> <input type="button" value="Reorder Criteria"/>																																											
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Criteria</th> <th colspan="2">Customize   Find  </th> <th>First</th> <th>1-3 of 3</th> <th>Last</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Logical</th> <th>Expression1</th> <th>Condition Type</th> <th>Expression 2</th> <th>Edit</th> <th>Delete</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>A.EFFDT - Effective Date</td> <td>Eff Date &lt;=</td> <td>Current Date (EffSeq = Last)</td> <td><input type="button" value="Edit"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="-"/></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>AND</td> <td>A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp</td> <td>greater than</td> <td>:2</td> <td><input type="button" value="Edit"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="-"/></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>AND</td> <td>A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp</td> <td>less than</td> <td>:3</td> <td><input type="button" value="Edit"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="-"/></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>									Criteria		Customize   Find		First	1-3 of 3	Last	Logical	Expression1	Condition Type	Expression 2	Edit	Delete			A.EFFDT - Effective Date	Eff Date <=	Current Date (EffSeq = Last)	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>		AND	A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp	greater than	:2	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>		AND	A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp	less than	:3	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>	
Criteria		Customize   Find		First	1-3 of 3	Last																																					
Logical	Expression1	Condition Type	Expression 2	Edit	Delete																																						
	A.EFFDT - Effective Date	Eff Date <=	Current Date (EffSeq = Last)	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>																																						
AND	A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp	greater than	:2	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>																																						
AND	A.AUDIT_STAMP - Date and Time Stamp	less than	:3	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>																																						

Criteria page

Set the prompt properties to follow this example.

**Edit Prompt Properties**

**Field Name:** AUDIT\_STAMP

**\*Heading Type:** Text

**\*Type:** Date

**Heading Text:** Date

**\*Format:** None

**\*Unique Prompt Name:** BIND2

**Length:** 10

**Decimals:**

**\*Edit Type:** No Table Edit

**Prompt Table:**

Edit Prompt Properties page

Change the AUDIT\_STAMP field type to *Date* to enable the user to take advantage of the calendar control as a prompt mechanism.

---

## Using Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Information

This section discusses how to:

- Use Microsoft SQL Server trigger syntax.
- Use Microsoft SQL Server to capture text/image columns.
- Administer Microsoft SQL Server trigger maintenance.

---

**Note.** For Microsoft SQL Server, Image and Text Columns in tables can't be selected from the trigger tables INSERTED and DELETED.

---

## Using Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Syntax

To audit INSERTS, UPDATES, and DELETES of the records, use trigger with the following format:

Replace the names in emphasized text with the appropriate names for the trigger that you are constructing.

```
CREATE TRIGGER PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
FOR DELETE , INSERT , UPDATE
AS
SET NOCOUNT ON
DECLARE @XTYPE CHAR(1) , @OPRID CHAR(8)
SET @OPRID = NULL
```

```

[SELECT @OPRID = substring(cast(context_info as char(128)),
1,(charindex(',',cast(context_info as char(128)))-1))
  FROM master..sysprocesses
  WHERE spid = @@spid]

-- Determine Transaction Type
IF EXISTS (SELECT * FROM DELETED)
BEGIN
SET @XTYPE = 'D'
END
IF EXISTS (SELECT * FROM INSERTED)
BEGIN
IF (@XTYPE = 'D')
  BEGIN
    SET @XTYPE = 'U'
  END
ELSE
  BEGIN
    SET @XTYPE = 'I'
  END
END
-- Transaction is a Delete
IF (@XTYPE = 'D')
BEGIN
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'D',
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED FROM deleted
END
-- Transaction is a Insert
IF (@XTYPE = 'I')
BEGIN
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'A',
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED FROM inserted
END
-- Transaction is a Update
IF (@XTYPE = 'U')
BEGIN
-- Before Update
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'K',
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED FROM deleted
-- After Update
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'N',
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED FROM inserted
END

```

## Using Microsoft SQL Server to Capture Text/Image Columns

If you want to audit text or image columns with Microsoft SQL Server, you will have to alter the trigger scripts that are generated manually. The trigger scripts that generated through the online pages do not support text or image columns. Below is an example of how a join against the base table can capture the value of the COMMENTS field after an insert, or update is performed.

```
CREATE TRIGGER PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
FOR DELETE , INSERT , UPDATE
AS
SET NOCOUNT ON
DECLARE @XTYPE CHAR(1), @OPRID CHAR(8)
SET @OPRID = NULL
```

```

[SELECT @OPRID = substring(cast(context_info as char(128)),1,
(charindex(',',cast(context_info as char(128)))-1))
FROM master..sysprocesses
WHERE spid = @@spid]

IF EXISTS (SELECT * FROM DELETED)
BEGIN
SET @XTYPE = 'D'
END
IF EXISTS (SELECT * FROM INSERTED)
BEGIN
IF (@XTYPE = 'D')
BEGIN
SET @XTYPE = 'U'
END
ELSE
BEGIN
SET @XTYPE = 'I'
END
END
-- Transaction is a Delete
IF (@XTYPE = 'D')
BEGIN
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED,COMMENTS)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'D',
A.EMPLID,A.ABSENCE_TYPE,A.BEGIN_DT,A.RETURN_DT,A.DURATION_DAYS,
A.DURATION_HOURS,A.REASON,A.PAID_UNPAID,A.EMPLOYER_APPROVED,''
FROM deleted A
END
-- Transaction is a Insert
IF (@XTYPE = 'I')
BEGIN
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED,COMMENTS)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'A',
A.EMPLID,A.ABSENCE_TYPE,A.BEGIN_DT,A.RETURN_DT,A.DURATION_DAYS,
A.DURATION_HOURS,A.REASON,A.PAID_UNPAID,A.EMPLOYER_APPROVED,B.COMMENTS
FROM inserted A, PS_ABSENCE_HIST B
WHERE A.EMPLID = B.EMPLID
AND A.ABSENCE_TYPE = B.ABSENCE_TYPE
AND A.BEGIN_DT = B.BEGIN_DT
END
-- Transaction is a Update
IF (@XTYPE = 'U')
BEGIN
-- Before Update
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,
DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED,COMMENTS)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'K',
A.EMPLID,A.ABSENCE_TYPE,A.BEGIN_DT,A.RETURN_DT,A.DURATION_DAYS,
A.DURATION_HOURS,A.REASON,A.PAID_UNPAID,A.EMPLOYER_APPROVED,''
FROM deleted A

-- After Update
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
(AUDIT_OPRID,AUDIT_STAMP,AUDIT_ACTN,
EMPLID,ABSENCE_TYPE,BEGIN_DT,RETURN_DT,DURATION_DAYS,

```

```

DURATION_HOURS,REASON,PAID_UNPAID,EMPLOYER_APPROVED,COMMENTS)
SELECT @OPRID,getdate(),'N',
A.EMPLID,A.ABSENCE_TYPE,A.BEGIN_DT,A.RETURN_DT,A.DURATION_DAYS,
A.DURATION_HOURS,A.REASON,A.PAID_UNPAID,A.EMPLOYER_APPROVED,B.COMMENTS
FROM inserted A, PS_ABSENCE_HIST B
WHERE A.EMPLID = B.EMPLID
      AND A.ABSENCE_TYPE = B.ABSENCE_TYPE
      AND A.BEGIN_DT = B.BEGIN_DT
END

```

## Administering Microsoft SQL Server Trigger Maintenance

The following commands may be helpful when administering triggers.

### ***List All Triggers in a Database***

This command lists all triggers in a database:

```
SELECT name FROM sysobjects WHERE type = 'TR'
```

### ***List the Trigger Definition***

This command lists the trigger definition:

```
sp_helptext TRIGGERNAME
```

### ***List Trigger Information***

This command lists trigger information:

```
sp_helptrigger BASE TABLE NAME
```

Returns the type or types of triggers that are defined on the specified table for the current database.

```
sp_help TRIGGERNAME
```

Reports information about a database object (any object listed in the SYSOBJECTS table), a user-defined data type, or a data type that Microsoft SQL Server supplies.

### ***To Remove a Trigger***

To remove a trigger:

```
drop trigger TRIGGERNAME
```

### ***To Modify an Existing Trigger***

To modify a trigger:

```
ALTER trigger ...
```

This alters the definition of a trigger that is created previously by the CREATE TRIGGER statement.

See the full definition in SQL Server Books Online.



See SQL Server Books Online for the full example.

### ***To Disable a Trigger***

To disable a trigger:

```
ALTER TABLE <table> | (ENABLE | DISABLE) TRIGGER (ALL | trigger_name[,...n])
```

(ENABLE | DISABLE ) TRIGGER - Specifies that trigger\_name is enabled or disabled. When a trigger is disabled, it is still defined for the table; however, when INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE statements are executed against the table, the actions in the trigger are not performed until the trigger is re-enabled.

- ALL: Specifies that all triggers in the table are enabled or disabled.
- trigger\_nam: Specifies the name of the trigger to disable or enable.

---

## **Using DB2 UDB for z/OS Trigger Information**

This section provides an overview of DB2 z/OS trigger information and discusses:

- Assembler program AUDIT01 for DB2 z/OS.
- User-defined function (external scalar) requirements.
- Sample DB2 UDB syntax to create UDF function AUDIT01.
- Verifying status of UDF function.
- Verifying monitor trace setting.
- DB2 z/OS trigger syntax.
- DB2 z/OS trigger maintenance

## **Understanding DB2 z/OS Trigger Information**

The following topics describe the syntax, commands, and additional tasks, such as the assembler program, involved with DB2 z/OS triggers.

Before the Trigger Audit can be implemented on DB2 z/OS, several elements must be implemented in the appropriate sequence:

- Work Load Manager (WLM) must be enabled.
- Assembler module AUDIT01 must be assembled.
- User Defined Function (UDF) AUDIT01 must be defined in DB2 UDB.
- Monitor Trace Class 1 must be enabled in DB2 UDB.
- Trigger statement must be defined.

## Assembler Program AUDIT01 for DB2 z/OS

To implement triggers for DB2 z/OS, you need to create an assembler program. Here's a sample of it if it's needed.

```

MACRO                                00010000
&LABEL  CLEAR  &DATAAREA,            DATA AREA TO BE CLEARED      *00020000
                                &LEN=,          LENGTH OF DATA AREA      *00040000
                                &FILL=          FILL CHARACTER              00030000
&LABEL  LA      14,&DATAAREA          ADDR OF FIELD TO BE CLEARED      00160000
        L       15,=A(&LEN)          REQUESTED LENGTH OF CLEAR        00340000
        LA      1,&FILL              CLEAR VALUE                      00450000
        SLL     1,24                SHIFT CLEAR VALUE TO FILL         00500000
        MVCL    14,0                CLEAR FIELD                      00510000
        MEND

*

MACRO
C2X      &IN,&IN_L,                  INPUT & INPUT LENGTH      *
        &OUT,&OUT_L,                OUTPUT & OUTPUT LENGTH    *
        &WORK=WORK,&TRTABLE=TRTABLE WORK AREA AND TRAN TBL
MVO      &WORK.(&IN_L.+1),&IN.(&IN_L) MOVE WITH OFFSET
UNPK     &OUT.(&OUT_L.),&WORK.(&IN_L.+1) UNPACK TO CREATE BASE
NC       &OUT.(&OUT_L.),=8X'0F'      LEAVE LOW NIBBLE
TR       &OUT.(&OUT_L.),&TRTABLE     TRANSLATE CHARS
MEND
EJECT

*
*
*Program audit01
*
*
AUDIT01  CEEENTRY AUTO=WORKSIZE,MAIN=YES,PLIST=OS
        USING WORKAREA,R13

*
        LR      R6,R1              SAVE THE PARMLIST ADDRESS

*
        LA      R10,XIFCA          ADDRESS FOR IFI COMM AREA
        LA      R9,XWQAL           ADDRESS FOR IFI QUALIFICATION AREA
        USING   IFCA,R10
        USING   WQAL,R9

*
        CLEAR   XIFCA,LEN=L'XIFCA,FILL=X'00'
        CLEAR   XWQAL,LEN=L'XWQAL,FILL=X'00'

*
        MVC     IFCAID,=CL4'IFCA'   EYE CATCHER
        MVC     IFCALEN,=AL2(L'XIFCA) LENGTH OF IFCA
        MVC     IFCAOWNR,=CL4'PSFT'

*
        MVC     WQALEYE,=CL4'WQAL'  EYE CATCHER
        MVC     WQALLEN,=AL2(WQALLN5) LENGTH
        MVC     WQALACE,=XL4'5C'    ACE TOKEN = '*', GET YOURS ONLY
                                         ACE TOKEN = 0, GET ALL
                                         ACE TOKEN = TOKEN, GET SPECIFIC

*
*
*
        MVC     RETALEN,=F'32004'   LENGTH FOR RETURN AREA

*
        MVC     AIFICMD,=A(READSCMD) BUILD
        LA      R3,XIFCA            THE
        ST      R3,AIFCA            PARMLIST
        LA      R4,RETAREA          FOR
        ST      R4,ARETAREA         THE
        MVC     AIFCID,=A(XIFCID)   IFI
        LA      R5,XWQAL            READS
        ST      R5,AWQAL            FOR
        OI      AWQAL,X'80'         IFCID=148

*
        LA      R1,IFIPARMS        PARMLIST FOR READS CALL
        L       R15,=V(DSNWLI)
        BALR    R14,R15

```

```

*
*
*      EJECT
*
*      CLEAR OPRIDVAL,LEN=L'OPRIDVAL,FILL=X'40'
*      MVC   OPRIDLEN,=YL2(L'OPRIDVAL)      RETURN LENGTH OF FIELD
*      MVC   OPRIDIND,=H'0'                INDICATOR FOR RESULT ALWAYS RETURNED
*
*      CLC   IFCARCL,=F'0'                RETURN CODE = ZERO
*      BNE   AUDIT30                      NO, RETURN WITH ERROR INDCATOR
*
*      CLC   IFCABM,=F'0'                ANY DATA RETURNED
*      BE    AUDIT35                      NO, RETURN WITH ERROR INDCATOR
*
*      LA    R4,4(,R4)                    ADDRESS THE RETURNED DATA
*      USING QWIW,R4
*      CLC   QWIWLEN,=H'0'                DATA INDICATED BY IFI WRITER HDR
*      BE    AUDIT40                      NO, RETURN WITH ERROR INDICATOR
*      DROP  R4
*
*      LA    R5,4(0,R4)                    ADDRESS SELF DEFINING SECTION
*      USING QWT0,R5
*
*      CLC   QWT02R50,=F'0'                PRODUCT SECTION OFFSET
*      BE    AUDIT50                      NO, RETURN WITH ERROR INDICATOR
*      CLC   QWT02RAO,=F'0'                ACCOUNTING FACILITY DATA
*      BE    AUDIT55                      NO, RETURN WITH ERROR INDICATOR
*
*      LR    R7,R4                        BASE FOR ALL OFFSETS
*      A     R7,QWT02R50                    ADDRESS OF CORRELATION INFO
*      USING QWHC,R7                      ADDRESSABILITY
*
*      LR    R8,R4                        BASE FOR ALL OFFSETS
*      A     R8,QWT02RAO                    ADDRESS OF ACCOUNTING FACILITY DATA
*      USING QMDA,R8                      ADDRESSABILITY
*
*      CLC   QWHCLEN,=H'0'                STANDARD HEADER HAVE DATA
*      BE    AUDIT60                      NO
*
*      MVC   HDRTYPE,QWHCTYP              SAVE CORR HEADER TYPE
*      CLI   QWHCTYP,X'02'                CORRELATION HEADER TYPE = 2
*      BNE   AUDIT63                      NO
*
*
*      EJECT
*
*
*      MVC   OPRIDVAL(8),QWHCAID          DEFAULT TO THE LOCAL ACCESS ID
*      CLC   QWHCATYP,=AL4(QWHCRUW)        IF DRDA PROTOCOL
*      BE    PROCESS_DRDA                  GO THERE
*      CLC   QWHCATYP,=AL4(QWHCTSO)        IF TSO ACCESS
*      BE    PROCESS_TSO_CAF               GO THERE
*      CLC   QWHCATYP,=AL4(QWHCDB2C)       IF OTHER THAN DRDA,TSO,CAF
*      BNE   AUDIT66                      EXIT WITH ERROR
*
*
*      PROCESS_TSO_CAF EQU *
*      CLC   QMDAPTYP,=C'DSN'              IF LOCAL ACCESS TYPE IS NOT DSN
*      BNE   AUDIT70                      ERROR
*      LA    R4,QMDAASTR                    ADDR OF THE ACCOUNT STRING
*      USING QMDAINFO,R4                   ADDRESSABILITY ACCT STRING
*      LA    R4,QMDAACCT                    ADDR OF THE MVS ACCOUNT STRING
*      DROP  R4

```

```

SR      R5,R5                                CLEAR FOR LENGTH INSERT
IC      R5,QMDAASLN                          LENGTH OF QMDAASLN
AR      R5,R8                                ESTABLISH END OF THE QMDA AREA
SH      R5,=YL2(L'PS_USERID-1)              STOP SEARCH WHEN CAN'T BE FOUND
*
SEARCH_PS_USERID EQU *
CLC     0(L'PS_USERID,R4),PS_USERID          LOOK FOR PS_USERID
BE      FOUND_PS_USERID                     LEAVE LOOP IF FOUND
LA      R4,1(0,R4)                          NEXT CHAR IN MVS ACCT STRING
CR      R4,R5                               IF MORE OF THE STRING TO SEARCH
BNH     SEARCH_PS_USERID                    CONTINUE
B       AUDIT20                             ELSE PS_USERID NOT FOUND - LEAVE
FOUND_PS_USERID EQU *
LA      R4,L'PS_USERID(0,R4)                BUMP PAST PS_USERID TO DATA
AH      R5,=YL2(L'PS_USERID-1)              ADJ TO ACTUAL END ACCT STR
CR      R4,R5                               IF A VALUE AFTER PS_USERID
BNH     SETUP_SEARCH_END_PS_USERID          CONTINUE
LR      R4,R5                               ELSE -- SET VALUE=END
SETUP_SEARCH_END_PS_USERID EQU *
LR      R2,R4                               SAVE BEGIN OF ACTUAL USERID
*
SEARCH_END_PS_USERID EQU *
CLI     0(R4),X'FF'                         IF END OF MVS ACCOUNT SUB-FIELD
BE      FOUND_END_PS_USERID                 LEAVE SEARCH - GOT THE END
LA      R4,1(0,R4)                          NEXT CHAR IN MVS ACCT STRING
CR      R4,R5                               IF MORE OF THE STRING TO SEARCH
BNH     SEARCH_END_PS_USERID                CONTINUE
FOUND_END_PS_USERID EQU *
LR      R5,R4                               END OF ACTUAL USERID
SR      R5,R2                               LENGTH OF USERID = END - BEGIN
LR      R4,R2                               END OF THE USERID STRING
ICM     R5,B'1000',=X'40'                   SPACE AS PAD CHAR IN MVCL
LA      R14,OPRIDVAL                        UDF OUTPUT AREA
L       R15,=A(L'OPRIDVAL)                  LENGTH OF UDF OUTPUT AREA
MVCL    R14,R4                              MOVE THE PROPER LENGTH
B       AUDIT20                             USE THIS RETURN VALUE
*
*
PROCESS_DRDA EQU *
MVC     OPRIDVAL(16),QWHCEUID               USE THE OPERID FROM CORR HDR
*
CLC     QMDAPYTP,=C'SQL'                   CHECK FOR DB2 CLIENT/SERVER
BNE     AUDIT75                             ERROR - S/B SQL
LA      R8,QMDAASR                          ACCESS THE ACCOUNTING STRING
DROP    R8
USING   QMDASQLI,R8                         CLIENT PLATFORM ACCTING STRING
CLI     QMDASFLN,X'00'                      IF DDACS ACCT SUFF LEN=0
BE      AUDIT20                             USE 16 BYTE VALUE FROM CORR
*
LA      0,QMDASUFFX                         DDACS ACCT SUFFIX STRING BEGIN
SR      R1,R1                               INIT LENGTH FIELD
IC      R1,QMDASFLN                         LENGTH OF DDACS ACCT STRING
ICM     R1,B'1000',=X'40'                   PAD WITH BLANKS
LA      R14,OPRIDVAL                        TARGET OF THE MOVE - OPRIDVAL
L       R15,=A(L'OPRIDVAL)                  LENGTH OF OPRIDVAL
MVCL    R14,R0                              MOVE IT BASED ON DDACS STR LEN
DROP    R8
*
*
AUDIT20 EQU *
L       R5,4(,R6)                          ADDRESS OF THE INDICATOR FOR RETURN
L       R6,0(,R6)                          ADDRESS OF THE RESULT FOR RETURN
MVC     0(L'OPRIDVAL+2,R6),OPRID            RESULT IS VARCHAR(30)
MVC     0(2,R5),OPRIDIND                    INDICATE A RESULT IS RETURNED

```

```

*
*          CEETERM  RC=0
*
*
*          EJECT
*
*
AUDIT30 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(4),=CL4'RC1='
MVC OPRIDVAL+4(4),IFCARC1
MVC OPRIDVAL+8(4),=CL4'RC2='
MVC OPRIDVAL+12(4),IFCARC2
B AUDIT30_35_EXIT
AUDIT35 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'IFCABM=0'
AUDIT30_35_EXIT EQU *
wto 'xifca'
lr r2,r3
la r3,12
bal r14,wto
B AUDIT20
*
AUDIT40 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'QWIWLEN=0'
wto 'qwiw'
lr r2,r4
la r3,1
bal r14,wto
B AUDIT20
*
AUDIT50 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'QWT02R50=0'
B AUDIT50_55_EXIT
AUDIT55 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'QWT02RA0=0'
AUDIT50_55_EXIT EQU *
wto 'qwt0'
lr r2,r5
la r3,10
bal r14,wto
B AUDIT20
*
AUDIT60 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'NO STD HDR LEN'
B AUDIT60_63_66_EXIT
AUDIT63 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'QWHC BAD TYPE=X'
MVC OPRIDVAL+14(1),HDRTYPE
B AUDIT60_63_66_EXIT
AUDIT66 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'S/B TSO,CAF,DRDA'
AUDIT60_63_66_EXIT EQU *
wto 'qwhc'
lr r2,r7
la r3,12
bal r14,wto
B AUDIT20
*
AUDIT70 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'NO DSN-LOCAL'
B AUDIT70_75_EXIT
AUDIT75 EQU *
MVC OPRIDVAL(16),=CL16'NO SQL-DRDA'
AUDIT70_75_EXIT EQU *

```

```

wto 'qmda'
lr r2,r8
la r3,12
bal r14,wto
        B      AUDIT20
*
*
eject
*
*
WTO equ *
st r14,WTO_return
*
clear output,len=1'output,fill=x'40'
WTO_loop equ *
st r2,temp
c2x temp+00,4,output_addr,8
mvc temp,0(r2)
c2x temp+00,4,output_hex1,8
c2x temp+04,4,output_hex1+08,8
c2x temp+08,4,output_hex2,8
c2x temp+12,4,output_hex2+08,8
mvc output_disp(1'temp'),temp
mvc output_ll,=yl2(1'output)
wto text=output_ll
la r2,1'temp(0,r2)
bct r3,WTO_loop
*
l r14,WTO_return
br r14
*
*
        EJECT
*
*
*****
*  VARIABLE DECLARATIONS AND EQUATES  *
*****
        YREGS
PPA      CEEPPA      ,      CONSTANTS DESCRIBING THE CODE BLOCK
READSCMD DC      CL8'READS'
XIFCID   DC      AL2(XIFCIDL)      SET LENGTH OF BLOCK
        DC      H'0'      RESERVED
        DC      H'148'      READS FOR IFCID=148
XIFCIDL  EQU      *-XIFCID
*
PS_USERID DC C'PS_USERID='      *** USE FOR ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER ***
*
trtable      dc      c'0123456789ABCDEF'
*
        LTORG      ,      PLACE LITERAL POOL HERE
*
WORKAREA DSECT
        ORG      *+CEEDSASZ      LEAVE SPACE FOR DSA FIXED PART
*
OPRID     DS      0F      RESULT AREA FOR OPRID
OPRIDLEN  DS      H      LENGTH
OPRIDVAL  DS      CL30      OPRID FROM COORELATION HEADER
OPRIDIND  DS      H      OPRID INDICATOR FOR UDF INTERFACE
*
HDRTYPE   DS      X
*
IFIPARMS  DS      0F      PARMS FOR IFI READS CALL
AIFICMD   DS      A(READSCMD)      READS COMMAND

```

```

AIFCA      DS      A(XIFCA)           IFCA COMMUNICATION AREA
ARETAREA   DS      A(RETAREA)         RETURN AREA FOR OUR 147 IFCID
AIFCID     DS      A(XIFCID)         IFI AREA TO SELECT 147 ONLY
AWQAL      DS      A(XWQAL)         IFI QUAL AREA TO SET OUR ACEADDR
*
XIFCA      DS      XL(IFCEND-IFCA)    STORAGE FOR IFCA
XWQAL      DS      XL(WQALEND-WQAL)  STORAGE FOR WQAL
*
work              ds      d
WTO_return        ds      f
temp              ds      cl16
output_ll         ds      yl2
output            ds      0cl(8+1+8+8+1+8+8+1+16)
output_addr       ds      cl8
                  dc      cl1' '
output_hex1       ds      2cl8
                  dc      cl1' '
output_hex2       ds      2cl8
                  dc      cl1' '
output_disp       ds      cl16
*
*
RETAREA   DS      0F
RETALEN   DS      F
RETRCS    DS      XL32000
WORKSIZE  EQU     *-WORKAREA
*
          DSNDIFCA ,           MAPPING OF IFI-COMM-AREA
          DSNDWQAL ,           MAPPING OF IFCID-QUAL-AREA
          DSNDQWIW ,           MAPPING OF IFI-WRITER-HEADER
          DSNDQWT0 ,           MAPPING OF TRACE SELF DEFINING SECT
          DSNDQW02 ,           INCLUDES IFC 148 MAPPING
          DSNDQWHC ,           MAPPING FOR CORRELATION INFORMATION
          DSNDQMDA ,           MAPPING FOR ACCOUNTING FACILITY DATA
          CEEDSA ,             MAPPING OF THE DYNAMIC SAVE AREA
          CEECAA ,             MAPPING OF THE COMMON ANCHOR AREA
          END      AUDIT01

```

### **Sample JCL to Compile AUDIT01**

This is a sample JCL compile:



```

//PROC JCLLIB ORDER=(PSHLQ.PPVVV.PROCLIB)
//AUDIT01 EXEC PSASM,PSLIST='*',MEM=AUDIT01,
//          PSCOPY='PSHLQ.PPVVV.COPYLIB',
//          PSSRCE='PSHLQ.PPVVV.SOURCE',
//          --> Where you have the AUDIT program Source Code
//          PSLOAD='SYS2.WLMDSND.LOAD',
//          --> Load Library defined in WLM for the subsystem
//          MACLIB2='CEE.SCEEMAC',
//          MACLIB3='DSN610.SDSNMACS',
//          LKEDLIB='CEE.SCEELKED',
//          LKEDLIB2='DSN610.SDSNLOAD'
//*
//ASM.SYSLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&MACLIB
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&MACLIB2
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&MACLIB3
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&PSCOPY
//LKED.SYSLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LKEDLIB
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LKEDLIB2
//LKED.SYSLIN DD
//           DD DDNAME=SYSIN
//LKED.SYSIN DD *
//          INCLUDE SYSLIB(DSNRLI)
//          ENTRY AUDIT01
//          NAME AUDIT01(R)
//*

```

---

**Note.** The DB2 UDB –Display Thread command displays the first 16 bytes of the PeopleSoft User ID in the IFC field. However, the AUDIT01 UDF returns the full 30–byte PeopleSoft User ID if PeopleTools utilizes the proper API to record all 30 bytes.

---

## User-Defined Function (External Scalar) Requirements

This sample shows the user-defined function requirements:

```

Module Name:    AUDIT01
Description:    Upon being invoked from the trigger, it makes IFI READS call
               to get an operator ID and pass the information back to the caller.
Note:          This program need to run under WLM managed Address Spaces.
Module Type:    IFI READS call program.
Language Type:  Assembler
Entry Point:    AUDIT01
Input:          None
Output:         Operator ID
Ext Serv:       WLMAPPLENV - WLM Application Environment

```

## Sample DB2 UDB Syntax to Create UDF Function AUDIT01

This example shows the syntax that is used to create the UDF function:

```

CREATE FUNCTION AUDIT01()
  RETURNS VARCHAR(30)
  EXTERNAL NAME 'AUDIT01'
  NO EXTERNAL ACTION
  WLM ENVIRONMENT WLMDSNZ
  PARAMETER STYLE DB2SQL
  LANGUAGE ASSEMBLE ;

```

## Verifying Status of UDF Function

After the User Defined Function is created, verify that the status is STARTED by using this command:

```
-DIS FUNCTION SPECIFIC(PSOFT.*)
DSNX975I < DSNX9DIS DISPLAY FUNCTION SPECIFIC REPORT FOLLOWS -
----- SCHEMA=PSOFT
FUNCTION          STATUS ACTIVE QUEUED MAXQUE TIMEOUT WLM_ENV
AUDIT01           STARTED      0      0      1      0 WLMSND
DSNX9DIS DISPLAY FUNCTION SPECIFIC REPORT COMPLETE
DSNX9022I < DSNX9COM '-DISPLAY FUNC' NORMAL COMPLETION
```

If the function is not in Started status, you can start it by using this command:

```
-START FUNCTION SPECIFIC(PSOFT.AUDIT01)
```

## Verifying Monitor Trace Setting

The monitor class 1 must be enabled for the UDF to issue an instrumentation facility interface (IFI) READS request to the IFI facility.

The following is the command:

```
-DIS TRACE(MONITOR)
DSNW127I " CURRENT TRACE ACTIVITY IS -
TNO TYPE CLASS      DEST QUAL
01 MON      01      OP1 NO
*****END OF DISPLAY TRACE SUMMARY DATA*****
DSNX9022I " DSNWVCM1 '-DIS TRACE' NORMAL COMPLETION
```

If the monitor class 1 is not enabled, you can start it using the Command:

```
-START TRACE(MONITOR) CLASS(1)
```

## DB2 z/OS Trigger Syntax

A trigger for each SQL operation type, as in INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE, needs to be defined separately with a different trigger name for a given triggering table. The allowable trigger name length is eight characters long. A user-defined scalar function returns a single value of User ID by making an IFI READS call each time that it is invoked. The following SQL is a sample of the trigger syntax.

```

CREATE TRIGGER _AUD_TRI
AFTER INSERT ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
REFERENCING NEW AS C_ROW
FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
VALUES (PSOFT.AUDIT01(),CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,'A',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

```

```

CREATE TRIGGER _AUD_TRD
AFTER DELETE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
REFERENCING OLD AS C_ROW
FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
VALUES (PSOFT.AUDIT01(),CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,'D',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

```

```

CREATE TRIGGER AUD_TRUB
AFTER UPDATE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
REFERENCING OLD AS C_ROW
FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
VALUES (PSOFT.AUDIT01(),CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,'K',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

```

## DB2 z/OS Trigger Maintenance

These commands might be useful for administering triggers.

### ***List All Triggers in a Database***

To list all triggers:

```
SELECT name FROM SYSIBM.SYSTRIGGERS
```

**List the Trigger Definition**

To list the trigger definition:

```
SELECT text FROM SYSIBM.SYSTRIGGERS WHERE NAME = trigger_name
```

**List Trigger Information**

To list the trigger information:

```
SELECT text FROM SYSIBM.SYSTRIGGERS WHERE NAME = trigger_name
```

**To Remove a Trigger**

To remove a trigger:

```
DROP trigger TRIGGERNAME restrict
```

**To Modify an Existing Trigger**

This command alters the definition of a trigger that was created previously by the CREATE TRIGGER statement.

```
ALTER trigger ...
```

See *DB2 Universal Database for z/OS SQL Reference*.

See *DB2 Universal Database for z/OS Application Programming and SQL Guide*.

---

## Using DB2 UDB for Linux, Unix, and Windows (LUW) Trigger Information

This section discusses :

- DB2 LUW trigger syntax.
- DB2 LUW trigger maintenance.

### DB2 LUW Trigger Syntax

A trigger for each SQL operation type, as in INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE, needs to be defined separately with a different trigger name for a given triggering table. The following SQL is a sample of the trigger syntax:

```

CREATE TRIGGER PS01
  AFTER INSERT ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
  REFERENCING NEW AS C_ROW
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE_HIST
  VALUES (COALESCE(NULLIF(CURRENT CLIENT_USERID, ''), USER), CURRENT TIMESTAMP, 'A',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

CREATE TRIGGER PSP1 AFTER DELETE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
  REFERENCING OLD AS C_ROW
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE_HIST
  VALUES (COALESCE(NULLIF(CURRENT CLIENT_USERID, ''), USER), CURRENT TIMESTAMP, 'D',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

CREATE TRIGGER PSQ1
  AFTER UPDATE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
  REFERENCING NEW AS C_ROW
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE_HIST
  VALUES (COALESCE(NULLIF(CURRENT CLIENT_USERID, ''), USER), CURRENT TIMESTAMP, 'N',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

CREATE TRIGGER PSR1 AFTER UPDATE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
  REFERENCING OLD AS C_ROW
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE_HIST
  VALUES (COALESCE(NULLIF(CURRENT CLIENT_USERID, ''), USER), CURRENT TIMESTAMP, 'K',
C_ROW.EMPLID,
C_ROW.ABSENCE_TYPE,
C_ROW.BEGIN_DT,
C_ROW.RETURN_DT,
C_ROW.DURATION_DAYS,
C_ROW.DURATION_HOURS,
C_ROW.REASON,
C_ROW.PAID_UNPAID,
C_ROW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED);

```

## DB2 LUW Trigger Maintenance

These commands might be useful for administering triggers.

### ***List All Triggers in a Database***

To list all triggers:

```
SELECT trigrname, trigevent, tabname FROM syscat.triggers
```

### ***List the Trigger Definition***

To list the trigger definition:

```
SELECT trigrname, text FROM syscat.triggers
```

### ***To Remove a Trigger***

To remove a trigger:

```
DROP trigger TRIGGERNAME
```

See *DB2 Universal Database for Linux, Unix, and Windows SQL Reference*.

See *DB2 Universal Database for Linux, Unix, and Windows Application Programming and SQL Guide*.

---

## Using Oracle Trigger Information

This section discusses how to:

- Use Oracle trigger syntax.
- Maintaining Oracle triggers.

The triggers that are generated on the Oracle platform reference a function that PeopleSoft delivers to obtain the PS\_OPRID. This function must be installed into the Oracle database schema for the PeopleSoft database prior to creating the trigger. This function can be installed by executing the following SQL as the PeopleSoft database owner ID:

```
$PS_HOME\scripts\getpsoprid.sql
```

## Using Oracle Trigger Syntax

This example shows the Oracle trigger syntax.

```

drop function GET_PS_OPRID
/
create function GET_PS_OPRID (v_client_info VARCHAR2 )
    return VARCHAR2 is
    i integer;
/* Title: GET_PS_OPRID */
/* Purpose: Retrieves the operator id (OPRID) */
/*           from a VARCHAR2 comma separated field */
/*           of the format 'OPRID,OS_USER,MACHINE' */
/*           If no OPRID is found, it returns '!NoOPRID' */
/* Limitations: (any grants, privileges, etc) */
/* Who: PeopleSoft Inc. */
/* Date: 2000-04-07 */
begin
    if ( length(v_client_info) IS NULL ) then
        return('!NoOPRID');
    end if;
    if ( substr(v_client_info,1,1) = ',' ) then
        return('!NoOPRID');
    end if;
    i := 1;
    while ( (substr(v_client_info,i,1)) <> ',' and i < 10) loop
        i := i + 1;
    end loop;
    if ( i > 9 ) then
        return('!NoOPRID');
    else
        i := i - 1;
        return (substr (v_client_info, 1, i));
    end if;
end GET_PS_OPRID;
/
grant execute on GET_PS_OPRID to public
/
/* If Transaction is an Insert Or Update */
/* Capture After Values */
/* If Transaction is a Delete or Update */
/* Capture Before Values */
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
FOR EACH ROW
DECLARE
    V_AUDIT_OPRID VARCHAR2(64);
BEGIN
    DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.READ_CLIENT_INFO(V_AUDIT_OPRID);
    IF :OLD.EMPLID IS NULL
    THEN
        INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
        VALUES (
            GET_PS_OPRID(V_AUDIT_OPRID) ,
            SYSDATE
            ,
            'A'
            ,
            :NEW.EMPLID
            ,
            :NEW.ABSENCE_TYPE
            ,
            :NEW.BEGIN_DT
            ,
            :NEW.RETURN_DT
            ,
            :NEW.DURATION_DAYS
            ,
            :NEW.DURATION_HOURS
            ,
            :NEW.REASON
            ,
            :NEW.PAID_UNPAID
            ,
            :NEW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED
        );
    ELSE
        IF :NEW.EMPLID IS NULL

```

```

THEN
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
  VALUES (
    GET_PS_OPRID(V_AUDIT_OPRID) ,
    SYSDATE ,
    'D' ,
    :OLD.EMPLID ,
    :OLD.ABSENCE_TYPE ,
    :OLD.BEGIN_DT ,
    :OLD.RETURN_DT ,
    :OLD.DURATION_DAYS ,
    :OLD.DURATION_HOURS ,
    :OLD.REASON ,
    :OLD.PAID_UNPAID ,
    :OLD.EMPLOYER_APPROVED
  );
ELSE
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
  VALUES (
    GET_PS_OPRID(V_AUDIT_OPRID) ,
    SYSDATE ,
    'K' ,
    :OLD.EMPLID ,
    :OLD.ABSENCE_TYPE ,
    :OLD.BEGIN_DT ,
    :OLD.RETURN_DT ,
    :OLD.DURATION_DAYS ,
    :OLD.DURATION_HOURS ,
    :OLD.REASON ,
    :OLD.PAID_UNPAID ,
    :OLD.EMPLOYER_APPROVED
  );
  INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
  VALUES (
    GET_PS_OPRID(V_AUDIT_OPRID) ,
    SYSDATE ,
    'N' ,
    :NEW.EMPLID ,
    :NEW.ABSENCE_TYPE ,
    :NEW.BEGIN_DT ,
    :NEW.RETURN_DT ,
    :NEW.DURATION_DAYS ,
    :NEW.DURATION_HOURS ,
    :NEW.REASON ,
    :NEW.PAID_UNPAID ,
    :NEW.EMPLOYER_APPROVED
  );
END IF;
END IF;
END PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR;
/

```

## Maintaining Oracle Triggers

The following command may be helpful with triggers.

### ***List All Triggers in a Database***

To list triggers:



```
SELECT TRIGGER_NAME FROM USER_TRIGGERS;
```

Executed from Schema\_owner\_id

```
SELECT TRIGGER_NAME FROM ALL_TRIGGERS;
```

Executed from SYSTEM

The following data dictionary views reveal information about triggers:

- **USER\_TRIGGERS**

- 

```
SQL> descr user_triggers;
Name                                     Null?      Type
-----
TRIGGER_NAME                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TRIGGER_TYPE                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(16)
TRIGGERING_EVENT                        NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(26)
TABLE_OWNER                            NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TABLE_NAME                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
REFERENCING_NAMES                       NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(87)
WHEN_CLAUSE                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
STATUS                                 NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(8)
DESCRIPTION                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
TRIGGER_BODY                           NOT NULL   LONG
```

## ALL\_TRIGGERS

```
SQL> desc all_triggers;
Name                                     Null?      Type
-----
OWNER                                  NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TRIGGER_NAME                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TRIGGER_TYPE                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(16)
TRIGGERING_EVENT                        NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(26)
TABLE_OWNER                            NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TABLE_NAME                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
REFERENCING_NAMES                       NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(87)
WHEN_CLAUSE                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
STATUS                                 NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(8)
DESCRIPTION                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
TRIGGER_BODY                           NOT NULL   LONG
```

## USER\_TRIGGERS

```
SQL> descr user_triggers;
Name                                     Null?      Type
-----
OWNER                                  NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TRIGGER_NAME                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TRIGGER_TYPE                           NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(16)
TRIGGERING_EVENT                        NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(26)
TABLE_OWNER                            NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
TABLE_NAME                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(30)
REFERENCING_NAMES                       NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(87)
WHEN_CLAUSE                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
STATUS                                 NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(8)
DESCRIPTION                             NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(4000)
TRIGGER_BODY                           NOT NULL   LONG
```

The new column, **BASE\_OBJECT\_TYPE**, specifies whether the trigger is based on **DATABASE**, **SCHEMA**, **table**, or **view**. The old column, **TABLE\_NAME**, is null if the base object is not table or view.

The column ACTION\_TYPE specifies whether the trigger is a call type trigger or a PL/SQL trigger.

The column TRIGGER\_TYPE includes two additional values: BEFORE EVENT and AFTER EVENT, which are applicable only to system events.

The column TRIGGERING\_EVENT includes all system and DML events.

### ***List the Trigger Definition***

To list the trigger definition:

```
Select Trigger_Name, Trigger_Body from USER_TRIGGERS
where Trigger_name=trigger_name;
```

### ***List Trigger Information***

To list trigger information:

```
Select Trigger_Name, Trigger_Type, Triggering_Event, Table_Owner,
Table_Name, Referencing_Names, When_Clause, Status, Description,
Trigger_Body from USER_TRIGGERS where Trigger_name=trigger_name;
```

### ***To Remove a Trigger***

To remove a trigger:

```
drop trigger TRIGGERNAME
```

### ***To Modify an Existing Trigger***

On Oracle, to explicitly alter a trigger definition, use the CREATE OR REPLACE option. See a full explanation in the Oracle SQL Reference (CREATE TRIGGER).

### ***To Disable a Trigger***

By default, triggers are enabled when they're first created. Disable a trigger by using the ALTER TRIGGER statement with the DISABLE option.

For example, to disable the trigger named REORDER of the INVENTORY table, enter the following statement:

```
ALTER TRIGGER Reorder DISABLE;
```

All triggers that are associated with a table can be disabled with one statement by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the DISABLE clause and the ALL TRIGGERS option. For example, to disable all triggers that are defined for the INVENTORY table, enter the following statement:

```
ALTER TABLE Inventory
    DISABLE ALL TRIGGERS;
```

---

## Using Sybase Trigger Information

This section discusses how to:

- Use Sybase trigger syntax.
- Use Sybase trigger maintenance.

### Using Sybase Trigger Syntax

This example shows the syntax for creating triggers on Sybase:

```

CREATE TRIGGER PS_ABSENCE_HIST_TR
ON PS_ABSENCE_HIST
FOR INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE AS
BEGIN
    DECLARE @XTYPE CHAR(1), @OPRID CHAR(8)
    IF EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM deleted)
        SELECT @XTYPE = 'D'
    IF EXISTS (SELECT 'X' FROM inserted)
        BEGIN
            IF (@XTYPE = 'D')
                SELECT @XTYPE = 'U'
            ELSE
                SELECT @XTYPE = 'I'
        END
    SELECT @OPRID = substring(clientname, 1, charindex(',', clientname) - 1)
    FROM master..sysprocesses
    WHERE spid = @@spid
    -- Transaction is a Delete and the Delete Part of an Update
    IF (@XTYPE = 'D') OR (@XTYPE = 'U')
    BEGIN
        IF (@XTYPE = 'U')
            SELECT @XTYPE = 'B'
        INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
        (AUDIT_OPRID, AUDIT_STAMP, AUDIT_ACTN,
        EMPLID, ABSENCE_TYPE, BEGIN_DT, RETURN_DT, DURATION_DAYS,
        DURATION_HOURS, REASON, PAID_UNPAID, EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
        SELECT @OPRID, getdate(), @XTYPE,
        EMPLID, ABSENCE_TYPE, BEGIN_DT, RETURN_DT, DURATION_DAYS,
        DURATION_HOURS, REASON, PAID_UNPAID, EMPLOYER_APPROVED
        FROM deleted
    END
    -- Transaction is a Insert and the Insert Part of an Update
    IF (@XTYPE = 'I') OR (@XTYPE = 'B')
    BEGIN
        IF (@XTYPE = 'B')
            SELECT @XTYPE = 'A'
        INSERT INTO PS_AUDIT_ABSENCE
        (AUDIT_OPRID, AUDIT_STAMP, AUDIT_ACTN,
        EMPLID, ABSENCE_TYPE, BEGIN_DT, RETURN_DT, DURATION_DAYS,
        DURATION_HOURS, REASON, PAID_UNPAID, EMPLOYER_APPROVED)
        SELECT @OPRID, getdate(), @XTYPE,
        EMPLID, ABSENCE_TYPE, BEGIN_DT, RETURN_DT, DURATION_DAYS,
        DURATION_HOURS, REASON, PAID_UNPAID, EMPLOYER_APPROVED
        FROM inserted
    END
END

```

## Using Sybase Trigger Maintenance

Commands that are useful with the trigger feature include:

### *List All Triggers in a Database*

To list all triggers:

```
SELECT name FROM sysobjects WHERE type = 'TR'
```

***List the Trigger Definition***

To list trigger definition

```
sp_helptext TRIGGERNAME
```

***List Trigger Information***

To list trigger information:

```
sp_help TRIGGERNAME
```

This command reports information about a database object (any object that is listed in the sysobjects table), a user-defined data type, or a data type that Microsoft SQL Server supplies.

***To Remove a Trigger***

To remove a trigger:

```
drop trigger TRIGGERNAME
```

***To Disable a Trigger***

To disable a trigger:

```
ALTER TABLE table          | (ENABLE | DISABLE) TRIGGER ( trigger_name)
```

(ENABLE | DISABLE ) TRIGGER specifies that trigger\_name is enabled or disabled. When a trigger is disabled, it is still defined for the table; however, when INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE statements are executed against the table, the actions that are in the trigger are not performed until the trigger is enabled.

- ALL. Specifies that all triggers in the table are enabled or disabled.
- trigger\_name. Specifies the name of the trigger to disable or enable.



## Chapter 6

# Working With The Diagnostics Framework

This chapter provides an overview of Diagnostics Framework and discusses how to:

- Set up security for Diagnostics Framework.
- Run diagnostics.
- Import post-release plug-ins.

---

## Understanding Diagnostics Framework

This section discusses:

- What is the Diagnostics Framework?
- Diagnostics Framework benefits
- Diagnostics Framework architecture.

## What Is the Diagnostics Framework?

The Diagnostics Framework is a set of delivered classes and plug-ins that enable you to capture detailed information for troubleshooting PeopleSoft application issues.

A diagnostic plug-in is an application package, which is developed following the diagnostic plug-in standard. An application package is a container for application classes or other application packages. Developers use the Application Designer to create application packages that are treated as diagnostic plug-ins by the framework.

PeopleTools delivers Diagnostics Framework base classes in an application package called PT\_DIAGNOSTICS, which consists of a collection of application classes as well methods which can be used to develop application packages for the Diagnostics Framework. After implementing and registering the application package within the Diagnostics Framework, the application package becomes a diagnostic plug-in.

## Diagnostics Framework Benefits

The Diagnostics Framework enables you to define and retrieve application data diagnostics from a PeopleSoft database within the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) environment. With this diagnostic information, you can:

- Discover problematic application-related data.
- Explore setup details.
- Present information to Oracle support in a common format.

Using Diagnostics Framework, you can perform diagnostic tests on your system with minimal instructions from the Oracle support. These tests answer application-specific questions to help development and user support teams diagnose and troubleshoot problems that you may be experiencing.

The tests can request additional parameters to tailor the diagnostics to your situation. They output HTML pages that you can open using any supported browser, and XML documents containing the same information in a form suitable for programmatic processing. You can email the HTML or XML documents to an application expert.

---

**Note.** Diagnostics Framework is not designed to be a reporting tool, such as Query or Crystal Reports. Diagnostics Framework should not be used to return large amounts of data. Use it only to get small sets of diagnostic data, for example 100 rows of data or fewer.

---

## Diagnostics Framework Architecture

Diagnostics Framework includes:

- Delivered base classes in application packages.
- Delivered application diagnostic plug-ins developed from the base classes and application packages.
- The capability to extend delivered base classes to develop additional diagnostic plug-ins and to register the new plug-ins.
- A common user interface for all diagnostic plug-ins.

---

**Note.** Oracle support might give you additional plug-ins to diagnose specific problems. These plug-ins are implemented differently from the plug-ins that you develop.

---

Diagnostics Framework is installed automatically when you install PeopleTools. Use standard PeopleSoft security administration to grant access to the user interface.

See [Chapter 6, "Working With The Diagnostics Framework," Setting Up Security for Diagnostics Framework, page 191.](#)

### ***Application Classes***

By definition, each application class is responsible for asking one diagnostic question. Each class has a method that is called by Diagnostics Framework. This method, in turn, gathers the information and calls methods in extended base classes that return the information to Diagnostics Framework

### ***Diagnostic Plug-ins***

Application packages that are used in the Diagnostics Framework are referred to as diagnostic application packages. Each is a collection of application classes and methods encapsulated within an application package. The metadata that defines a diagnostic application package is referred to as a diagnostic plug-in. In this documentation, we refer to diagnostic application packages as *diagnostic plug-ins* or simply as *plug-ins*.



Diagnostic plug-ins probe the application for diagnostic information. When you perform diagnostic tests on your PeopleSoft system, Diagnostics Framework executes programs within these plug-ins and then returns the information from those programs in an HTML or XML document. These plug-ins can supply a consistent method of gathering relevant diagnostic information from your system.

These are the categories of diagnostic plug-ins:

<b>Diagnostic Plug-In Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Delivered	Delivered diagnostic plug-ins that are automatically installed when you install PeopleTools and PeopleSoft applications.  The available diagnostic plug-ins depend on which applications you have installed. Appropriate plug-ins are automatically available after your application installation is complete.
Post-Release	Post-release diagnostic plug-ins that Oracle support might send to you for specific diagnostic purposes.  You import these plug-ins to Diagnostics Framework using Application Designer.
Custom	Custom diagnostic plug-ins that you develop.  You must register custom plug-ins before you can use them.  <b>Note.</b> If you want to register existing plug-ins from other Oracle Enterprise PeopleSoft releases, you must ensure that they're defined according to the guidelines used for custom plug-ins in the current release.

All registered plug-ins appear in the Diagnostics Framework user interface. Delivered plug-ins are grouped according to installed PeopleSoft applications and functional areas within the applications. From here, you can select which plug-ins to run. An Oracle support contact may ask you to run a particular plug-in, depending on the problem that you are reporting.

### **See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode API Reference*, "Application Classes"

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," page 201](#)

---

## **Setting Up Security for Diagnostics Framework**

This section provides an overview of security for Diagnostics Framework and discusses how to:

- Grant access Diagnostics Framework pages.
- Grant access to the WEBLIB\_PTDIAG web library.

## Understanding Security for Diagnostics Framework

To gather information using Diagnostics Framework, you must have access to:

- The Diagnostics Framework pages.
- The WEBLIB\_PTDIAG web library.

You use the PeopleTools Security pages to select or create a permission list to which you can add the necessary permissions for these elements. That permission list should ultimately be assigned through a role to the users who will run diagnostics.

### See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Security Administration*

## Granting Access to the Diagnostics Framework Pages

To run diagnostics, you must have access to these Diagnostics Framework pages:

- PT\_DIAG\_PLUGIN
- PT\_DIAG\_FRAME\_REG

To set up security access to these pages:

1. Select PeopleTools, Security, Permission & Roles, Permission Lists.
2. Select or define a permission list to which you want to add Diagnostics Framework permissions.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Security Administration*, "Setting Up Permission Lists."

3. Access the Pages page for the selected permission list.

This page lists the menus to which this permission list has some degree of access.

4. If the PT\_DIAGNOSTICS menu isn't listed on this page, add a new row and select it.
5. Click the Edit Components link for the PT\_DIAGNOSTICS menu.

The Component Permissions page appears.

6. Click the Edit Pages link for the PT\_DIAG\_LAUNCH component.

The Page Permissions page appears.

7. Click Select All to grant full access to the PT\_DIAG\_PLUGIN page, then click OK to return to the Component Permissions page.
8. Click the Edit Pages link for the PT\_DIAG\_FRAME\_REG component.

The Page Permissions page appears.

9. Click Select All to grant full access to the PT\_DIAG\_FRAME\_REG page, then click OK to return to the Component Permissions page.
10. Click OK, then save the permission list.

## Granting Access to the WEBLIB\_PTDIAG Web Library

To set up security access to WEBLIB\_PTDIAG:

1. Access the Web Libraries page for the permission list for which you've already granted access to the Diagnostics Framework pages.

This page lists the web libraries to which the permission list has some degree of access.

2. If the WEBLIB\_PTDIAG web library isn't listed on this page, add a new row and select it.
3. Click the Edit link for the WEBLIB\_PTDIAG web library.

The Weblib Permissions page appears.

4. Click Full Access (All) to grant full access to the WEBLIB\_PTDIAG web library.
5. Click OK, then save the permission list.

---

## Running Diagnostics

This section discusses how to:

- Launch diagnostic plug-ins.
- Provide additional information.
- Obtain diagnostic results.

## Launching Diagnostic Plug-Ins

Access the Launch Diagnostics page (Application Diagnostics, Launch Diagnostics).

## Launch Diagnostics

Registered Plug-ins			
	Select	Plug-in Name	Description
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	QE_APP_PACKAGE	PT Diagnostic Plug-In Sample

[Customize](#) | [Find](#) | First 1 of 1 Last

[Select All](#)   [Clear All](#)

☒ Email report   ☐ Display report in browser

Email From

To

CC

Subject

Launch Diagnostics page

This page displays a list of available diagnostic plug-ins. Only registered plug-ins appear.

<b>Plug-In Name</b>	Displays the name of the application package that defines each diagnostic plug-in.
<b>Select</b>	<p>Select this check box for each diagnostic plug-in package that you want to run.</p> <p>Click the Select All link to include all of the listed plug-ins, or the Clear All link to exclude all of the listed plug-ins from the diagnostics</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> You must select at least one diagnostic plug-in.</p> <hr/>
<b>Email report</b>	<p>Select to generate an email containing HTML and XML copies of the generated diagnostic report. The following standard email fields appear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Email From</li> <li>To</li> <li>CC (optional)</li> <li>Subject (optional)</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Before you can use this option, you must configure the application server domain to handle SMTP email.</p> <hr/> <p>See <i>PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration</i>, "Setting Application Server Domain Parameters," SMTP Settings.</p>

<b>Display report in browser</b>	Select to display the generated HTML diagnostic report in a new browser window.
<b>Generate Diagnostics</b>	Click to launch the selected diagnostics, and either display or email the resulting report.

**Note.** You cannot select both Display report in browser and Email report simultaneously.

Providing Additional Information For Diagnostic Plug-ins

Access the Additional Information page (click the Generate Diagnostics button on the Launch Diagnostics page).

One or more of the diagnostic plug-ins you selected might have been designed to prompt you dynamically for relevant parameters. The Additional Information page enables you to enter the required parameters.

**Additional Information**  
One or more of the plug-ins you selected requires additional information.

**Plug-in Name:** PT\_DIAGNOSTIC\_PLUGIN

PT Diag. Plug-In Test Cases

Enter Records to search for, beginning with:

**Class Name:** GetRecFieldsBeginningWith

Enter FieldNames to retrieve, beginning with:

**Plug-in Name:** TEST\_DIAG

Diagnostic Dynamic Prompting

Global call by Test CustID:

**Class Name:** Test

Class Test Effdt:

04/23/2004

Class Test CustID1:

Class Test Bool1:

False

Class Test Num1:

0

**Class Name:** Test2

Class Test2 2 CustID2:

Class Test2 Effdt2:

04/23/2004

Additional Information page

The fields that appear on this page depend on the diagnostic plug-ins that you specified on the Launch Diagnostics page. The Additional Information page includes a section for each plug-in that requires information. Each section can contain fields that are specific to individual classes, or fields that apply globally for the plug-in. For the diagnostic plug-ins delivered with your PeopleSoft application, your application documentation explains what values are required for each field.

## Obtaining Diagnostic Results

When all of the diagnostic results have been gathered, they're disseminated based on the option you selected on the Launch Diagnostics page.

If you selected Display report in browser, the resulting PeopleSoft Diagnostics page appears in HTML format in a new browser window. Following is an example of the PeopleSoft Diagnostics page in HTML format.

## PeopleSoft Diagnostics

Database Name: **QEB45DVL**  
 User ID: **QEDMO**  
 Date Created: **2004-01-30-16.04.52.000000**  
 Database Type: **MICROSFT**

**Plug-in Name:** PT\_DIAGNOSTIC\_PLUGIN

**Description:** PT Diag. Plug-In Test Cases

**Purpose:** This is a diagnostic to determine all of the languages installed in your PeopleSoft Database. This diagnostic tests AddRowset functionality.

The following rows were retrieved:

	LANGUAGE_CD	CHARSET	INSTALLED	VERITY_LOCALE	SCLANG	WINDOWS_CHARSET	VERITY_CHARSET	ISO_LOCALE
1	CFR	ISO_8859-1	0	frenchx	SC16	CP1252	CP1252	fr-ca
2	DAN	ISO_8859-1	0	danishx	SC09	CP1252	CP1252	da
3	DUT	ISO_8859-1	1	dutchx	SC11	CP1252	CP1252	nl
4	ENG	ISO_8859-1	1	englishx	SC00	CP1252	CP1252	en
5	ESP	ISO_8859-1	0	spanishx	SC34	CP1252	CP1252	es
6	FRA	ISO_8859-1	0	frenchx	SC16	CP1252	CP1252	fr
7	GER	ISO_8859-1	0	germanx	SC18	CP1252	CP1252	de
8	GRK	ISO_8859-7	0	englishx	SC21	CP1253	CP1253	el
9	ITA	ISO_8859-1	0	italianx	SC25	CP1252	CP1252	it
10	JPN	Shift_JIS	0	japanb	SC00	CP932	Shift_JIS	ja
11	KOR	CP949	0	koreab	SC00	CP949	CP949	ko
12	MAY	ISO_8859-1	0	englishx	SC00	CP1252	CP1252	ms
13	POL	ISO_8859-2	0	polish	SC28	CP1250	CP1250	pl
14	POR	ISO_8859-1	0	portugx	SC31	CP1252	CP1252	pt
15	SVE	ISO_8859-1	0	swedishx	SC35	CP1252	CP1252	sv
16	THA	ISO_8859-11	0	uni	SC00	CP874	UTF8	th
17	ZHS	GB2312	0	simpcb	SC00	CP936	GB2312	zh-cn
18	ZHT	Big5	0	tradcb	SC00	CP950	Big5	zh-tw

**Plug-in Name:** PT\_DIAGNOSTIC\_PLUGIN

**Description:** PT Diag. Plug-In Test Cases

**Purpose:** This is a diagnostic to print out a listing of fields from records in your PeopleSoft database that matches search criteria. This diagnostic tests globalType and classType prompting. The global prompt is retrieved from inputs defined by a different class in this plug-in.

### Additional Information

Enter Records to search for, beginning with: **MAINT**

Enter FieldNames to retrieve, beginning with: **REL**

The following values were retrieved:

Record: MAINTENANCE\_LOG has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASEDTTM  
 Record: MAINTENANCE\_LOG has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASELABEL  
 Record: MAINTLOGREL\_VW has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASEDTTM  
 Record: MAINTLOGREL\_VW has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASELABEL  
 Record: MAINTLOGSRCH\_VW has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASEDTTM  
 Record: MAINTLOGSRCH\_VW has the following field that matches your criteria: RELEASELABEL

## PeopleSoft Diagnostics page in HTML format

Rowset information is presented on the page in tabular form, and non-rowset information is presented in list form. You can use your browser's Save As functionality to save the page to your local machine.

If you selected Email report, the resulting PeopleSoft Diagnostics page is sent (email) as HTML and XML attachments to the address you specified. Following is an example of the XML that comprises a PeopleSoft Diagnostics page.



```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<PeopleSoftDiagnostics>
  <UserInformation>
    <Database_Name>QE845DVL</Database_Name>
    <User_ID>QEDMO</User_ID>
    <Date_Created>2004-01-30-16.04.54.000000</Date_Created>
    <Database_Type>MICROSFT</Database_Type>
  </UserInformation>
  <ApplicationDiagnostics>
    <PT_DIAGNOSTIC_PLUGIN>
      <GetLanguages>
        <Purpose>This is a diagnostic to determine all
of the languages installed in your PeopleSoft Database.
This diagnostic tests AddRowset functionality.</Purpose>
        <Result>
          <LANGUAGE_CD>CFR</LANGUAGE_CD>
          <CHARSET>ISO_8859-1</CHARSET>
          <INSTALLED>0</INSTALLED>
          <VERITY_LOCALE>frenchx</VERITY_LOCALE>
          <SCLANG>SC16</SCLANG>
          <WINDOWS_CHARSET>CP1252</WINDOWS_CHARSET>
          <VERITY_CHARSET>CP1252</VERITY_CHARSET>
          <ISO_LOCALE>fr-ca</ISO_LOCALE>
        </Result>
        <Result>
          <LANGUAGE_CD>DAN</LANGUAGE_CD>
          <CHARSET>ISO_8859-1</CHARSET>
          <INSTALLED>0</INSTALLED>
          <VERITY_LOCALE>danishx</VERITY_LOCALE>
          <SCLANG>SC09</SCLANG>
          <WINDOWS_CHARSET>CP1252</WINDOWS_CHARSET>
          <VERITY_CHARSET>CP1252</VERITY_CHARSET>
          <ISO_LOCALE>da</ISO_LOCALE>
        </Result>
        <Result>
          <LANGUAGE_CD>ENG</LANGUAGE_CD>
          <CHARSET>ISO_8859-1</CHARSET>
          <INSTALLED>1</INSTALLED>
          <VERITY_LOCALE>englishx</VERITY_LOCALE>
          <SCLANG>SC00</SCLANG>
          <WINDOWS_CHARSET>CP1252</WINDOWS_CHARSET>
          <VERITY_CHARSET>CP1252</VERITY_CHARSET>
          <ISO_LOCALE>en</ISO_LOCALE>
        </Result>
      </GetLanguages>
      <GetRecFieldsBeginningWith>
        <Purpose>This is a diagnostic to print out a listing
of fields from records in your PeopleSoft database that
matches search criteria. This diagnostic tests globalType
and classType prompting. The global prompt is retrieved
from inputs defined by a different class in this plug-in.</Purpose>
        <AdditionalInformation>
          <Question>Enter Records to search for, beginning with:</Question>
          <Answer>MAINT</Answer>
        </AdditionalInformation>
        <AdditionalInformation>
          <Question>Enter FieldNames to retrieve, beginning with:</Question>
          <Answer>REL</Answer>
        </AdditionalInformation>
        <Result>
          <Descr>Record: MAINTENANCE_LOG has the following
field that matches your criteria: </Descr>
          <Type>String</Type>
          <Answer>RELEASEDTM</Answer>

```

```

        </Result>
        <Result>
            <Descr>Record: MAINTENANCE_LOG has the following
field that matches your criteria: </Descr>
            <Type>String</Type>
            <Answer>RELEASELABEL</Answer>
        </Result>
        <Result>
            <Descr>Record: MAINTLOGREL_VW has the following
field that matches your criteria: </Descr>
            <Type>String</Type>
            <Answer>RELEASEDTM</Answer>
        </Result>
        <Result>
            <Descr>Record: MAINTLOGREL_VW has the following
field that matches your criteria: </Descr>
            <Type>String</Type>
            <Answer>RELEASELABEL</Answer>
        </Result>
    </GetRecFieldsBeginningWith>
</PT_DIAGNOSTIC_PLUGIN>
</ApplicationDiagnostics>
</PeopleSoftDiagnostics>

```

---

## Importing Post-Release Plug-Ins

If information that you generate from the delivered plug-ins is not sufficient to diagnose your problem, the Oracle Support team may provide additional plug-ins. You import these plug-ins into your database using the Copy Project from File option in Application Designer.

A plug-in project is an upgrade project, and it must contain the following definitions:

- Application Packages.
- Diagnostic Plug-Ins.
- Application Package PeopleCode.

If you need to send a file to Oracle Support or move a file between databases, use the Copy Project to File option in Application Designer.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer Lifecycle Management Guide*, "Upgrading with PeopleSoft Application Designer."

Plug-ins that you import are registered automatically and become available immediately on the Launch Diagnostics page.

## Chapter 7

# Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins

This chapter provides an overview of diagnostic plug-in development and discusses:

- Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins.
- Working with the Delivered PT\_DIAGNOSTIC Application Package.
- PTDiagnostics Application Class.
- PTDiagnostics Class Methods.
- PTDiagnostics Class Properties.
- Diagnostic Plug-In Examples.

---

## Understanding Diagnostic Plug-In Development

A diagnostic plug-in is an application package developed while adhering to the diagnostic plug-in standard. Developers use the application packages editor in Application Designer to create the application packages that are treated as diagnostic plug-ins by the framework.

PeopleTools delivers Diagnostics Framework base classes in an application package called PT\_DIAGNOSTICS. To create your own diagnostic plug-in, a new application package needs to be created and extended from the application package PT\_DIAGNOSTICS. The new application package can have multiple numbers of application classes which should be extended from the base classes in PTDiagnostics, delivered in the PT\_DIAGNOSTICS application package.

The sub classes can call the base class methods to collect the diagnostic information and return the same information to the Diagnostics Framework. Each of the application classes within the diagnostic plug-in focuses one diagnostic area and can return different information, depending on the state of the application and the nature of the 'question'.

The application class also can contain an optional public method, called GetDynamicPrompt, to prompt users for additional information.

The following types of data can be retrieved and displayed in the Diagnostics Framework:

- String
- Date
- Number
- Boolean

- Rowset

---

**Note.** You can also define your own private methods within the application class, which you can call only within the class.

---

You define diagnostic plug-ins using application classes, but you don't use them in the same way that other PeopleCode application classes are used. Diagnostic plug-in classes:

- must be instantiated only by Diagnostics Framework. They can't be called from any other location, including other PeopleCode programs.
- must contain three mandatory methods that are recognized and used by Diagnostics Framework.

---

**Note.** Developing custom diagnostic plug-ins requires a working knowledge of PeopleCode and application classes.

---

### See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode API Reference, "Application Classes"*

---

## Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins

This section discusses how to:

- Create the diagnostic application package.
- Create the diagnostic application classes.
- Implement the diagnostic PeopleCode.
- Register the diagnostic plug-in.
- Share diagnostic plug-ins

---

**Note.** Except for registering the Diagnostic Plug-in, which is performed using a PIA page, you complete all of these development steps using Application Designer.

---

## Creating the Diagnostic Application Package

To create a diagnostic application package: Open the application package in Application Designer, Save the package.

1. In Application Designer select File, New, Application Package.
2. Save and name the package.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode API Reference, "Application Classes."*

## Creating the Diagnostic Application Classes

In the application package you've created, create a new application class, and save the class.

---

**Note.** You can pass only one data type in each diagnostic plug-in application class. To return multiple data types, define multiple application classes. Results that are passed to the framework are retained in memory.

---

See *PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode API Reference*, "Application Classes."

## Implementing the Diagnostic PeopleCode

To implement the diagnostic PeopleCode:

1. Open the PeopleCode editor (View, PeopleCode).
2. Import the PTDiagnostic package, by entering:  

```
import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*
```
3. This imports all the classes in the PT\_DIAGNOSTICS application package.
4. Define the class, using the same procedure as you would for any PeopleCode program. For example,

```
class <class name> extends PTDiagnostic:PTDiagnostic
```

This makes the class a diagnostic application class.

The class name mentioned in the PeopleCode should be the same as the class name which is under the application package.

All the classes defined in the diagnostic plug-in application package should be extended from the class PTDiagnostic:PTDiagnostic.

## 5. Define the following mandatory methods:

<b>Method</b>	<b>Description</b>
Method <class name>	<p>This is the constructor of the class.</p> <p>Inside the method it is mandatory to have <code>%Super = create PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics()</code>.</p> <p>More description of <code>%Super</code> resides in the <code>PTDiagnostics</code> application class.</p> <p>If you want to display the rowset in the browser, then you have to set the <code>hasRowset</code> property to <code>True</code>, otherwise make it <code>False</code>. For example,</p> <pre>&amp;status = %Super.SetProperty (%This, "hasRowset", "Boolean", False);</pre> <p>If you want to call additional information from the user during the execution and use it as the search criteria, then set the <code>Where</code> property to <code>true</code>, otherwise make it <code>False</code>. For example,</p> <pre>&amp;status = %Super.SetProperty (%This, "Where", "Boolean", True);</pre>
Method <code>GetDiagnosticInfo</code>	<p>This is the method that gets called when you launch the diagnostic plug-in.</p> <p>To display any output in the browser you have to call <code>%Super.Insertdata(Data type, &lt;String to name the display&gt;, &lt;variable name&gt;)</code>.</p>
Method <code>IsPlugIn</code>	<p>The purpose of this method is to identify the application package as a diagnostic plug-in. If this method is not present, then the system does not recognize it as a diagnostic plug-in during the registration process.</p> <p>This method should appear at the end of the diagnostic application class, and it should be an empty method.</p> <p>The definition of this should be :</p> <pre>Method IsPlugIn end-method;</pre>

## Registering the Diagnostic Plug-In

Before a diagnostics application package can be used, you have to register it using the Register Diagnostics page. Once the registration is complete, the application package becomes a diagnostic plug-in.

To register a diagnostic plug-in:

1. Access the Register Diagnostics page by selecting Application Diagnostics, Register Diagnostics.
2. Add a row, if needed.

3. In the Plug-In Name edit box, enter the name of the application package, or use the lookup prompt to select it.

---

**Note.** When using the lookup prompt, the system displays *all* application packages not only diagnostic plug-in packages. When developing custom diagnostic plug-ins, using a naming convention can be helpful to refine the search.

---

4. Click Save.

---

**Note.** If you have not defined the `IsPlugIn` method or if it is not at the end of the class, an error message appears. The system only registers application packages containing all the required elements of a diagnostic plug-in.

---

## Sharing Diagnostic Definitions

Once the registration is complete, the application package can be selected as a *Diagnostic Plug-In* in Application Designer. Inserting diagnostic plug-ins into projects, enables them to be shared, copied to or compared between databases, and exported to and imported from files. Sharing diagnostic plug-ins would be necessary for plug-ins that need to be sent to Oracle support staff for their review, for example, or to other developers at your site.

The project should contain the:

- Diagnostic plug-in
- application package
- application package PeopleCode

To insert a plug-in into a project:

1. In Application Designer, select Insert, Definitions into Project.
2. Select *Diagnostic Plug-Ins* as the definition type.
3. Select the plug-in and click Insert.
4. After inserting the plug-in, make sure to include the underlying application packages and application package PeopleCode in the project as well.

Once the diagnostic plug-in definitions have been inserted into a project, you can share a diagnostic plug-in. Check the Upgrade tab to see these definition types: Application Packages, Diagnostic Plug-Ins, and PeopleCode. You cannot see these with the Development tab selected.

To share a diagnostic plug-in:

1. Open the project containing the diagnostic definitions in Application Designer.
2. Select Tools, Copy Project, to File.
3. Share the generated XML file with the interested parties.

## See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer Developer's Guide, "Working With Projects"*

---

## Working With The Delivered PT\_DIAGNOSTIC Application Package

PeopleTools delivers the PT\_DIAGNOSTIC application package as part of the Diagnostics Framework. This package is the base package and its classes are base classes for the diagnostic plug-in.

To define a new plug-in, create a new application package, containing one or more application classes that imports the PT\_DIAGNOSTIC application package.

When working with the PT\_DIAGNOSTIC application package, make sure you understand:

- PTDiagnostics Application Class
- PTDiagnostics Class Methods
- PTDiagnostics Class Properties

These elements are described in the following sections.

---

## PTDiagnostics Application Class

The PTDiagnostics application class is part of the PT\_DIAGNOSTICS application package. It establishes the basic framework for developing the diagnostic plug-ins. The PTDiagnostics application class contains methods and properties that you can extend to develop your diagnostic plug-ins. The PTDiagnostics Class is not a built-in class, like Rowset, Field, Record, and so on. It's an application class.

Before you can use this class in your PeopleCode program, you must import it into your program, using an import statement. The application package PT\_DIAGNOSTICS contains the PTDiagnostics class. The import statement should be as follows:

```
import PT_DIAGNOSTICS: *;
```

Using the asterisk (\*) after the package name makes all the application classes directly contained in the named package available. Application classes contained in subpackages of the named package are not made available.

In the constructor of the application class which extends the PTDiagnostics class you need to instantiate the PTDiagnostics class. The extended application classes collect the information whenever required and pass it to the super class, which is the PTDiagnostics class. You instantiate this class as:

```
%Super = create PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics()
```



---

## PTDiagnostics Class Methods

This section discusses the diagnostic methods for the PTDiagnostics PeopleCode class. The methods are listed in alphabetical order.

### GetDiagnosticInfo

#### Description

Use this required public method to define the code that retrieves diagnostic information and returns it to Diagnostics Framework for presentation to the user. This method is invoked by Diagnostics Framework to initiate information collection, then output the results.

The GetDiagnosticInfo method uses the base class InsertData method to pass the results of the diagnostic to Diagnostics Framework for presentation to the users, for example:

```
&status = %Super.InsertData("Number", "Number of Records: ", &rs1.RowCount);
```

InsertData can pass output data using the following data types:

- String
- Number
- Date
- Boolean
- Rowset

Before you can pass rowset data as output, you must first use the base class SetProperty method to set the base class hasRowset property to True.

Considerations for GetDiagnosticInfo include:

- You can pass only one data type in each diagnostic plug-in application class. To return multiple data types, define multiple application classes. Results that are passed to the framework are retained in memory.
- If you're also defining the GetDynamicPrompt method to prompt users for additional information, use the base class GetUserInputByKey method to retrieve the user responses, for example:

```
&status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("Recs", &sVal);
```

- For more readable output, use the base class SetProperty method to insert a description into the base class Purpose property, for example:

```
&status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String", "This is a diagnostic to  
determine your license code.");
```

---

**Note.** You can also set the Purpose property in the constructor or in the GetDynamicPrompt method.

---

## Example

Following is an example of `GetDiagnosticInfo` that passes rowset data as output:

```
method GetDiagnosticInfo
    Local boolean &status;
    Local number &rc1;
    Local Rowset &rs1;
    Local string &sError;

    &rs1 = CreateRowset(Record.PSLANGUAGES);
    &rc1 = &rs1.Fill();
    &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "hasRowset", "Boolean", True);
    &status = %Super.InsertData("Rowset", "LANGUAGES description, not used in
output", &rs1);

end-method;
```

## GetDynamicPrompt

### Description

If you want a diagnostic application class to prompt users for additional information that you can use as dynamic criteria for the diagnostic, you must define a public method called `GetDynamicPrompt` within the class.

Before you can use the `GetDynamicPrompt` method, you must first use the base class `SetProperty` method within the constructor to set the base class `Where` property to `True`, for example:

```
&status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Where", "Boolean", True);
```

---

**Note.** If the `Where` property is `False`, Diagnostics Framework ignores the `GetDynamicPrompt` method.

Within the `GetDynamicPrompt` method, use the base class `InsertQuestion` method to define the questions used to prompt the users.

---

### Example

```
method GetDynamicPrompt
    Local boolean &status;

    &status = %Super.InsertQuestion("Recs", "Enter Records to search for, beginning
with: ", "String", True);
end-method;
```

## GetUserInputByKey

### Syntax

```
GetUserInputByKey(sKeyID, &data)
```

## Description

The `GetUserInputByKey` method retrieves the user response to a question, which can then be used as an input parameter in the diagnostic. You invoke this method within the `GetDiagnosticInfo` method.

## Parameters

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>sKeyID</i>	Specify as a string the key that identifies the question for which you're retrieving the user response.
<i>&amp;data</i>	Provide a variable to contain the retrieved user response.

## Returns

A Boolean value: True if the user response was retrieved successfully, False otherwise.

## InsertData

### Syntax

**InsertData**(*propFormat*,*propDescr*,*&data*)

## Description

The `InsertData` method passes data to Diagnostics Framework to be presented as the output of the diagnostic. This enables you to pass any information you want without having to hardcode base class methods in the plug-in. You invoke this method within the `GetDiagnosticInfo` method.

## Parameters

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>propFormat</i>	<p>Specify as a string the data type of the data to be presented. Select from the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• String</li><li>• Number</li><li>• Date</li><li>• Boolean</li><li>• Rowset</li></ul>

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
<i>propDescr</i>	Specify a string of text to describe or introduce the output data.
<i>&amp;data</i>	Provide the output data value, in a variable of the data type specified by the <i>propFormat</i> parameter.

## Returns

A Boolean value: True if the data has been inserted into Diagnostics Framework, False if the data can't be inserted into the framework, or if the data type specified by *propFormat* doesn't exist in the current framework.

## InsertQuestion

### Syntax

```
InsertQuestion( sKeyID, sQuestion, sType,  
GblBool )
```

### Description

The InsertQuestion method passes a question to Diagnostics Framework, which then presents it to the user to obtain an input parameter. You invoke this method within the GetDynamicPrompt method.

### Parameters

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
<i>sKeyID</i>	Specify as a string a key to identify the question. This value must be unique across all plug-ins that are made available to a user.
<i>sQuestion</i>	Specify as a string the question you want the user to answer.
<i>sType</i>	Specify as a string the data type of the response required from the user. Select from the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• String</li> <li>• Number</li> <li>• Date</li> <li>• Boolean</li> </ul>

<b><i>Parameter</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>
<i>GblBool</i>	<p>Specify a Boolean value indicating the scope of the question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• True: The question applies globally to the plug-in.</li> <li>• False: The question applies only to the current class.</li> </ul> <p>Global questions are asked once per plug-in on the Additional Information prompt page. For example, a plug-in could be defined to gather employee information. The plug-in might contain many application classes that gather specific information (for example, one application class for getting employee paycheck information, and one application class for getting employee addresses). Class level questions are asked only for the current application class. For example, for the paycheck information, you might want to prompt for specific pay periods and for the address information, you might want to prompt for an effective date.</p>

## Returns

A Boolean value: True if the method is successful, False otherwise.

## IsPlugIn

### Description

This required public method is invoked by Diagnostics Framework when you register the plug-in. It verifies that the class is part of a diagnostic plug-in. If it is not present, the system will not register the plug-in.

IsPlugIn should be:

- at the end of the Diagnostic Application Class.
- an empty method.

### Example

```
method IsPlugIn
end-method
```

## SetProperty

### Syntax

```
SetProperty(&obj,propName,propFormat,  
&propValue)
```

## Description

The SetProperty method sets a property of an instantiated PTDiagnostics object to the value that you specify.

## Parameters

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>&amp;obj</i>	Specify the PTDiagnostics object for which you want to set a property. Typically, you'll specify %This.
<i>propName</i>	Specify as a string the name of the property that you want to set. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hasRowset</li> <li>• Purpose</li> <li>• Where</li> </ul>
<i>propFormat</i>	Specify as a string the data type of the property that you want to set. For hasRowset and Where, specify Boolean. For Purpose, specify string.
<i>&amp;propValue</i>	Provide the property value, in a variable that has the data type specified by the <i>propFormat</i> parameter.

## Returns

A Boolean value: True if the property specified by *propName* exists and can be set in the base class, False if the property can't be set (for example, if the current plug-in is used in a previous release of Diagnostics Framework where that property isn't defined).

---

## PTDiagnostics Class Properties

This section lists the properties for the PTDiagnostics PeopleCode class. The properties are listed in alphabetical order.

### hasRowset

#### Description

Use the hasRowset property to indicate whether the InsertData method passes output data to Diagnostics Framework as a rowset. This property only needs to be defined for classes that use rowsets. This property takes a Boolean value:

- True: InsertData will pass data in rowset format.

- False: InsertData will pass data in string, number, date, or Boolean format. This is the default value.

---

**Note.** You must use the SetProperty method to set the value of this property.

---

### See Also

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," InsertData, page 209](#)

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," SetProperty, page 211](#)

## Purpose

### Description

Use the Purpose property to specify as a string the text that introduces and describes the purpose of the diagnostic that this application class performs. This text will be displayed as part of the diagnostic output.

The default value of this property is **Unknown**.

---

**Note.** You must use the SetProperty method to set the value of this property.

---

### See Also

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," SetProperty, page 211](#)

## Where

### Description

Use the Where property to indicate whether this application class should dynamically prompt the user for relevant parameters. This property only needs to be defined for classes that prompt the user.

This property takes a Boolean value:

- True: The application class should dynamically prompt the user.
- False: The application class should not dynamically prompt the user. This is the default value.

---

**Note.** You must use the SetProperty method to set the value of this property, and you must set it from within the constructor method. If you set this property to True, you must define the GetDynamicPrompt method in your application class to prompt the user.

---

**See Also**

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," SetProperty, page 211](#)

[Chapter 7, "Developing Diagnostic Plug-Ins," GetDynamicPrompt, page 208](#)

---

## Diagnostic Plug-In Examples

The following are examples of typical actions found in diagnostic plug-ins. Examples include:

- Rowset-Based Output.
- String-based output.
- Number-based output.
- Prompting for global information input.
- Prompting for global and class-level information input.
- Joining two records.
- Handling constructor failure.
- Handling InsertData method failure.
- Handling dynamic prompting failure.

### Example: Rowset-Based Output

The following example demonstrates how to retrieve record output and display it. In this case, the plug-in retrieves the list of languages from the database.



```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class GetLanguages extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */

  method GetLanguages();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method GetLanguages;
  Local boolean &status;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "hasRowset", "Boolean", True);
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
    "This is a diagnostic to determine all of the languages
    installed in your PeopleSoft Database.");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &stat;
  Local number &rcl;
  Local Rowset &rsl;
  Local string &sError;

  &rsl = CreateRowset(Record.PSLANGUAGES);
  &rcl = &rsl.Fill();
  &stat = %Super.InsertData("Rowset", "LANGUAGES description,
    not used in output", &rsl);

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: String-Based Output

This example demonstrates how to retrieve string-based output and display it. In this case, the plug-in retrieves the license code.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class GetLicenseCode extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */

  method GetLicenseCode();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method GetLicenseCode;
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
    "This is a diagnostic to determine your license code");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local string &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup;
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;

  SQLExec("SELECT LICENSE_CODE, LICENSE_GROUP FROM PSOPTIONS",
    &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup);
  &status = %Super.InsertData("String",
    "Your License Code is: ", Upper(&sLicenseCode));

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: Number-Based Output

This example demonstrates how to retrieve a Number type output and display it. In this case, we retrieve the number of rows from the PSRECDEFN based on different conditions.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class GetPSRECDEFNCount extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */

  method GetPSRECDEFNCount();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method GetPSRECDEFNCount;
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
    "This is a diagnostic to count the number of records, views,
    derived work records, and sub-records in your PeopleSoft Database.");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &status;
  Local number &rcl;
  Local Rowset &rsl;
  Local string &sError;

  &rsl = CreateRowset(Record.PSRECDEFN);
  &rcl = &rsl.Fill("where RECTYPE = 0");
  &status = %Super.InsertData("Number",
    "Number of Records: ", &rsl.RowCount);

  &rsl = CreateRowset(Record.PSRECDEFN);
  &rcl = &rsl.Fill("where RECTYPE = 1");
  &status = %Super.InsertData("Number",
    "Number of Views: ", &rsl.RowCount);

  &rsl = CreateRowset(Record.PSRECDEFN);
  &rcl = &rsl.Fill("where RECTYPE = 2");
  &status = %Super.InsertData("Number",
    "Number of Derived/Work Records: ", &rsl.RowCount);

  &rsl = CreateRowset(Record.PSRECDEFN);
  &rcl = &rsl.Fill("where RECTYPE = 3");
  &status = %Super.InsertData("Number",
    "Number of sub-records: ", &rsl.RowCount);

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: Prompting for Global Information Input

This example demonstrates how to use global prompting. This example includes the use of these constructs:

- `GetDynamicPrompt ()`: This function prompts for the input.

- `InsertQuestion ()`: Inserts a question.
- `GetUserInputByKey ()`: Gathers the input.

In this example, the plug-in retrieves the number of rows from the `PSRECDEFN` based on different records. The search record is usually retrieved from the user during runtime.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class GetRecFieldsBeginningWith extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */
  method GetRecFieldsBeginningWith();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method GetDynamicPrompt();
  method IsPlugIn();
private

end-class;

method GetRecFieldsBeginningWith;
  Local boolean &status;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Where", "Boolean", True);
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
"This is a diagnostic to print out a listing of fields from records
in your PeopleSoft database that matches search criteria.
This diagnostic tests globalType and classType prompting.
The global prompt is retrieved from inputs defined by
a different class in this plug-in.");
end-method;

method GetDynamicPrompt
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;

  /* define prompt for this class */
  &status = %Super.InsertQuestion("Flds", "Enter FieldNames to retrieve,
beginning with:", "String", False);
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sValRecs, &sValFlds, &sError;
  Local number &iCount = 0;
  Local Record &REC;
  Local boolean &bReturn;
  Local SQL &SQL1;

  &REC = CreateRecord(Record.PSRECFIELD);
  &SQL1 = CreateSQL("%SelectAll(:1)
where RECNAME LIKE :2 and FIELDNAME LIKE :3");

  /* get global prompt */
  &status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("Recs", &sValRecs);
  /* get class prompt */
  &status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("Flds", &sValFlds);
  &SQL1.Execute(&REC, Upper(&sValRecs | "%"), Upper(&sValFlds | "%"));
  While &SQL1.Fetch(&REC)
    &iCount = &iCount + 1;
    &status = %Super.InsertData("String",
"Record: " | &REC.RECNAME.Value | " has the following field
that matches your criteria: ", &REC.FIELDNAME.Value);
  End-While;

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## **Example: Prompting for Global and Class-Level Information Input**

The following example demonstrates the use of global and class-level prompts.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class GetRecFieldsBeginningWith extends PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */
  method GetRecFieldsBeginningWith();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method GetDynamicPrompt();
  method IsPlugIn();
private

end-class;

method GetRecFieldsBeginningWith;
  Local boolean &status;
  %Super = create PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Where", "Boolean", True);
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String", "This is a diagnostic
to print out a listing of fields from records in your PeopleSoft database that
matches search criteria. This diagnostic tests globalType and classType
prompting. The global prompt is retrieved from inputs defined by a different
class in this plug-in.");
end-method;

method GetDynamicPrompt
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;

  /* define the global prompt*/
  &status = %Super.InsertQuestion("Recs", "Enter RecordNames to retrieve,
beginning with:", "String", True);

  /* define prompt for this class */
  &status = %Super.InsertQuestion("Flds", "Enter FieldNames to retrieve,
beginning with:", "String", False);
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sValRecs, &sValFlds, &sError;
  Local number &iCount = 0;
  Local Record &REC;
  Local boolean &bReturn;
  Local SQL &SQL1;

  &REC = CreateRecord(Record.PSRECFIELD);
  &SQL1 = CreateSQL("%SelectAll(:1) where RECNAME LIKE :2 and FIELDNAME LIKE :3");

  /* get global prompt */
  &status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("Recs", &sValRecs);
  /* get class prompt */
  &status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("Flds", &sValFlds);
  &SQL1.Execute(&REC, Upper(&sValRecs | "%"), Upper(&sValFlds | "%"));
  While &SQL1.Fetch(&REC)
    &iCount = &iCount + 1;
    &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "Record: " | &REC.RECNAME.Value | "
has the following field that matches your criteria: ", &REC.FIELDNAME.Value);
  End-While;

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

If you only need to define the class level prompt, use only the second `InsertQuestion()` method in the `GetDynamicPrompt()` method and one `GetUserInputByKey()`.

If the message is not required during the dynamic input, then pass an empty string in the second parameter of the `InsertQuestion()` method.

## Example: Joining Two Records

This example demonstrates the join between two records. This join can be done by creating a view also.

In this example, the plug-in retrieves the objects from the `PSLOCK` and `PSVERSION` tables where versions of the objects don't match.



```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class MatchVersions extends PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */
  method MatchVersions();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method MatchVersions;
  Local boolean &status = False;
  %Super = create PT_DIAGNOSTICS:PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String", "This is to retrieve
the objects whose versions doesnot match in PSLOCK and PSVERSIONS.");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &status;
  Local Rowset &rs1;
  Local Rowset &rs2;
  Local integer &i, &j;
  Local Row &rol;

  &rs1 = CreateRowset(Record.PSVERSION);
  &rs1.Fill();

  &rs2 = CreateRowset(Record.PSLOCK);
  &rs2.Fill();

  For &i = 1 To &rs1.RowCount
    For &j = 1 To &rs2.RowCount
      If (&rs1.GetRow(&i).GetRecord(Record.PSVERSION).OBJECTTYPENAME.Value =
&rs2.GetRow(&j).GetRecord(Record.PSLOCK).OBJECTTYPENAME.Value) And
        (&rs1.GetRow(&i).GetRecord(Record.PSVERSION).VERSION.Value <>
&rs2.GetRow(&j).GetRecord(Record.PSLOCK).VERSION.Value) Then
        &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "OBJECTTYPENAME: ", &rs1.GetRow
(&i).GetRecord(Record.PSVERSION).OBJECTTYPENAME.Value | " PSVERSION.VERSION: "
| &rs1.GetRow(&i).GetRecord(Record.PSVERSION).VERSION.Value | " PSLOCK.VERSION: "
| &rs2.GetRow(&j).GetRecord(Record.PSLOCK).VERSION.Value);
        End-If;
      End-For;
    End-For;
  End-For;

end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: Handling Constructor Failure

The following example demonstrates error handling when the constructor fails.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class TestFailedConstructor extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */

  method TestFailedConstructor();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private
  instance boolean &constructorFailed;
end-class;

method TestFailedConstructor
  Local boolean &status;
  Local string &sError;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();

  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
    "This is a diagnostic to show how developers can trap a failure
    in the constructor and print out results to the web page.");

  /* introduce unknown propName of Where1 rather than Where */
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Where1", "Boolean", True);

  If Not &status Then
    %This.constructorFailed = True;
  Else
    %This.constructorFailed = False;
  End-If;

end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local string &sError, &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup;
  Local boolean &status;

  If %This.constructorFailed Then
    &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "Status Failed!",
    "This message will be printed out in the HTML page if something
    fails in the constructor. This is expected behaviour.");
  Else
    SQLExec("SELECT LICENSE_CODE, LICENSE_GROUP FROM PSOPTIONS",
    &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup);

    &status = %Super.InsertData("String",
    "Your License Code is: ", Upper(&sLicenseCode));

  End-If;
end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: Handling InsertData Method Failure

The following example demonstrates error handling when InsertData fails.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class TestFailedGetDiagnosticInfo extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */

  method TestFailedGetDiagnosticInfo();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method TestFailedGetDiagnosticInfo;
  Local boolean &status;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
  "This is a diagnostic to show how developers can trap a failure in
  GetDiagnosticInfo method and print out results to the web page.");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local string &SError, &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup;
  Local boolean &status;

  SQLExec("SELECT LICENSE_CODE, LICENSE_GROUP FROM PSOPTIONS",
  &sLicenseCode, &sLicenseGroup);
  /* introduce unknown propFormat of String1 */
  &status = %Super.InsertData("String1",
  "Your License Code is: ", Upper(&sLicenseCode));

  If Not &status Then
    &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "Status Failed!",
  "This message will be printed out in the HTML page if
  something fails here. This is expected behaviour.");
  End-If;
end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Example: Handling Dynamic Prompting Failure

The following example demonstrates error handling when retrieving user prompts.

```

import PT_DIAGNOSTICS:*;

class TestFailedGetUserInputByKey extends PTDiagnostics
  /* Constructor */
  method TestFailedGetUserInputByKey();

  /* Public Method */
  method GetDiagnosticInfo();
  method IsPlugIn();

private

end-class;

method TestFailedGetUserInputByKey;
  Local boolean &status = False;
  %Super = create PTDiagnostics();
  &status = %Super.SetProperty(%This, "Purpose", "String",
    "This is a diagnostic to test getting a 'False' from GetUserInputByKey.");
end-method;

method GetDiagnosticInfo
  Local boolean &status = False;
  Local string &sVal, &sError;
  Local number &iCount = 0;
  Local Record &REC;
  Local SQL &SQL1;

  &REC = CreateRecord(Record.PSRECDEFN);
  &SQL1 = CreateSQL("%SelectAll(:1) where RECNAME LIKE :2");

  /*
  sKeyID "Recs" has already be defined elsewhere in the package
  see if we can get RecJY.  should get a False
  */
  &status = %Super.GetUserInputByKey("RecsJY", &sVal);
  If &status Then
    &SQL1.Execute(&REC, Upper(&sVal | "%"));
    While &SQL1.Fetch(&REC)
      &iCount = &iCount + 1;
      &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "Record #" | &iCount,
        &REC.RECNAME.Value | " (" | &REC.RECDESCR.Value | ")");
    End-While;
  Else
    &status = %Super.InsertData("String", "Status Failed!",
      "Failed status encountered in retrieving RecsJY key.
      This is expected behaviour.");
  End-If
end-method;

method IsPlugIn
end-method;

```

## Appendix A

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Microsoft SQL Server

This appendix discusses:

- Server options.
- Required database configuration.
- Other considerations.

---

## Server Options

This section discusses:

- Delivered configuration.
- Access ID.
- Service Packs and QFE.

## Delivered Configuration

The PeopleSoft server configuration parameters are initially set to Microsoft SQL Server defaults. It's a good practice to review the parameters and modify them to your site requirements if necessary. Use the file *PS\_HOME*\scripts\spconfig.sql on your database server to keep track of your changes. This file is used by the database configuration wizard when installing a PeopleSoft database.

---

**Note.** Don't use "priority boost" when running additional applications like PeopleSoft Process Scheduler on your database server machine.

---

### See Also

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation*

## Access ID

The user ID used as an ACCESSID is not required to be a member of the SQL Server "sysadmin" server role. This restricts the activities of this user ID, which enhances overall application security.

The PeopleSoft ACCESSID is a member of the following fixed database roles:

- db\_datareader
- db\_datawriter
- db\_ddladmin

Additionally, it is necessary to grant ALTER TRACE permissions to the ACCESSID to take full advantage of the tracing capabilities available in PeopleTools.

---

**Note.** Keep in mind that utilizing these roles for the PeopleSoft ACCESSID login, restricts the ability to run administrative tasks not specific to PeopleSoft applications, such as creating backups and restoring them, defining new server logins, modifying server settings, creating and dropping databases, and so on.

---

## Service Packs and Quick Fix Enhancements (QFE)

PeopleSoft always runs certifications on the latest SQL Server service packs as they become available. Service packs contain large number of improvements and have been tested extensively by Microsoft.

A QFE is a fix intended to solve a specific problem that's usually documented in a Microsoft Knowledge Base (KB) article. PeopleSoft doesn't run certification tests for any particular SQL Server QFE, but considers them to be supported when they're recommended by Microsoft to solve specific problems. However, to install a QFE, PeopleSoft recommends appropriate testing before applying it to a production environment. It's important to take into consideration that a QFE is an enhancement targeted to solve a specific problem. "Secondary effects" as a result of its installation can be determined only with proper testing.

PeopleSoft does not distribute SQL Server QFE software; please contact Microsoft to determine if a QFE is required, and for instructions on how to download the software.

---

## Required Database Configuration

PeopleSoft applications require a standard database configuration that's not optional and should not be changed. This section discusses the options that you must enable:

- ANSI nullability.
- Quoted Identifier, Arithabort, and functional index.
- Database collation settings.

## ANSI Nullability

Make sure your database uses ANSI nulls by default. This is a database option that will be set up at installation time. The configuration occurs automatically when using the Database Configuration Wizard and is enabled by the SQL script `addobj.sql` when installed manually.

The following line shows how to enable this parameter using Query Analyzer:

```
EXEC sp_dboption databasename, 'ansi null default', true
```

## Working with Functional Indexes

PeopleSoft uses computed columns that allow the creation of functional indexes. A functional index is an index created to keep uniqueness in a table when the number of keys exceeds the SQL Server limit, which is a maximum of 16 key columns for an index. What makes a functional index special is that it's required only when the number of key columns exceeds the SQL Server limit.

PeopleSoft implements the functional index by creating an index over a computed column. The computed column `MSSCONCATCOL` is the sum of all the key columns required to keep uniqueness.

In order to create indexes on computed columns, SQL Server requires the *Quoted Identifier* option to be enabled in the database. This is the default configuration, but this option could be overridden as a connection option from any client. If you are using Query Analyzer to run SQL scripts, look at Tools, Options, Connection Properties on your Query Analyzer menu and make sure the *Quoted Identifier* option is selected, which will activate it for that particular connection.

Another important option that needs to be enabled to operate computed columns is the database property *Arithabort*. Make sure this option is enabled for your PeopleSoft database.

---

**Note.** Both *Quoted Identifier* and *Arithabort* are explicitly set during installation automatically by the Database Configuration Wizard or when running the script, `createdb_2005.sql`, at the database installation.

---

### See Also

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation*

## Database Collation Settings

The use of the right collation is very important for PeopleSoft applications. PeopleSoft delivers its applications with a standard collation of *Latin1\_General\_Bin* on SQL Server. This collation was selected for being compatible with the binary sort order used on previous versions of SQL Server.

However, PeopleSoft supports other sort orders with some applications. The application installation manual will point out whether this is permitted for a particular application. The sort order supported must be Kana sensitive, case sensitive and accent sensitive. Therefore a collation such as *Latin1\_CS\_AS\_KS* is supported. Note that the *Latin1\_General\_Bin* collation also satisfies this requirement.

Consult your PeopleTools installation guide and the application installation manual for further details on the collation configuration required for your database server.

For environments running English-only databases and languages covered by the Latin1 character set (such as Western European languages), PeopleSoft recommends the collation delivered as default in the PeopleSoft installation scripts. The database collation is set when running the creatdb.sql script at installation time. The script runs automatically when you use the database configuration wizard. It is a requirement to run the script when installing the database manually.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for Microsoft SQL Server, Preparing for Installation*

---

## Microsoft SQL Server Feature Considerations

This section discusses:

- Recovery model.
- Nested triggers.
- Auto create statistics and auto update statistics.
- Automatic file growth.
- Autoshrink.
- Read Committed Snapshot Isolation.
- File management.
- Tempdb.
- Trace flags.
- Database monitoring.

### Recovery Model

PeopleSoft recommends using the Full recovery model on SQL Server databases. All production databases should use this model for better reliability. The PeopleSoft applications do not require any particular recovery model but using the Full recovery model is considered the best practice.

#### **See Also**

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation*

### Nested Triggers

Some PeopleSoft applications take advantage of database triggers. Make sure that the *nested triggers* option is enabled for the database server hosting the PeopleSoft databases. You can use *sp\_dboption* or Enterprise Manager to enable this option on the server.



## Auto Create Statistics and Auto Update Statistics

Microsoft SQL Server enables you to create statistics and update them automatically. It's recommended that you leave this feature enabled for PeopleSoft applications.

However, sometimes you should disable these features for a particular table. For example, if you want to modify the sample size used to create the statistics, you need to do so manually.

Another example is when the data varies considerably, and the statistics that are created are not accurate. For this you might want to disable auto create statistics and auto update statistics manually, and adjust the statistics as needed.

In general, auto create statistics and auto update statistics should be enabled for most of the tables in your database unless you need to disable the feature for specific reasons.

### See Also

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation.*

## Automatic File Growth

Microsoft SQL Server enables you to let a database file grow automatically when it's full. PeopleSoft recommends that you leave this feature enabled, however, it should be used with caution. When the database server is in the process of increasing the size of a data file, all other activities in the server stop, which can cause server performance problems. Ideally, in a well-tuned environment this won't occur — properly sizing the data files eliminates the performance problem.

When installing PeopleSoft applications using the Database Configuration Wizard, you have the option to let the data files grow until there's no more space on the storage devices. When installing the database manually, it's necessary to manually review and modify the file *PS\_HOME*\scripts\createdb\_2005.sql. It includes the following lines that the database administrator should review and update with appropriate values:

```
-- ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME> MODIFY FILE (NAME = <DATANAME>, MAXSIZE = UNLIMITED)
-- go
-- ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME> MODIFY FILE (NAME = <LOGDATANAME>, MAXSIZE = UNLIMITED)
-- go
```

## Autoshrink

For PeopleSoft databases, make sure the *autoshrink* option is disabled. In very specific scenarios it will be necessary to "shrink" a database file. This should be done with caution; in general, it's a better practice to do it manually.

## Read Committed Snapshot Isolation

PeopleSoft applications use a "pessimistic" implementation of the READ COMMITTED isolation level. SQL Server supports optimistic concurrency control with its implementation of the READ COMMITTED isolation level, called READ COMMITTED SNAPSHOT.

Optimistic concurrency control has these benefits:

- The overhead required for managing locks is minimized.
- Data modification operations cannot be blocked by read operations.

### ***Disabling Read Committed Snapshot Isolation***

Under normal circumstances, this feature should always remain enabled. You can disable it if a critical problem is identified.

Before disabling the feature:

- Make sure there are no open transactions. This means that you must close down the application server and the process scheduler.
- If there is a risk that users are still connected with open transactions, then change the database to single user mode before continuing.

The command to disable the feature is:

```
ALTER DATABASE dbname
    SET READ_COMMITTED_SNAPSHOT OFF
```

The command to change the database to single user mode is:

```
ALTER DATABASE dbname
    SET SINGLE_USER ON
```

### **See Also**

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation.*

## **File Management**

PeopleSoft recommends the use of separate physical disks for the Microsoft SQL Server data files. Ideally, databases like master, tempdb, and application databases should be on separate disks, as should the operating system paging file (in case you run some additional applications other than the database software). As a general rule, the more spindles the better; always choose more smaller-size disks over fewer larger-size disks. If you don't have separate physical disks for each of the datafiles, you should at least place your tempdb, data, and log files on separate physical devices. Make sure that your log device is using its own disk controller and is not accessed by any other device.

---

**Note.** You should always consider disk fault tolerance when deciding how you want the database server configured.

---

### ***Using Filegroups***

Microsoft SQL Server maps each database using a set of operating system files. All database objects and data are stored within these files. A database can have one or more data files (*.mdf* and *.ndf* extensions) and transaction log files (*.ldf* extension).

*Filegroups* are logical containers that enable the database files (.mdf, .ndf, and .ldf) to be grouped together for administrative and data placement purposes. While a filegroup can contain more than one database file, each database file can be a member of only one filegroup.

---

**Note.** While the number and placement of data files may have an impact on system performance, the number and organization of filegroups has no direct correlation to performance.

---

Because of the large number of tables and the complex IO patterns of a PeopleSoft database, you must consider the placement of the data files carefully to maximize performance. The best approach is to use a RAID-10 disk configuration and spread the data over as many disks as possible. Use a large number of smaller sized disks, rather than a small number of larger disks.

In addition to the main database, give careful consideration to the configuration and placement of the SQL Server Tempdb database, because PeopleSoft applications use it heavily. Given the unusual input/output characteristics of this database (on average, 50% read, 50% write), you should create your Tempdb database on a separate RAID-10 disk with multiple database files. Generally, it's appropriate to make the number of data files equal to the number of processors used.

### **See Also**

*Microsoft SQL Server documentation*

*Microsoft Windows documentation*

## **Tempdb**

PeopleSoft heavily uses the tempdb database. Consider moving tempdb to its own set of disks or disk array. The size of tempdb should be adjusted to be approximately 15% to 20% of the total size of your PeopleSoft database.

Another good practice is to distribute tempdb into several data files of the same size. As a guideline, you might want to have one file for each processor assigned for SQL Server. If possible, spread these data files on a high performance disk array.

### **Moving Tempdb**

During installation of Microsoft SQL Server, tempdb is put in the default data directory. If you wish to move it to a separate disk and resize it, the following scripts are an example of how this can be accomplished:

```
-- To find out where tempdb resides:
-- The following stored procedure will show on which drive tempdb
-- data and log files reside.
sp_helpdb tempdb

-- This example script moves tempdb to drive f:
alter database tempdb
modify file ( name = 'tempdev' , filename = 'f:\data\tempdb.mdf' )
go
alter database tempdb
modify file ( name = 'templog' , filename = 'f:\log\tempdblog.ldf' )
go

-- This example script resizes the tempdb data file to 500MB
-- and the tempdb log file to 500MB
alter database tempdb
modify file ( name = 'tempdev' , size = 500MB )
go
alter database tempdb
modify file ( name = 'templog' , size = 500MB )
go
```

## Trace Flags

When reporting problems to PeopleSoft support, it is advisable to generate files with traces of the problem that you want to report. Use the trace flags incorporated in PeopleSoft tools to generate these files. The trace flags are accessible through the configuration files for the Process Scheduler and the application server and through the selection of several flags when using the PeopleSoft Configuration Manager on your developer workstation.

Use "TRACESQL=63" to display the SQL statements executed when using PeopleSoft applications. This trace flag is very useful to identify problems in the SQL being executed against a database that hosts a PeopleSoft application.

The trace flag will show the details about the execution of a SQL statement, including:

- if the statement was recompiled.
- if the statement was using an old query plan.
- the time it took to execute.
- the time between executions.
- if the SQL was parametrized.

Once you find the SQL with problems, you can use the SQL Server profiler to reproduce this outside of your PeopleSoft application.

---

**Note.** Keep in mind that tracing could affect performance considerably, and you won't be able to reproduce some problems with tracing enabled.

---

## See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Setting Application Server Domain Parameters"

*Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*, "Using the PSADMIN Utility"

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager"

## Database Monitoring

Available through the configuration files for the Process Scheduler and the Application Server, the activation of the EnableDBMonitoring option allows you to populate context information of the query executed against the database. This is particularly useful to gather information about the PeopleSoft user running a particular SQL statement.

### Examples of SQL Statements

The following are examples of SQL statements that will display the context information of a user once EnableDBMonitoring is selected. Modify the scripts according to your needs.

```
--SQL to get OPRID only
select
(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128)))))
from master..sysprocesses where spid=<spid>

--SQL to select the network id if it is there
select substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2,
PATINDEX('%%',substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2,128))-1)
from master..sysprocesses where spid=<spid>

--SQL to select network host
select
substring(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2
+PATINDEX('%%',substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2,128))
,128),0,PATINDEX('%%',substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2
+PATINDEX('%%',substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),
  len(substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
PATINDEX('%%',cast(context_info as varchar(128))))) +2,128))
,128))) from master..sysprocesses where spid=<spid>

--SQL to select App server domain
select reverse(substring(reverse(cast(context_info as varchar(128))),0,
PATINDEX('%%',reverse(cast(context_info as varchar(128)))))
from master..sysprocesses where spid=<spid>
```

```
--SQL to select all the information trimming blanks
select
substring(cast(context_info as varchar(128)),0,
128-PATINDEX('%%',reverse(cast(context_info as varchar(128)))+10)
from master..sysprocesses where spid=<spid>
```

## Appendix B

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for z/OS

This appendix provides an overview of administration on DB2 UDB for z/OS, and discusses how to:

- Monitor batch programs.
- Associate PeopleSoft operators with DB2 UDB threads.
- Run COBOL.
- Administer SQR for z/OS.
- Update statistics.
- Set the number of temporary tables.
- Create temporary tables.
- Work with Alters on DB2 z/OS.

---

**Note.** *DB2 UDB for z/OS* is the official IBM name for the DBMS.

For the sake of brevity, this appendix sometimes refers to DB2 UDB for z/OS as *DB2 z/OS*.

---

---

## Understanding DB2 UDB for z/OS Administration

This section discusses:

- Database considerations.
- Concurrency.

### Database Considerations

The section discusses:

- Tablespace strategy
- Locksize tablespace

## Tablespace Strategy

Tablespaces named xxLARGE—where xx is a product identifier, such as HR—contain tables that grow substantially and/or experience high update activity. You should track the growth and extents for tablespaces and indexes, as well as monitor for page splits in the indexes.

Each of the tables in xxLARGE is a candidate for partitioning or for a separate tablespace. Tables defined in tablespaces other than xxLARGE are relatively stable and can be defined in shared tablespaces with little, if any, freespace.

As a general rule of thumb, the xxLARGE tablespaces grow substantially large with application data and contain the largest tables in your database. From a PeopleTools perspective, there are several delivered tablespaces that may grow in size. For example, tablespace PTTLRG contains PeopleTools tables (XLATTABLE, PSPCMNAME, and others) that may grow large in size. The "Tree" tables are delivered in tablespace PTTREE—tables prefixed with PSTREE%. These tables may grow substantially early on as you add branches and nodes in the Tree Manager, then plateau once the tree structure is fully defined.

Customers with large amounts of data may require that the larger tables be partitioned, and as a result must be moved to their own tablespace. This improves concurrency and also allow DB2 UDB utilities such as backup, reorg, and Runstats to be run in parallel.

With PeopleSoft 8, new tablespaces were introduced for tables requiring row level locking to avoid deadlock and timeout errors. Those tablespaces are: PTLOCK, PTAMSG, PTPRC, PTRPTS, PTAUDIT, , PTPRJWK PTCMSTAR and PSIMGR. Note that PSIMGR and PSIMAGE both require a 32K page size. If redistributing any of the tables delivered in these tablespaces, it is critical for performance to carry over the row level locking attribute and buffer pool assignment for the new tablespace.

## Locksize Tablespace

You can avoid reaching lock escalation thresholds by ALTERing tablespaces from LOCKSIZE ANY (or PAGE) to LOCKSIZE TABLESPACE for the duration of batch jobs. This technique also improves batch program performance.

The ALTERed LOCKSIZE specification is effective immediately. Plan rebinds are not needed since PeopleSoft uses dynamic SQL. The simplest way to implement this technique is to ALTER all of the application tablespaces. If that is not desirable, determine the tables accessed in a particular job by examining SQL statements in PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL and finding their corresponding tablespaces.

---

**Note.** Tablespaces should be ALTERed back to the original value after job completion. Tablespace locks will lock out online users until LOCKSIZE is reset to PAGE or ANY. If online users are active during the time you are running batch jobs, you may not want to ALTER LOCKSIZE to TABLESPACE.

---

## Concurrency

This section discusses:

- CursorHold
- Isolation levels and CURRENTDATA
- RELCURHL



### ***CursorHold***

For PeopleTools, the use of Cursor With Hold (persistent cursors) with PeopleSoft applications is controlled entirely by PeopleTools. Consequently, there is no reason to use anything other than the IBM default for CURSORHOLD.

### ***Isolation Levels and CURRENTDATA***

PeopleSoft batch processes interface to DB2 UDB either through PTPSQLRT (for Cobol and AE), or through SQRPLAN for SQRs. Both of these are bound with the defaults—that is, CS (cursor stability) and CURRENTDATA NO. Using CURRENTDATA NO results in less lock contention in DB2 UDB and potentially reduce deadlock situations. It also provides two extra benefits:

- Block fetch is enabled for ambiguous cursors.
- DB2 UDB considers parallelism for ambiguous cursors.

### ***RELCURHL***

A DB2 z/OS subsystem parameter RELCURHL lets you indicate that you want DB2 UDB to release a data page or row lock after a COMMIT is issued for cursors defined WITH HOLD. This lock is not necessary for maintaining cursor position.

The default for DB2 z/OS is YES. In prior releases, the value was NO, which causes DB2 UDB to hold a data page or row lock for the row on which the cursor is positioned. This lock is not necessary for maintaining cursor position and could cause deadlocks. The PeopleSoft recommendation is Yes to improve concurrency.

---

## **Monitoring Batch Programs**

This section provides an overview of batch program monitoring tools and discusses how to:

- Enable DB2 CLI/ODBC trace.
- Enable the PTPSQLRT Mainframe Statistics report.
- Enable dynamic explains.
- Enable parallelism.
- Enable PeopleSoft SQL trace.
- Enable SQR monitoring.

## **Understanding Batch Program Monitoring Tools**

This section discusses the utilities provided by PeopleSoft and IBM to monitor and help you tune the performance of PeopleSoft batch programs.

<b>Utility</b>	<b>Description</b>
SQL Trace - Client	This PeopleSoft client utility records the actual SQL statements that PeopleTools and batch COBOL send to the database, along with their relative processing times. This trace can increase response time significantly.
DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace	The DB2 CLI/ODBC trace is a trace provided by IBM that can be very helpful in debugging DB2 Connect problems. For PeopleSoft, this trace can be very useful for tracking down problems when running client COBOL or AE. It can also be used for debugging the PeopleSoft on-line as well. Like many of these other traces, enabling this trace slows processing down and results in large output files on the client.
PTPSQLRT Statistics Report	<p>The PeopleSoft COBOL API, PTPSQLRT, provides a report called "PTPSQLRT Statistics" that shows frequency and elapsed times for SQL statements executed in batch processing. This report provides you with an effective and easy-to-use tool to monitor and evaluate SQL performance.</p> <p>No DBA involvement is required, and impact on batch performance is negligible. This report can track both client or mainframe COBOL. For client COBOL, you enable this report by selecting a SQL Trace option. On the mainframe, you modify the JCL to set the trace option to Y.</p>
Dynamic Explains	The PTPSQLRT API program allows you to capture access path information of the SQL statements executed during batch processing. This information can help you tune any problem queries identified by the Timings Statistics Report.
Parallelism	The PTPSQLRT API program allows you to capture access path information of the SQL statements executed during batch processing. This information can help you tune any problem queries identified by the Timings Statistics Report.
Parallelism	You can specify the degree of parallelism for the execution of queries that are dynamically prepared by the application process.
SQL Trace - Server	You can run a PeopleSoft SQL trace on the z/OS server that displays similar results as the SQL Trace on the client. You can see SQL times, return codes and SQL that is executed.
SQR flag	You can use the -S flag to generate a SQL script consisting of fully resolved DB2 z/OS statements. This trace doesn't provide timings for the SQL statements.

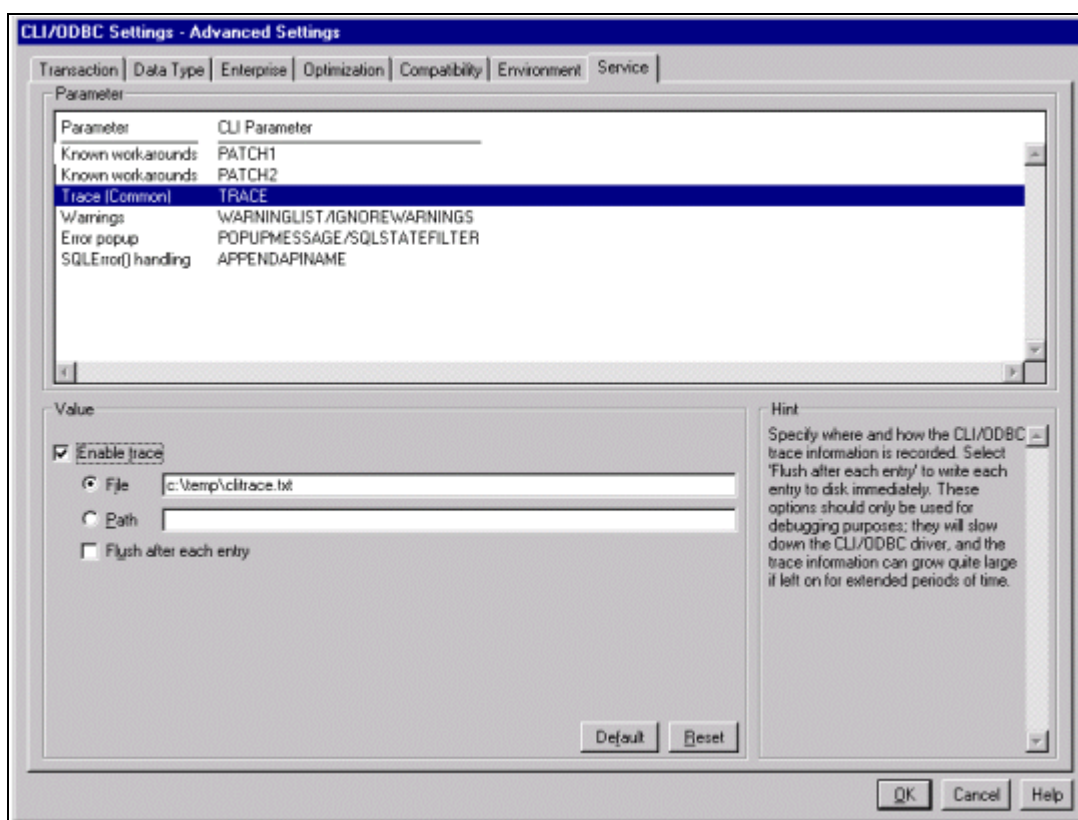
## Enabling DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace

The DB2 CLI/ODBC trace can be enabled directly in the DB2CLI.INI directly or using the Client Configuration Assistant.

When updating the DB2CLI.INI directly, these are the recommended settings for enabling Trace:

```
[COMMON]
TRACEFLUSH=1
TRACEPATHNAME=C:\TEMP\DB2TRACE\
  (or use TRACEFILENAME=C:\TEMP\filename to direct to file)
TRACECOMM=1
TRACE=1      (trace=0 turns the trace OFF)
TRACEREFRESHINTERVAL=60
```

Or you can enable the trace, with the same options, using the Service tab in Client Configuration Assistant.



DB2 UDB Client Configuration Assistant

## Enabling the PTPSQLRT Mainframe Statistics Report

Control over enabling and disabling Statistics Reports on the z/OS batch server is now done primarily through the PSOS390 Process Scheduler configuration. The JCL shell SHELCBL.JCT file located in the /u/datax/psvvv/appserv/prcs/process\_scheduler\_name/shelljcl directory on USS contains symbolic variables for each parameter that is resolved by Process Scheduler when a COBOL job is submitted. As an option, you can replace the symbolic with the "hard coded" value of *Y* to enable or *N* to disable the particular parameter. The section in the JCL shell appears as follows:

```

/** PARMFILE - PARM 1 IS OPRID - LEAVE AS SYMBOLIC
/**          PARM 2 IS RUN CONTROL NAME
/**          PARM 3 IS A YES/NO SWITCH FOR PERFORMANCE STATISTIC
/**          PARM 4 IS PROCESS INSTANCE; 0 TRIGGERS PROC INST LOGIC
/**          BLANK IF NON-PROCESS SCHEDULER JOB
/**          PARM 5 IS A YES/NO SWITCH FOR DYNAMIC EXPLAINS
/**          PARM 5 REQUIRES THAT PARM 3 IS SET TO YES
/**          PARM 6 IS A YES/NO SWITCH TO ENABLE PARALLEL PROCESSING
/**          PARM 7 IS A YES/NO SWITCH TO ENABLE SQL TRACE
/**          PARM 8 IS A YES/NO SWITCH TO ENABLE RUN STATISTICS
/**          PARM 9 IS A REMOTE-CAL INDICATOR - ALWAYS "BATCH" IN JCL
/**          PARM 10 IS THE FULL DIRECTORY PATH OF PS_HOME
/**          PARM 11 IS THE FULL DIRECTORY PATH OF PS_SERVDIR
/**          PARM 12 IS THE FULL PATH OF THE PROCESS SCHEDULER
/**          CONFIGURATION FILE
/**          PARM 13 IS THE USERID WITH FULL AUTHORIZATION IN USS
/**          OF ALL HFS DIRECTORY WHERE AE WILL WRITE THE LOGS TO
/**          PARM 14 IS THE JCL JOB NAME
/**          PARM 15 IS THE REGION SIZE SETTING (DEFAULT IS -1)
/**          PARM 16 IS THE MAX CPU TIME ALOTTED FOR AN AE SUBROUTINE
/**
/** *****
/** NOTE ON ENABLE RUN STATISTICS: IF YOU HAVE CHANGED THE
/** SETTINGS TO RUN STATISTICS ON TABLESPACES, YOU MUST BIND
/** THE PLAN FOR PTPSQLRT USING BINDAREP AND BINDEREP IN THE
/** JCLLIB LIBRARY WITH THE BIND OPTION: PKLIST (DSNUTILS.*)
/** INCLUDED IN THE OPTIONS LIST
/**
/** PARAMETERS 10-16 ARE REQUIRED WHEN RUNNING A COBOL
/** PROGRAM THAT TRIGGERS AN AE SUBROUTINE
/** *****
/**
/**PARMFILE DD *
%OPRID%
%RUNID%
%PERFSTAT%
%INSTANCE%
%DYNEXPLN%
%PARALLEL%
%SQLTRACE%
%RUNSTAT%
BATCH
%PS_HOME%
%PS_SERVDIR%
%PS_SERVERCFG%
%PS_CONFIG%
%HFS_USERID%
%JOBNAME%
%REGION_SIZE%
%CPU_TIME%
/*

```

### Viewing the PTPSQLRT Report

Timings represent elapsed (wall clock) times expressed in seconds. For example, the value 2.383 means 2 seconds, 383 milliseconds. Where a value for COUNT exists, and TIME = .000, indicates an elapsed time of less than 1 millisecond. Because the results of this report are in elapsed time, care should be taken in interpreting the results. If you are using the report to identify poorly performing SQL, then multiple executions should be analyzed and the results compared before drawing any conclusions. Further analysis requires Explains and CPU timings of possible problem statements.

- **STATEMENT NAME**

The name associated with a single SQL statement to be executed dynamically by program PTPSQLRT. It can be either a Select, Update, Insert or Delete statement as indicated by the "S," "U," "I," or "D" designation in the statement name. Each statement may be executed once, or many times during a PeopleSoft batch program.

A statement name is made up of the program name and the type of SQL DML. For example, "PSPAGERT\_S\_AGERT" is in program PSPAGERT and is a SELECT; AGERT is a unique name within the application.

To examine a statement's contents, you may either:

- Select \* From *your\_id*.PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL Where PGM\_NAME='PSPAGERT', STMT\_TYPE='S' and STMT\_NAME='AGERT'
- On a LAN, locate the \PS\SRC\CBL\BASE subdirectory; statements are contained in files having the "DMS" extension and a filename of program name.

- **RETRIEVE**

Reports the number of times and total time it takes for PTPSQLRT to select SQL statement text from PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL. Retrieve count of zero indicate a Dynamic Statement that is not stored in PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL.

- **PREPARE**

Reports the number of times and total time it takes PTPSQLRT to do "DECLARE CURSOR" and prepare the SQL statement.

- **CLOSE**

Reports the number of times and total time to CLOSE an open cursor. Applies to Cursor SELECT statements only

- **FETCH**

Reports the number of FETCHes as well as the total time spent

For example, if Count=2 and Time=.040, it means that the program issued 2 fetch statements totaling .040 seconds (40/1000), or an average of .020 per fetch. If EXECUTION Count = 1, it means 2 FETCHes were done in a single OPEN Cursor. (This is true for columns 2 through 6.)

- **STMT TOTALS**

Shows sum of all timings for each statement, calculated by adding all TIME accumulations horizontally. Also shown under "% SQL" is the percentage of the total processing time that a particular SQL statement represents. For example, a "% SQL" time of 1.03 indicates a statement used just over 1% of all SQL processing time.

- **TOTAL IN SQL CALLS**

Total time spent by PTPSQLRT making SQL calls (sum of all SQL activity).

- **TOTAL IN SQLRT STATS**

Total time spent by PTPSQLRT producing statistics (Assembler calls, COBOL processing).

- **TOTAL IN SQLRT OTHER**

Total time spent by application programs (as in PSPTCALC.CBL) processing COBOL statements.

- **TOTAL IN SQLRT**

Total in SQL Calls + Total in SQLRT stats + Total in SQLRT other. Total time spent by PTPSQLRT (SQL, STATS, COBOL).

- **TOTAL IN APPL COBOL**

Total time processing COBOL programs.

- **TOTAL IN APPL**

Total in SQLRT + Total in APPL COBOL. Grand total processing of all COBOL, PTPSQLRT, and SQL processing.

- **TOTAL SQLRT CALLS**

Total number of calls made to PTPSQLRT called by COBOL programs.

- **TOTAL SQLRT STATEMENTS**

Total number of distinct SQL statements executed.

- **MAXIMUM CURSORS CONNECTED**

Largest number of active concurrent connection paths to DB2 UDB during program execution; "cursor" refers not only to open cursors, but deletes, inserts and updates as well.

There are three ways to enable the statistics report generation. The following steps take you through the three possibilities.

### ***Enabling the Statistics Report on the DB2 UDB for z/OS Server***

To enable the statistics report on the DB2 UDB for z/OS server:

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. You may either select Option 3 - Configure a Process Scheduler Server, or Option 6 - Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select Option 3, you would set the value for TraceSQL to 128.
4. If you select Option 6, you need to locate the related section in the file and change the TraceSQL flag to 128.
5. As a third option, you could chose Option 9 - Edit a Shell JCL from the PSADMIN menu and select JCL Shell shelcbl.jct (selection 1)

This brings the file up in the VI editor.

6. Locate the PARMFILE section in the JCL Shell, and replace the symbolic %PERFSTAT% (Performance Statistic-PARM 3) parameter with the value Y for Yes.

7. Save the file and stop and restart the Process Scheduler.

The Statistics Report is written to a Sequential Dataset `HLQ.ppvvv.program_name`.

## Enabling Dynamic Explains

The PTPSQLRT API program enables you to capture access path information of the SQL statements executed during batch processing. This information can help you tune any problem queries identified by the Timings Statistics Report.

---

**Note.** The Dynamic Explains feature is a performance tool for DBAs and other PeopleSoft product support personnel to be used for performance tuning. We recommend that this feature be disabled when in production mode.

---

There are three ways to enable generating a dynamic explain. The following steps take you through the three possibilities.

To enable Dynamic Explains in the JCL:

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. You may either select Option 3 - Configure a Process Scheduler Server, or Option 6 - Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select Option 3, you need to set the value for TraceSQL to 256.
4. If you select Option 6, you need to locate the related section in the file and change the TraceSQL flag to 256.
5. As a third option, you could chose Option 9 - Edit a Shell JCL from the PSADMIN menu and select JCL Shell shelcbl.jct (selection 1)

This brings the file up in the VI editor.

6. Locate the related section in the JCL Shell, and replace both the symbolic %PERFSTAT% (Performance Statistic-PARM 3) and %DYNEXPLN% (Dynamic Explains-PARM 5) parameters with the value Y.
7. Save the file. It is not necessary to stop and re-start the Process Scheduler for the change in the JCL shell to take effect.

## Enabling Parallelism

The PTPSQLRT API program provides a feature that allows you to enable DB2 UDB parallelism. If enabled, PTPSQLRT issues the following command to DB2 UDB:

```
SET CURRENT DEGREE = 'ANY'
```

The CURRENT DEGREE parameter specifies the degree of parallelism for the execution of queries that are dynamically prepared by the application process. For PeopleSoft, this applies to all queries run in batch. While setting CURRENT DEGREE =ANY enables DB2 UDB parallelism, this does not necessarily mean that the statements in the application programs uses parallelism. What it means is that DB2 UDB's optimizer considers parallelism as a possible option.

There are also three ways to enable parallel processing. The following steps takes you through the three possibilities.

To enable parallelism in the JCL

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. You may either select Option 3 - Configure a Process Scheduler Server, or Option 6 - Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select Option 3, you need to set the value for Enable Parallel Processing to 1.
4. If you select Option 6, you need to locate the related section in the file and change the Enable Parallel Processing flag to 1.
5. As a third option, you could chose Option 9 - Edit a Shell JCL from the PSADMIN menu and select JCL Shell shelcbl.jct (selection 1).

This brings the file up in the VI editor.

6. Locate the section in the JCL Shell, and replace the symbolic %PARALLEL% (Parallel Processing-PARM 6) parameter with the value Y.
7. Save the file. It is not necessary to stop and re-start the Process Scheduler for this change to be recognized.

## Enabling PeopleSoft SQL Trace

The PTPSQLRT API program enables you to capture a PeopleSoft SQL trace. This trace has been improved in PeopleSoft 8 to mirror the familiar SQL trace used on the client. The functionality of this trace has been improved to include all dynamic SQL statements that have been captured in the past by the DYSQLOG trace.

---

**Note.** The SQL Trace feature is a tool for DBAs and other PeopleSoft product support personnel to use for performance tuning. We recommend that this feature be disabled in production mode.

---

There are three ways to enable the SQL Trace. The following steps take you through the three possibilities.

To enable PeopleSoft SQL trace in the JC:

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. You may either select Option 3 - Configure a Process Scheduler Server, or Option 6 - Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select Option 3, you need to set the value for TraceSQL to 1.
4. If you select Option 6, you need to locate the related section in the file and change the TraceSQL flag to 1.
5. As a third option, you could chose Option 9 - Edit a Shell JCL from the PSADMIN menu and select JCL Shell shelcbl.jct (selection 1).

This brings the file up in the VI editor.



6. Locate the section in the JCL Shell, and replace the symbolic %SQLTRACE% parameter with the value Y.
7. Save the file. If you originally configure the Process Scheduler with "Allow Dynamic Changes = Y" it isn't necessary to stop and re-start the Process Scheduler for this change to take effect.

The following is Sample PeopleSoft SQL trace from z/OS output queue:

Elapsed Time	SQL Time	Crsr	Return	DB API Statement
0.044	0.044		RC=	0 CEX Stmt=SELECT OWNERID FROM PSSTATUS
0.000	0.000		RC=	0 CEX Stmt=SET CURRENT SQLID = 'PT800RB'
0.000	0.000		RC=	0 CEX Stmt=SET CURRENT DEGREE= '1'
0.039	0.029		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPRUNID_U_UPDID
0.003	0.002	#001	RC=	0 Prepare=UPDATE PS_PRCSSYSTEM SET LASTPRCSINSTANCE = LASTPRCSINSTANCE + 1
0.013	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Execute
0.013	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Row Count=000000001
0.000	0.000		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPRUNID_S_GETID
0.002	0.002	#001	RC=	0 COM=SELECT LASTPRCSINSTANCE FROM PS_PRCSSYSTEM
0.006	0.000	#001	RC=	0 SSB=0001 TYPE=SQLPSLO LEN=0004
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Execute
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Fetch
0.002	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Commit
0.011	0.000		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPLOGMS_S_OPRDEFN
0.002	0.002	#002	RC=	0 COM=SELECT LANGUAGE_CD FROM PSOPRDEFN WHERE OPRID = :1
0.007	0.000	#002	RC=	0 SSB=0001 TYPE=SQLPBUF LEN=0003
0.000	0.000	#002	RC=	0 Bind=0001 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0002 Data=PS
0.000	0.000	#002	RC=	0 Execute
0.000	0.000	#002	RC=	0 Fetch
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Close Cursor for PTPRUNID_S_GETID
0.000	0.000		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPLOGMS_I_LOGMSG
0.002	0.002	#001	RC=	0 Prepare=INSERT INTO PS_MESSAGE_LOG ( PROCESS_INSTANCE, MESSAGE_SEQ, JOBID, PROGRAM_NAME, MESSAGE_SET_NBR, MESSAGE_NBR, MESSAGE_SEVERITY, DTTM_STAMP_SEC ) VALUES (:1,:2,:3,:4,:5,:6,:7,:8)
0.006	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0001 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000044
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0002 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000001
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0003 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0008 Data=PTPTEDIT
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0004 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0008 Data=PTPTEDIT
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0005 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000104
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0006 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000101
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0007 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000010
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0008 Type=0392 Len=0026 Data=1999-10-12-17.40.35.580000
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Execute
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Row Count=000000001
0.000	0.000		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPLOGMS_S_GETMSG
0.002	0.002	#003	RC=	0 COM=SELECT MESSAGE_TEXT FROM PS_MESSAGE_CATALOG WHERE LANGUAGE_CD = :1 AND MESSAGE_SET_NBR = :2 AND MESSAGE_NBR = :3
0.006	0.000	#003	RC=	0 SSB=0001 TYPE=SQLPBUF LEN=0100
0.000	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Bind=0001 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0003 Data=ENG
0.000	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Bind=0002 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000104
0.000	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Bind=0003 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000101
0.000	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Execute
0.000	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Fetch
> 1999-10-12-17.40.35.580000 INFO(104,101) PI(44) Program(PTPTEDIT)				
TSE Application Edits: Begin Job.				
0.006	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Commit
0.013	0.000	#003	RC=	0 Commit
0.001	0.001		RC=	0 GETSTMT Stmt=PTPUSTAT_U_PRCRQSB
0.004	0.003	#001	RC=	0 Prepare=UPDATE PSPRCSRQST SET RUNSTATUS = :1 ,MSGNUM = :2 ,MSGSET = :3 ,PRCSRTNCD = :4 ,BEGINDTM = CURRENT TIMESTAMP ,LASTUPDDTM = CURRENT TIMESTAMP ,MSGPARM1 = :5 ,MSGPARM2 = :6 ,MSGPARM3 = :7 ,MSGPARM4 = :8 ,MSGPARM5 = :9 ,CONTINUEJOB = :10 WHERE PRCSINSTANCE = :11
0.008	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0001 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=7
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0002 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000000
0.000	0.000	#001	RC=	0 Bind=0003 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000104

```

0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0004 Type=SQLPSSH Len=0002 Data=0000
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0005 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0006 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0007 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0008 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0009 Type=SQLPBUF Len=0001 Data=
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0010 Type=SQLPSSH Len=0002 Data=0000
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Bind=0011 Type=SQLPSLO Len=0004 Data=0000000044
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=  100 Execute
0.000      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Row Count=0000000000

```

Some PeopleSoft COBOL programs utilize the stored statement technique of fetching and executing dynamic SQL. Programs fetch SQL statements—commonly known as stored SQL statements—from PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL, then processes them using dynamic SQL (Prepares and Executes). Other COBOL programs are designed to generate their own SQL text inside the program, rather than fetching the SQL text from a table. This technique is sometimes referred to as "dynamic-dynamic," and is more commonly known as "dynamic statement" owing to its ability to generate dynamic SQL text and then to execute a dynamic SQL statement.

In the past, the timings of these dynamically generated statements have been recorded to the DYSQLOG. In PeopleSoft 8 we have included the information on 'dynamic-dynamic' SQL statements into the PeopleSoft trace.

For example:

DYSQLOG from previous versions of PeopleTools:

```

*****
DYNAMIC SQL-STATEMENT (Len= 90)
UPDATE PS_TSE_EDIT_TBL SET TSE_EDIT_ERROR = ' ' WHERE (SETID = 'USA' AND
COMPANY = 'CCB')
Begin Time      End Time      Stmt Run Time      Total Run Time
08:59:42        08:59:42        0.00.00.000000      0.00.00.000000
*****

```

Same dynamic SQL represented in the new PeopleTools trace for PeopleSoft appears as follows:

```

0.010      0.000 #001 RC=    0 DYNAMICSTMT Stmt=PTPEDIT_U_HE000
0.003      0.003 #001 RC=    0 Prepare=UPDATE PS_TSE_EDIT_TBL SET TSE_EDIT_ERROR = ' '
WHERE (SETID = 'USA' AND COMPANY = 'CCB')
0.007      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Execute
0.007      0.000 #001 RC=    0 Row Count=0000000008

```

---

**Note.** The PeopleSoft SQL trace can grow very large, so do your initial testing on smaller processes—for example, a small number of journals to EDIT or POST.

---

## Enabling SQR Monitoring

For SQR programs, there is no report available that shows statement timings like the one provided by PTPSQLRT. However, you can generate a SQL script consisting of fully resolved DB2 UDB for z/OS statements by running the SQR with the -S option.

There are three areas that SQR monitoring can be introduced and four ways that it can be enabled.

### ***Adding SQR Flag to SQRSAMP***

The first area is in the JCL member SQRSAMP. The SQR flag can be added to the PARMLIB(SQRPARMS) directly if you plan to use sample JCL member JCLLIB(SQRSAMP).

```
DSN SYSTEM(DSND)
RUN  PROG(SQR)  -
      PLAN(SQR84) -
      LIB(' <PSHLQ>.SQR.UNICODE.LOAD' ) -
      PARMS(' SP DSN/PT84 -FSQROUT -S -GPRINT=NO -ISI -TBZ -PRINTER:LP' )
END
```

### ***Configuring Process Scheduler***

The second area is within the Process Scheduler configuration, as follows:

To include the -S flag when configuring the PSOS390 Process Scheduler:

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. You may either select Option 3 - Configure a Process Scheduler Server, or Option 6 - Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select Option 3, you would set the value for PSSQRFLAGS to -GPRINT=NO -TBZ -S.
4. If you select Option 6, you need to locate the related section in the file and change the PSSQRFLAGS value to -GRPINT=NO -TBZ -S.

### ***Amending the Process Definition***

The third area is from within the Process Definition. If you are running the SQR via the PSOS390 server, you have to append the -S flag to the process definition.

This can be accomplished by selecting PeopleTools, Process Scheduler Manager, Use, Process Definitions. Enter 'SQR Report' or 'SQR Process' for the process type and enter the SQR name (for example, XRFWIN). Select the Override Options tab and then select Append from the drop down Parameter list and enter the -S. This appends the -S flag to the SQR list when you run the SQR. Output from the -S flag is directed to SYSOUT in the SHELSQR JCL, which is the output queue by default.

Sample output from SQR with the -S flag enabled:

Cursor Status:

Cursor #1:

```
SQL = SET CURRENT PRECISION = 'DEC31'
Compiles = 1
Executes = 1
Rows      = 0
```

Cursor #2:

```
SQL = select A.RECNAME, A.SQLTABLENAME FROM PSRECDEFN A WHERE
      A.SQLTABLENAME <> ' ' AND A.SQLTABLENAME <> A.RECNAME ORDER BY
      RECNAME
Compiles = 1
Executes = 1
Rows      = 0
```

Cursor #3:

```
SQL = select A.RECNAME, A.SQLTABLENAME FROM PSRECDEFN A WHERE A.RECTYPE
      AND A.RECNAME <> 'PSDUMMY' ORDER BY A.RECNAME
Compiles = 2
Executes = 1
Rows      = 1284
```

Cursor #4:

```
SQL = select 'X' FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLES B WHERE B.CREATOR = CURRENT SQLID
      AND B.NAME = ? AND B.TYPE = 'T'
Compiles = 2
Executes = 1284
Rows      = 1280
```

---

**Note.** The -S option produces output that shows the frequency in which all SQL statements are compiled and executed.

---

## Associating PeopleSoft Users with DB2 UDB Threads

In a PeopleSoft application running on DB2, threads are displayed with the access ID as the ID. If the access ID is PSOFT, for example, then you are likely see hundreds or even thousands of DB2 UDB distributed threads all signed on with PSOFT, not the actual user ID associated with a transaction.

One workaround is to give each PeopleSoft user a unique access ID. This method works fine for PeopleSoft two-tier users (working in the development environment). But, this approach involves extra overhead to create and maintain these individual access IDs. Of course, this approach would not work for your PIA (browser) connections, which in many sites can involve thousands of users. Plus, all PIA connections are displayed with the access ID that was used to boot the application server, regardless of whether each user ID has a unique access ID.

However, so that you can associate individual users with individual transactions, features of the DB2 Connect's sqleseti API (set client information) function, enable you to associate the following information with each PeopleSoft database connection or transaction. The PeopleTools system populates these fields with PeopleSoft-specific information:

<i><b>Field</b></i>	<i><b>Description</b></i>
WORKSTATION	An 18-character field reserved for providing the workstation name for the client.

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
USERID	A 16-character field reserved for the PeopleSoft user ID.
APPLICATION NAME	A 32-character field reserved for the application name. For two-tier connections the value will be blank. For three-tier and PIA connections, the value is the application server domain handling the connection.
ACCOUNTING	A 200-character field reserved for additional, module information that selected PeopleTools "modules" populate. The ACCOUNTING field contains the following information, depending on the type of transaction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For PIA transactions, PeopleTools populates the ACCOUNTING field with the component name the end user is currently accessing.</li> <li>For Integration Broker, PeopleTools populates the ACCOUNTING field with the current service operation name.</li> <li>For Application Engine, PeopleTools populates the ACCOUNTING field with "PSAE".</li> </ul>

The following example shows a connection to a PeopleSoft DB2 UDB database through the development environment (two-tier connection). The `DISPLAY THREAD` command, shows the user, *PTDMO*, signed on to Data Mover (PSDMT) and the client workstation name.

```
NAME      ST A   REQ ID          AUTHID   PLAN      ASID TOKEN
SERVER    RA *   3251 PSDMT        PSOFT    DISTSERV  00D0  3009
V437-WORKSTATION=EPRESZ050499, USERID=PTDMO,
APPLICATION NAME=*
```

The following example shows a PIA connection with DB2 UDB Client Monitoring enabled for the application server domain. The user is signing on to a PeopleSoft DB2 UDB database with the user ID of *VP1*.

The `DISPLAY THREAD` command shows:

- Workstation Name of the client.
- PeopleSoft user, *VP1*, as the USERID.
- Application server domain name, *PSHCMT5*, as the APPLICATION NAME value.
- PeopleSoft component, *QUERY\_MANAGER*, set as the ACCOUNTING value.

```
NAME      ST A   REQ ID          AUTHID   PLAN      ASID TOKEN
SERVER    RA *   13237 PSQCKSRV.exe PSOFT    DISTSERV  00D0  3097
V437-WORKSTATION=EPRESZ050499, USERID=VP1,
APPLICATION NAME=PSHCMT5
ACCOUNTING=QUERY_MANAGER
```

---

**Note.** DB2 UDB Client Monitoring is enabled by default for PeopleTools. To confirm that DB2 UDB Client Monitoring is enabled, check for the following setting in PSADMIN or PSAPPSRV.CFG: [Database Options] EnableDBMonitoring=1.

---

## Running COBOL

This section provides an overview of COBOL API and Meta SQL and discusses how to:

- Run COBOL outside of Process Scheduler.
- Disable persistent cursors.

## Understanding COBOL API and Meta SQL

PTPSQLRT is the COBOL API program called by application COBOL programs to prepare and execute dynamic SQL statements. The program fetches SQL statements—known as stored SQL statements—from PS\_SQLSTMT\_TBL, then processes them using dynamic SQL. (Prepares and Executes.) Except for PTPSQLRT, PeopleSoft application COBOL programs do not contain a direct DB2 UDB interface and therefore need only be compiled and link-edited.

Stored SQL statements contain META SQL statements mainly to support date and time functions, for example:

```
Select %currentdatetimeout from PSLOCK ;
```

PTPSQLRT resolves META SQL statements by calling PTPSQLGS which translates the META SQL function into DB2 UDB syntax. Stored statements are delivered in directory \SRC\CBL\BASE of the installation file server.

## Running COBOL Outside of Process Scheduler

COBOL jobs may run outside process scheduler by specifying a 0 (a numeric zero) for the process instance, as shown in the fourth parameter below:

```
//PARMFILE DD *
%OPRID%
%RUNID%
N
0
N
N
Y
```

Sample COBOL JCL is provided in HLQ.PPVVV.JCLLIB(CBLSAMP). Be aware that some application processes are designed to run only through Process Scheduler.

## Disabling Persistent Cursors

The z/OS version of the COBOL API program called PTPSQLRT uses Cursor With Hold by default.

In PeopleSoft terminology, the field `CURSOR_SW` in `PTPSQLRT` is used to define Persistent Cursors (`CURSOR-PERSISTENT`) and Normal Cursors (`CURSOR-NORMAL`). `CURSOR-PERSISTENT` adds the `WITH HOLD` keyword to SQL selects in DB2 UDB. This maintains cursor position after a commit, so that repositioning (reopening and re-fetching) does not need to occur.

The DB2 UDB version of `PTPSQLRT` is shipped with Persistent Cursors enabled. If you don't want to use this feature, you can disable it by editing `PTPSQLRT` as follows:

To disable Cursor with Hold (i.e. Persistent Cursors):

1. Edit `PTPSQLRT` and do a "find" on '`CURSOR WITH HOLD`' => f '`CURSOR WITH HOLD`'.
2. For each of the 254 pairings of Cursor statements, remove the asterisk (\*) from line that creates the cursor without the `WITH HOLD` option (column 7) and place it in column 7 of the line that creates the cursor with the `WITH HOLD` option above it. For example:

Before:

```
EXEC SQL
      DECLARE CURSOR_01
      CURSOR WITH HOLD FOR SQLSTMT_01
*      CURSOR FOR SQLSTMT_01
      END-EXEC
```

After:

```
EXEC SQL
      DECLARE CURSOR_01
*      CURSOR WITH HOLD FOR SQLSTMT_01
      CURSOR FOR SQLSTMT_01
      END-EXEC
```

---

## Administering SQR for z/OS

This section provides an overview of SQR on z/OS and discusses how to:

- Run SQRs outside of Process Scheduler.
- Specify input and output files.
- Print SQRs.

## Understanding SQR on z/OS

The SQR product is available for z/OS server platforms. The z/OS version of SQR is compatible with your existing SQR reports that you currently run from your client machines. The ability to run SQRs on the mainframe means a significant performance enhancement for SQR execution. All SQL is dynamic, therefore no precompiling is necessary for running SQRs.

You can execute SQRs on z/OS by either by using PeopleSoft Process Scheduler or submitting them as traditional z/OS jobs. Process Scheduler dynamically generates SQR JCL.

Be aware that some application processes are designed to run only through Process Scheduler.



SQR for z/OS is delivered with the PeopleTools installation. The PeopleTools DB2 UDB for z/OS installation guide includes instructions for performing the installation of SQR on the z/OS server. SQR must be installed prior to running PeopleSoft SQRs on the z/OS server.

Allow at least 12 cylinders of 3390 DASD or equivalent disk space to complete the installation.

### **See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

*PeopleTools Installation for your platform*

## **Running SQRs Outside of Process Scheduler**

These run time parameters are supplied to SQRs initiated by the Process Scheduler.

- PROCESS\_INSTANCE
- OPRID
- RUN\_CNTL\_ID (required by specific applications only, such as Financials)

When an SQR request is submitted by Process Scheduler, run time parameters are obtained from a Process Scheduler table and dynamically inserted into the generated JCL.

For an SQR submitted as a traditional z/OS batch job, two run time parameters are required, but it is not necessary to pass any specific values. It is only necessary to include a blank line for each parameter in the JCL specified in the SYSIN DD. The appropriate segment of the JCL is shown below:

```
//SQRNAME EXEC SQRPROC,SQRID=SQRNAME
//SQR.SYSIN DD *
```

```
/*
```

Sample SQR JCL is provided in HLQ.PPVVV.JCLLIB(SQRSAMP).

## **Specifying Input and Output Files**

Input and output files are required by SQR when using commands such as OPEN and NEW-REPORT. Remember to consult the appropriate PeopleSoft application documentation for important application specific information concerning SQR for z/OS. For instance, Accounts Payable naming conventions used to build DD names are discussed in the PeopleSoft Payables PeopleBooks.

There are two ways to specify input and output files in SQR for z/OS:

- Add DD statements to the JCL.

This method allows you to maintain a common set of SQR that can execute on any operating system by requiring the modification of Process Scheduler Shell JCL and/or z/OS Batch JCL.

- Add a DSN style filename to the SQR.

This method alleviates the need to modify JCL but creates z/OS operating system specific SQR.

Use the first method if your SQR should execute on any operating system. Use the second method if your SQR executes only on the z/OS operating system.

### ***Adding DD Statements to the JCL***

You may specify a file name for commands such as OPEN and NEW-REPORT using DOS or UNIX file naming conventions. The SQR for z/OS documentation states that SQR will use up to 8 alpha-numeric characters preceding the file extension as a DD name in JCL.

SQR for z/OS does not find 8 alpha-numeric characters as documented. To get around this problem, the FILEPREFIX and FILESUFFIX environment variables in \$PSHLQ\$.SQRINC(SETENV) are used when coding filenames in SQR. The example below shows that SETENV does not contain values for FILEPREFIX and FILESUFFIX when running on the z/OS operating system:

```
! File prefixes and suffix
!
#ifdef NT
#define FILEPREFIX C:\TEMP\
#define FILESUFFIX
#endif
!
#ifdef MVS
#define FILEPREFIX
#define FILESUFFIX
#endif
!
#ifdef UNIX
#define FILEPREFIX /usr/tmp/
#define FILESUFFIX
#endif
!
```

This coding standard enables DOS or UNIX file naming conventions to be used with the OPEN or NEW-REPORT SQR commands. The root portion of the file name is used as a JCL DD name. The Process Scheduler Shell JCL or z/OS Batch JCL must contain this DD name. Each file used for input or output requires a separate DD statement in the JCL.

In the following example, SQR for z/OS uses VIEWTBL as the DD name in JCL:

```
let $outputfile = '{FILEPREFIX}VIEWTBL{FILESUFFIX}'
open $outputfile as 1 for-writing record=132
```

The DD statement in the execution JCL requires the same DD name:

```
//VIEWTBL DD DSN=&PSHLQ..OUTFILES(VIEWTBL),DISP=SHR
```

The data set name specified in the JCL may be either sequential or partitioned dataset. If the SQR requires multiple input or output files, you must add a separate DD statement to the JCL for each file.

While modifications to Process Scheduler Shell JCL or z/OS Batch JCL are required using this method, the resulting SQR is not operating system specific.

---

**Note.** DD names must reference either sequential datasets or separate partitioned datasets due to the z/OS restriction on writing to more than one PDS member simultaneously.

---

---

**Note.** The system overrides the FILEPREFIX and FILESUFFIX variables with the value specified in setfile.sqc, when running the SQR reports through the Process Scheduler with an output type of *Web*. The FILEPREFIX variable will be substituted with the log\_output folder path of the Process Scheduler domain (<DOMAIN>/log\_output/SQR\_<process\_name>\_<prcs\_instance>/). The FILESUFFIX variable will be substituted with a blank value. When there is a requirement to generate a static file or provide a static file input to the SQR report for an output type of *Web*, these variables should be redefined in the SQR file itself (rather than in the SQC file) to any suitable path and extension.

---

### ***Adding a DSN Style Filename to the SQR***

Filenames are preceded by DSN: (dataset name). For example:

```
OPEN 'DSN: $PSHLQ$.SQR.DAT(VIEWTBL)' FOR-READING RECORD=133
NEW-REPORT 'DSN: $PSHLQ$.SQR.DAT(VIEWTBL)'
```

Modifications to Process Scheduler Shell JCL or z/OS Batch JCL are not required when using the above option. However, this option results in operating system specific SQR that executes only on the z/OS operating system.

## **Printing SQRs**

The SQR language supports a DECLARE PRINTER command so that reports can be directed to HPLASERJET and POSTSCRIPT type printers. However, if the printer is not mainframe-connected, the TYPE=LINEPRINTER option is required.

The TYPE=LINEPRINTER specification produces a basic text type report which can be redirected to a system printer. Normally, print output lines don't exceed 124 print positions.

SQRs containing the SETUP02 statement (refers to a member in the SQC library) allow print lines up to 177 positions. If SQROUT DD prints to SYSOUT, then supply a DCB override for SYSOUT and set the LRECL to 178, this is given in SQR Samp JCL under your JCLLIB PDS. It would be a good practice to have DCB override with LRECL=178 for SQROUT DD, as this fits both landscape and portrait mode.

Formatted reports cannot be downloaded, then printed from a workstation connected printer. Only selected SQRs utilize the DECLARE PRINTER feature.

---

**Note.** A "formatted" report is one produced with the TYPE=HPLASERJET /POSTSCRIPT specification.

---

Many customers customize SQRs to tailor information to unique business requirements.

Another reason to customize SQRs is due to the way SQR formats reports when the TYPE=LINEPRINTER option is used. Column header and data field alignment may not be optimal, so modifications may be required.

---

## **Updating Statistics**

This section provides an overview of %UpdateStats and discusses how to:

- Set up the IBM stored procedure DSNUTILS.

- Install the database following the enhanced installation path.
- Update system tables with database and tablespace information.
- Activate %UpdateStats.

## Understanding %UpdateStats

The meta-SQL %UpdateStats is introduced in PeopleSoft 8 to allow an Application Engine and COBOL programs to update statistics in the DB2 UDB catalog table. Updating the statistics in the DB2 UDB catalog table is particularly helpful for the overall performance of Application Engine programs that heavily use PeopleSoft temporary tables.

Often, these tables are delivered empty or the Application Engine program contains code to purge the content of these tables prior to termination. So even if you periodically perform a REORG or RUNSTATS against all the tablespaces in a PeopleSoft database, the DB2 UDB catalog does not reflect accurate statistical information on these temporary tables. The %UpdateStats meta-SQL was specifically written to get around this issue.

To fully implement the %UpdateStats functionality in DB2 UDB in your environment, you need to be aware of the following key items:

- Setting up the DB2 z/OS stored procedure: DSNUTILS.
- Installing the database following the Enhanced Installation Path.
- Updating the PeopleSoft System Tables with Database and Tablespace Information
- Activating the %UpdateStats in Application Engine.

## Setting Up the IBM System Stored Procedure: DSNUTILS

DSNUTILS is required to enable the %UpdateStats meta-SQL function on DB2 z/OS.

The DSNUTILS procedure has been integrated with Application Engine specifically to invoke the Runstats utility; hence DSNUTILS is required if you intend to use the %UpdateStats meta-SQL function.

Please refer to your IBM manuals for more information on enabling the DSNUTILS stored procedure for DB2 z/OS.

The %UpdateStats meta-SQL function can be enabled and disabled through the Process Scheduler configuration. If the command is disabled, the Application Engine and COBOL programs ignore any %UpdateStats coded within the program, and the Runstats utility will not execute.

---

**Note.** The %UpdateStats meta-SQL is enabled by default for both z/OS and Windows Process Scheduler servers..

---

*See PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for DB2 UDB for z/OS.*

---

**Note.** A document from IBM entitled "Enabling the DSNUTILS Stored Procedure for DB2 for OS/390" is available on My Oracle Support. This document outlines the minimum requirements to run Workload Manager in goal mode which is required by the DSNUTILS stored procedure.

---

**See Also**

*IBM DB2 UDB for z/OS documentation*

## Installing the Database Following the Enhanced Installation Path

The lowest level of granularity for running RUNSTATS on DB2 z/OS is at the tablespace level. The %UpdateStats function processes at the table level. For this reason, it is critical to the success of implementing the %UpdateStats functionality that those temporary tables which are the object of the %UpdateStats meta-SQL are placed in their own, unique tablespaces, rather than a shared tablespace. The performance of the Runstats utility itself can be negatively affected if these tables are not segregated. There is also risk of invalidating the catalog statistics of other objects that reside in the shared tablespace.

To assist with this process, we deliver two installation paths for our System and Demo databases. The "Traditional" installation path combines multiple tables into a single tablespace. The "Enhanced" installation path has segregated the PeopleSoft temporary tables into separate tablespaces.

If you plan to use the %UpdateStats functionality, it is critical that you use the Enhanced Installation path for optimal performance of the %UpdateStats function and the Runstats utility.

---

**Note.** The %UpdateStats meta-SQL function is only intended to be used for PeopleSoft temporary tables. It is not intended to be used to update catalog statistics for permanent application or PeopleTools tables

---

**See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for DB2 UDB for z/OS, "Creating a Database."*

## Updating System Tables with Database and Tablespace Information

When issuing %UpdateStats meta-SQL in your program, you specify the temporary table on which you intend to have the statistics updated. Database and tablespace name values are retrieved from the PeopleTools meta data. Therefore, it is imperative that these tables reflect accurate information as contained in the DB2 UDB catalog.

Running the following SQRs ensures that the PeopleTools tables are in sync with the DB2 UDB system catalog.

<b>SQR Program</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
SETSPACE.SQR	Extracts the database/tablespace values from the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES and updates the PSRECTBLSPC table with this information. The SQR also inserts valid database/tablespace combinations into PSTBLSPCCAT
SETTMPIN.SQR	Inserts Temporary Table instance information into PSRECTBLSPC to provide values necessary for processing Runstats on the instance.

---

**Note.** DB2 RUNSTATS is run at the tablespace level. From a performance perspective, it is recommended that you move tables that are the object of the %UpdateStats to a separate tablespace.

---

It is not mandatory to run SETSPACE or SETTMPIN to use the %UpdateStats meta-SQL function because %UpdateStats retrieves the correct database and tablespace name directly from the DB2 UDB catalog. You should, however, still run SETSPACE and SETTMPIN to keep the PeopleTools metadata synchronized with the DB2 UDB Catalog.

See *IBM's Installation Guide for DB2 UDB for z/OS*.

## Activating %UpdateStats

%UpdateStats can be disabled by setting the DbFlags application server domain parameter.

This parameter has two values that apply to %UpdateStats:

- 0 – enable %UpdateStats.
- 1 – disable %UpdateStats.

%UpdateStats is enabled by default for Windows and z/OS Process Scheduler servers.

### ***Enabling/Disabling %UpdateStats for Batch Processing***

To enable/disable %UpdateStats for batch processing:

1. Initialize the PSADMIN program on Unix System Services to administer the Process Scheduler PSOS390.
2. Select either Configure a Process Scheduler Server or Edit a Process Scheduler Configuration File.
3. If you select the first option, set the value for DbFlags to 0 to enable or 1 to disable %UpdateStats.
4. If you select the second option, locate the related section in the file and change DbFlags to 0 to enable and 1 to disable %UpdateStats.

5. To fully enable %UpdateStats for COBOL to run on the mainframe (Server PSOS390), you need to modify the program PSPTSQRT. Note that several lines are delivered commented out in the program,

```
--
*      ELSE
*          PERFORM VX000-EXECUTE-RUNSTATS
*          END-IF

--.
--.
*      EXEC SQL
*          CALL DSNUTILS( :DSNUTIL-WK.UID, :DSNUTIL-WK.RESTART,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.UTSTMT,
*                        :RETCODE, :DSNUTIL-WK.UTILITY,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RECDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.RECDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RECSPACE,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.DISCDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.DISCDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.DISCSPACE,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.PNCHDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.PNCHDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.PNCHSPACE,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYDSN1, :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYDEVT1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYSPACE1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYDSN2, :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYDEVT2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.COPYSPACE2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYDSN1, :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYDEVT1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYSPACE1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYDSN2, :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYDEVT2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.RCPYSPACE2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKDSN1, :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKDEVT1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKSPACE1,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKDSN2, :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKDEVT2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.WORKSPACE2,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.MAPDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.MAPDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.MAPSPACE,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.ERRDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.ERRDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.ERRSPACE,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.FILTERDSN, :DSNUTIL-WK.FILTERDEVT,
*                        :DSNUTIL-WK.FILTERSPACE )
*      END-EXEC.

--
```

6. Uncomment the lines noted above so they are activated in the program code.
7. Compile the program PTPSQLRT by submitting the two JCL members found in \$PSHLQ.JCLLIB:
  - PSCOBDA
  - PSCOBDE
8. Determine whether you want to bind or rebind two DB2 UDB plans for PeopleSoft. Add the following line to the Bind Parameter list in the appropriate JCL members noted below, before submitting them:

PKLIST (DSNUTILS.\*)

9. For first time Binding modify the following two members in \$PSHLQ.JCLLIB:

- BINDAADD
- BINDEADD

10. For rebinding an existing plan, modify the following two members in \$PSHLQ.JCLLIB

- BINDAREP
- BINDEREP

---

## Setting the Number of Temporary Tables

Normally you may leave the number of temporary tables set to the default established at installation. You may need to change this setting for optimal performance, depending on various aspects of your implementation, including account transaction volumes, benchmark numbers for the current hardware and database platform, as well as your service-level requirements. Use the following procedure if you need to adjust the number of temporary tables to improve performance in your implementation.

To set the number of temporary tables:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options.
2. Set the Temp Table Instances (Total) and Temp Table Instances (Online) fields to the desired settings.

---

**Note.** Temp Table Instances (Total) should always be set to the same values as Temp Table Instances (Online), unless you have been instructed otherwise in the application documentation.

---

3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and select the Save icon to save the newly edited PeopleTools options.

---

**Note.** The total number of instance generated consists of the allocations specified on the PeopleTools Options panel plus the allocations specified on each individual Application Engine program. (To modify these allocations, open an Application Engine program in Application Designer, open the Properties dialog box for the object, and click the Temporary Tables tab.)

---

4. Recreate all temp tables in your database.

See *PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for DB2 UDB for z/OS*, "Creating a Database."

---

**Warning!** If you change the number of online temporary table instances as described above, it is critical that you recreate all temporary tables in your database, particularly if you are increasing the number of instances. The parameter above is global to all temporary tables and is used by all on-line processes to determine the number of temporary table instances that should be available to a given process. If you don't recreate all temporary tables, a process may try to use an instance that has not been created on the database, and will subsequently fail.

---

---

## Creating Temporary Tables

For each temporary table you define, a base table structure and a number of its instances are created in the database as ordinary tables with ordinary table structures. The number of temporary table instances is determined by the value of the Temp Table Instances setting in PeopleTools Options added to the number of PeopleSoft Application Engine temporary tables. These temporary tables are used as work tables that hold transient data, and because they are real tables, they are permanent structures in the database, remaining until an explicit DROP TABLE command is executed against them.



The nature of a temporary table means that the amount of data that each temporary work table holds varies significantly after each use. Therefore, when RUNSTATS are executed against them, there is a good chance that the statistics captured may not apply and will negatively influence the DB2 optimizer access path selection the next time you use the temporary work table.

Each record of the type Temporary Table is defined as a VOLATILE table in DB2 (beginning with version 8). This definition takes advantage of the DB2 optimizer's enhanced capability to formulate efficient index access paths for those tables that hold volatile data, without relying on current table statistics.

### **Example: VOLATILE Used in CREATE TABLE DDL**

This example shows the VOLATILE parameter in the CREATE TABLE DDL for the base temp table and its instances.

```
CREATE TABLE FSDMOA.PS_AEEXT_TAO (PROCESS_INSTANCE DECIMAL(10) NOT
NULL,
    AE_INT_1 SMALLINT NOT NULL,
    AE_APPLID CHAR(12) NOT NULL,
    AE_SECTION CHAR(8) NOT NULL,
    AE_STEP CHAR(8) NOT NULL) VOLATILE IN FSDMOA.PTAPPE;
```

---

## **Working with Alters on DB2 z/OS**

This section provides an overview and discusses:

- Advisory Reorg Pending and Rebuild Pending Status
- Determining Whether A Tablespace or Index Is In A Pending Status
- Tablespace Versioning
- Determining When to Recycle Tablespace Version Numbers
- Working with DB2 tablespace Vversioning and PeopleSoft upgrades

## **Understanding Alters on DB2 z/OS**

PeopleTools Data Administration tools support native DB2 z/OS alter syntax (known as DB2 Online Schema Evolution) for altering tables. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE <table name> ALTER COLUMN <column name> SET DATA TYPE <new definition>
```

Use of this Alter syntax provides the capability to make structural changes to a table without the requirement to drop and recreate it. The data remains available for both inquiry and update processing. This means that when possible, PeopleTools use "Alter In Place" through this native alter syntax, rather than "Alter By Table Rename" for specific additional use cases.

As a result of this Alter In Place syntax, existing data rows are not immediately reformatted at the time that the alter is committed to DB2. Instead, as a result of the use of the ALTER TABLE <table name> ALTER COLUMN <column name> SET DATA TYPE <new definition> syntax, DB2 does the following:

- Places the corresponding tablespace or indices in either an Advisory Reorg Pending (AREO\*), or Rebuild Pending (RBDP) status depending on the nature of the change (alter) made to a particular table.

- Creates a new version of the tablespace which reflects the format of the desired change. Despite the pending status, the data continues to be available for inquiry and update processing, and rows are subsequently materialized in the post-alter format (the current tablespace version) as they are retrieved.

## Advisory Reorg Pending and Rebuild Pending Status

The following types of changes will cause tablespaces and indices to be placed in Advisory Reorg Pending (AREO\*) status:

<i>DB2 z/OS version</i>	<i>Changes</i>
8.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes made to the length of character or vargraphic (Unicode) columns will cause the tablespace that contains the table to be placed in AREO*</li> <li>Changes between compatible numeric data types will cause the tablespace that contains the table to be placed in AREO*</li> <li>Adding new columns to a table that resides in a tablespace that is already versioned (see Tablespace Versioning below)</li> </ul>
9.1 (and later)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes made to the length of character or vargraphic (Unicode) columns will cause the tablespace that contains the table to be placed in AREO*</li> <li>Changes between compatible numeric data types will cause the tablespace that contains the table to be placed in AREO*</li> <li>Altering a table to add a new column if the tablespace that contains the table is currently at version 0 (see tablespace versioning below), or, adding a new column and issuing DML (insert, update, or delete) across the commit scope (also see APAR PK54341 for more details).</li> </ul>

The following types of changes will cause indices to be placed in Rebuild Pending (RBDP) status:

<i>DB2 z/OS version</i>	<i>Changes</i>
8.1 and later	Changes between compatible numeric data types will place any index that contains the affected column in RBDP.

## Determining Whether A Tablespace or Index Is In A Pending Status

To find objects in a pending status, run the display database command using the DB2 Interactive Command Processor (DB2I), DSN session under TSO, or a z/OS console session. As an example, the following command displays all tablespaces in the Advisory Reorg Pending (AREO\*) status and all indices in the Rebuild Pending status for a database called Q51802R1:

```

-DIS DB(Q51802R1) SPACENAM(*) ADVISORY(AREO*) RESTRICT(RBDP)

DSNT360I  -5A *****
DSNT361I  -5A *   DISPLAY DATABASE SUMMARY
          *   RESTRICTED ADVISORY
DSNT360I  -5A *****
DSNT362I  -5A   DATABASE = Q51802R1  STATUS = RW
          DBD LENGTH = 2996486

DSNT397I  -5A
NAME      TYPE PART   STATUS                      PHYERRLO PHYERRHI CATALOG  PIECE
-----
PTTBLZZ   TS                RW,AREO*
IDX1R9    IX                RW,RBDP
*****  DISPLAY OF DATABASE Q51802R1 ENDED *****

```

Tablespace PTTBLZZ is in Read, Write and Advisory Reorg Pending status.

Index IDX1R9 is in Read, Write and Rebuild Pending status.

### See Also

Your IBM DB2 for z/OS command reference guide

## Tablespace Versioning

In most circumstances, a committed alter will cause DB2 to create a new version of the tablespace, which reflects the format of the desired alter. Rows are subsequently materialized in the post-alter format as they are retrieved. DB2 can store up to a maximum of 256 active versions of a tablespace, numbered 0 to 255. Version 0 indicates a tablespace that has never been altered, and version 0 is never reused. All rows are formally converted to the format determined by the latest tablespace version when the tablespace is reorganized.

When a tablespace reaches the maximum number of versions, it is important to note that subsequent attempts to alter any table contained in the tablespace will fail with SQL Code -4702. At this point, the DB2 Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities must be executed to:

- reformat the data as dictated by the latest version of the tablespace (by running the Reorg Tablespace utility).
- recycle the version numbers so that DB2 can reuse all version numbers other than the active version of the tablespace (by running the Modify Recovery utility).

---

**Note.** The Reorg Tablespace utility with Index(All) option also removes the AREO\* and RBDP statuses.

---



---

**Important!** When executing a significant number of Alters In Place (such as during the Upgrade Alter Without Deletes step or when applying a Maintenance Pack), the potential exists to create the maximum number of tablespace versions, particularly when running against shared tablespaces.

---

To mitigate the risk of encountering the -4702 SQLCode, PeopleTools Development recommends that you query the DB2 zOS Catalog to determine if there are any tablespaces in your PeopleSoft database that are close to the maximum version limit, and then execute the Reorg and Modify Recovery utilities accordingly to recycle version numbers before beginning any step that executes a significant number of Alters In Place.

## Determining When to Recycle Tablespace Version Numbers

To determine which tablespaces may require recycling of version numbers prior to beginning the Alter Without Deletes step, review the OLDEST\_VERSION and CURRENT\_VERSION columns of SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE for each tablespace in your PeopleSoft database as described in this section.

Use the following query as a guide to list the oldest and current version numbers for all PeopleSoft tablespaces in your environment:

```
SELECT NAME, DBNAME, OLDEST_VERSION, CURRENT_VERSION FROM
SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
WHERE CREATOR = '<authid of the owner of the tablespace>'
AND CURRENT_VERSION > 0;
```

Recycling tablespace version numbers is mandatory when all version numbers are currently in use. All tablespace versions are currently in use when one of the following conditions is true:

- The value of the CURRENT\_VERSION column is 255 (SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE).
- The value of the CURRENT\_VERSION column is one less than the value of the OLDEST\_VERSION column.

### **Example: The value of the CURRENT\_VERSION column is 255 (SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE)**

All versions for tablespace PTTLRG0M are now in use, and the version numbers must be recycled.

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTTLRG0M	0	255

No subsequent Alters to objects in this tablespace will be allowed, and any attempt to do so will result in a SQLCode of -4702.

After executing the Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities, CURRENT\_VERSION and OLDEST\_VERSION are equal:

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTTLRG0M	255	255

The following is the result of another Alter committed against an object in tablespace PTTLRG0M after the Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities were executed to recycle the version numbers:

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTTLRG0M	255	1

The value of CURRENT\_VERSION for tablespace PTTLRG0M will now continue to increment from 1 to 254 as Alters In Place are committed. When the value of CURRENT\_VERSION reaches 254, version numbers must again be recycled.

### **Example: The Value of the CURRENT\_VERSION Column Is One Less Than The Value of the OLDEST\_VERSION Column**

For the following example, assume that shared tablespace PTAMSG01 was at its initial version (version 0), and that several Alters In Place were committed against multiple tables contained therein:

Initial version (version 0) of PTAMSG01:

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTAMSG01	0	0

After 108 committed Alters In Place to various tables within PTAMSG01:

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTAMSG01	0	108

Now assume that the Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities were executed against tablespace PTAMSG01 when the CURRENT\_VERSION was 108--prior to reaching the maximum of 255.

As a result of executing these utilities, the values for OLDEST\_VERSION and CURRENT\_VERSION were both set to 108:

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTAMSG01	108	108

The value of CURRENT\_VERSION for this tablespace then continued to increment from 108 to 255--and then onward to 107 (below).

At a value of 107, the value of CURRENT\_VERSION was one less than the OLDEST\_VERSION and execution of the Reorg and Modify Recovery utilities was mandatory.

DBNAME	NAME	OLDEST_VERSION	CURRENT_VERSION
CEBC0003	PTAMSG01	108	107

Any attempt to alter another table in tablespace PTAMSG01 while at a CURRENT\_VERSION of 107 would have resulted in SQLCode -4702 because the value of CURRENT\_VERSION was one less than the value of OLDEST\_VERSION.

## Working with DB2 Tablespace Versioning and PeopleSoft Upgrades

This section covers these key issues related to DB2 tablespace versioning and PeopleSoft upgrades:

- Avoiding SQL code -4702.
- Ensuring optimal performance for Data Conversion steps.

### **Avoiding SQL Code -4702**

An Alter Without Deletes script executes a significant number of alters. Although the PeopleTools alter processing for DB2 z/OS was designed to prevent DB2 from creating an excessive number of tablespace versions by carefully controlling the manner in which table alters are committed per tablespace, it is possible that DB2 may still create the maximum number of tablespace versions when running the Alter Without Deletes script if there are shared tablespaces already close to the maximum 255 version numbers.

To mitigate the possibility of the Alter Without Deletes script stopping due to SQL code -4702, run the following query prior to the Alter Without Deletes step, and run the Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities accordingly for any tablespaces that may be close to the maximum allowed version number (either the CURRENT\_VERSION is equal to 255, or CURRENT\_VERSION is one less than OLDEST\_VERSION, as previously explained).

```
SELECT NAME, DBNAME, OLDEST_VERSION, CURRENT_VERSION FROM  
SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE  
WHERE CREATOR = '<authid of the owner of the tablespace>'  
AND CURRENT_VERSION > 0;
```

Then continue with the Alter Without Deletes script as documented.

If you run the Alter Without Deletes script manually (outside of the Change Assistant) using a tool, such as the DB2 Command Line Processor, Command Editor, SPUFI, and so on, disable the auto-commit feature. Change Assistant disables auto-commit when it invokes the Command Line Processor.

### ***Ensuring Optimal Performance For Data Conversion Steps***

While the PeopleTools alter processing for DB2 z/OS was designed to prevent DB2 from creating excessive tablespace versions, you should still expect some shared tablespaces in your environment to become multi-versioned as a result of the normal execution of the Alter Without Deletes step. Until you reorganize, you may notice:

- performance of dynamic SQL statements executed against a tablespace with multiple versions may suffer.
- any indices in RBDP may be ignored by the DB2 optimizer.

To ensure optimal performance, we strongly recommend that you run the Reorg Tablespace (Index All) utility and the Modify Recovery utility to reformat data rows into the format described by the most current tablespace version for any tablespaces with several versions, after the Alter steps (Alter With/Without Deletes) have completed and prior to beginning the Upgrade Data Conversion steps.

For more details regarding the use of the DB2 z/OS Reorg Tablespace and Modify Recovery utilities, refer to your IBM DB2 documentation.

See *IBM DB2 UDB for z/OS Utility Guide and Reference*

## Appendix C

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows

This appendix provides an overview of administration on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows, and discusses:

- Instances.
- Configuration parameters.
- Tablespace.
- Temporary table creation.
- Client database catalog.
- Meta-SQL %TruncateTable().
- DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows administration.
- Checklists and troubleshooting.

---

**Note.** Oracle supports a number of versions of UNIX and Linux. Throughout this appendix, the word UNIX refers to all UNIX-like operating systems, including Linux.

For the sake of brevity, this appendix sometimes refers to DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows as *DB2 LUW*.

---

---

## Understanding Administration on DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows

A PeopleSoft DB2 for UNIX database must be configured, monitored, and tuned to achieve optimum performance. In this section, we offer concepts, procedures, and tips to help you plan and implement the PeopleSoft system and demonstration databases.

Recognizing that many DB2 LUW database administrators have DB2 z/OS backgrounds, this documentation includes references and comparisons to DB2 z/OS to help bridge understanding of concepts and procedures.

For UNIX systems, DB2 UDB publications can be accessed online from AIX using the system command *db2help*. This displays the DB2 UDB information in HTML format.

---

**Note.** You need to install the supported browser and the DB2 UDB HTML information for the chosen language (locale) before running the *db2help* command. By default, the HTML files are copied from the CD-ROM to the hard disk in compressed form. You need to decompress it using the *db2insthtml* command under the DB2 UDB-installed directory. On AIX, it is similar to /usr/lpp/db2\_xx\_01/doc/db2insthtml. On Windows, the above steps are not needed because all the HTML files are uncompressed during normal DB2 UDB installation.

---

### **See Also**

*DB2 Administration Guide*

*DB2 System Monitor Guide and Reference*

---

## **Instances**

This section provides an overview of instances and discusses:

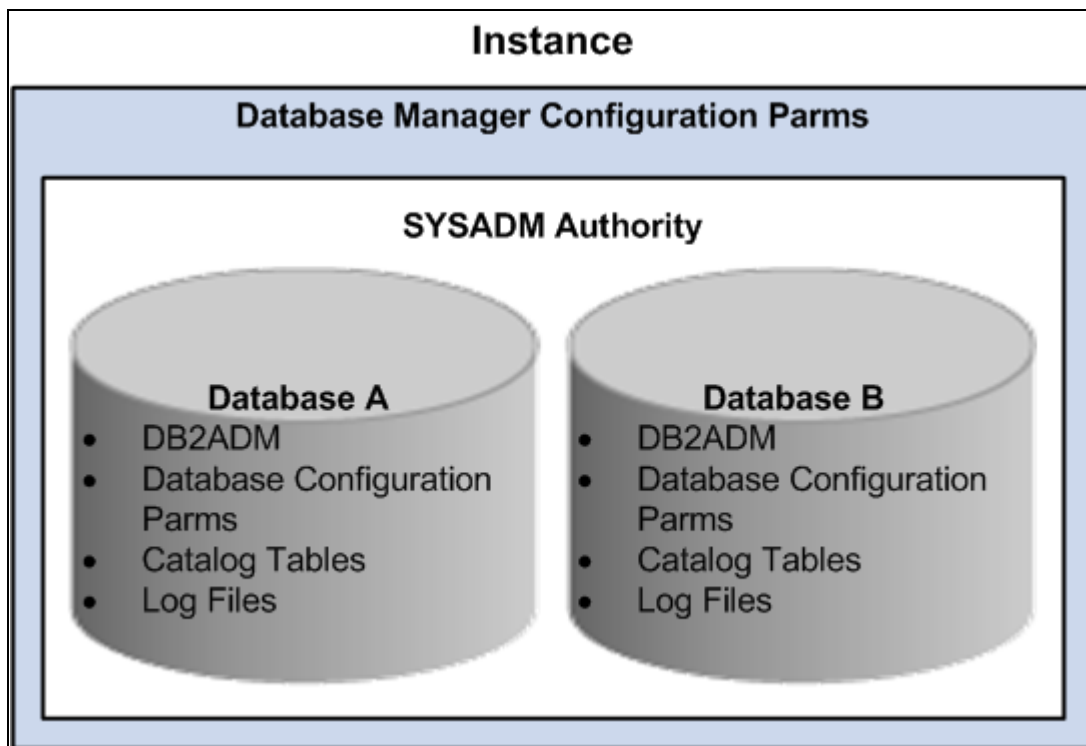
- SYSADM authority and security.
- Instances and Connectivity.
- Other considerations.

## **Understanding Instances**

Operating System administrators (for UNIX logged in as root, for Windows logged on as Administrator) may create one or more DB2 LUW instances to support their PeopleSoft environment. If you only have one computer to house both production and development database, PeopleSoft recommends that you create at least two DB2 UDB instances, one for your development database(s) and one for production. If you have more than one computer for the PeopleSoft environment use, PeopleSoft further recommends that the production instance be created on a separate machine for performance and security reasons.

The following graphic shows a conceptual view of a DB2 LUW instance. Each instance is a collection of databases sharing the same DB2 UDB engine and set of configuration tuning parameters called "database manager parameters." These parameters control a variety of system resources, such as communication buffer sizes, TCP/IP service name, and memory allocations. SYSADM authority controls all databases in an instance. DB2ADM controls the resources within a particular database.





DB2 LUW instance housing a collection of databases sharing the same engine and database manager parameters yet with each database having its own DB2ADM, specific database configuration, catalog tables, and log files

Each database within an instance is, to a large extent, self-contained, having its own set of system catalog tables, configuration tuning parameters, tablespaces, and log files.

Each PeopleSoft application is installed entirely into a single DB2 LUW database. To simplify administration, it is recommended that you create all the PeopleSoft non-production databases (such as Upgrade, Demo, and Development) within one DB2 LUW instance. Setting up the production database in a separate instance by itself will provide you with greater flexibility in administration.

## SYSADM Authority and Security

In DB2 LUW, SYSADM owns all databases in an instance. For this reason, to secure access to the production database, consider maintaining separate production and development instances. In this way, you can restrict SYSADM in production and be less restrictive in development.

If your site uses a single instance standard, you must restrict SYSADM authority—keeping in mind the additional burden this places on your DBA to support development and production environments.

---

**Note.** Administrators with DB2 UDB for z/OS experience should note the difference between DB2 z/OS and DB2 LUW in the way SYSADMs are created. In DB2 z/OS, an "Install SYSADM" is specified during DB2 UDB installation and other SYSADMs are granted using an SQL Grant SYSADM statement.

In DB2 LUW, the instance owner is the de facto "Install SYSADM" and other SYSADMs are created by assigning its group ID to the same primary group as the instance owner.

---

## Instances and Connectivity

To create an instance, you can use the command `db2icrt`. Once the instance is created, you must assign different TCP/IP port numbers for the respective DB2 UDB instances.

To register the pair of TCP/IP ports, you edit the services file. Both the UNIX Server (`/etc/services`) and Windows (`\windows\systemXX\drivers\etc\services`) service files must specify the following:

```
db2dudb 50000/tcp#DB2 Client Application Enabler-Dev
db2pudb 50010/tcp#DB2 Client Application Enabler-Prod
```

---

**Note.** The names `db2dudb` and `db2pudb` are user-defined.

---

Each instance requires a `SERVICENAME`, which points to a unique entry in the service file.

On the DB2 LUW Server, update the Database Manager `SVCENAME` Configuration Parameter:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using SVCENAME db2dudb
```

If you created a second instance, you'd have to update the Database Manager `SVCENAME` Configuration Parameter on that instance using another service name:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using SVCENAME db2pudb
```

## Other Considerations

The following are other considerations related to instances:

- `sqllib` is the root of the DB2 UDB directories created for each DB2 UDB instance. Enter `echo $DB2INSTANCE` to find the currently attached DB2 UDB instance.
- Use `db2ilist` to list all the instances configured for this machine.
- DB2 UDB system commands begin with the prefix `db2` (for example, `db2start` and `db2stop` for starting and stopping DB2 UDB) and are entered at the command window.
- DB2 Command Line Processor (CLP) is a DB2 UDB interface for executing utilities, updating the system configuration, executing SQL, and for getting online help. CLP is the functional equivalent of `SPUFI` in the DB2 z/OS environment.
  - Type `"db2 ?"` at the command prompt for general CLP syntax.
  - Use `db2 "? command"` to get help on a particular CLP command.
  - If you need to execute several lengthy SQLs, you can create a text file which contains all the SQLs and invoke the db2 CLP with the `-f` switch, such as `db2 -tvf job.txt`.
- As an alternative to the Command Line Processor to issue SQL commands, IBM provides the Control Center, a graphical interface for database administrative tasks. The Control Center is a Java application or can be run as a Java applet within a browser. To start the Control Center, enter the command `db2cc` at a command prompt.

---

## Configuration Parameters

This section discusses:

- Definition of configuration parameters.
- Useful configuration commands.
- Parameters overview.

### Definition of Configuration Parameters

Database manager configuration parameters are those which apply for all databases managed by the current instance. You can update database manager configuration parameters using DB2 CLP or Control Center. New database manager configuration parameters take effect after DB2 UDB is stopped and restarted using DB2 UDB commands, *db2stop* and *db2start*, successively.

Most database configuration parameter changes take effect immediately. Some take effect only after all current users disconnect from a database, or after you forcefully disconnect them with the *db2 force application all* command, then execute the *db2 terminate* command to flush the database's directory cache and remove the *db2bp* (backend process).

### Useful Configuration Commands

Useful DB2 CLP commands for Database Manager configuration:

- *get dbm cfg.*

Lists the current setting of database manager config parms.

- *update dbm cfg using parm\_namenew\_value.*

Updates the configuration parameter *parm\_name* For example:

```
update dbm cfg using numdb 4
```

Useful DB2 CLP commands for Database configuration:

- *get db cfg for db\_name.*

Lists the database config parms for *db\_name* database.

- *update db cfg for db\_name using parm\_namenew\_value.*

Updates the parm *parm\_name* for database *db\_name*. For example:

```
db2 update db cfg for hr800dmo using locktimeout 60
```

## Parameters Overview

Following is an overview of the more important configuration parameters with tips for tuning them. Fine tuning these parameters for optimal performance gain on your system requires careful benchmarking techniques.

- **BUFFPAGE**

This database-level parameter controls the database buffer pool (cache) size. It is allocated for the respective database and shared among all the connected client applications. The rule for setting this parameter is: the more the better. Too high a value can cause the system to page (check with `vmstat`). Database system monitor can also give you hints about the "hit-ratio" and I/O elapsed times, that can help you set a proper value. This is a database level parm. The maximum BUFFPAGE for each database without using ESTORE is about 1.5 gigabytes. However, the total BUFFPAGES allocated for all the databases running on the same computer should not exceed 75% of the amount of real memory available for the computer.

---

**Note.** The BUFFPAGE is related to the SYSCAT.BUFFERPOOLS table entry. DB2 LUW has the capability to attach individual buffer pool for each tablespaces. For simplicity, the user can also attach a generic buffer pool named IBMDEFAULTBP for all the tablespaces use. To set up the size of the IBMDEFAULTBP to use the DBM configuration parameter, BUFFPAGE, the user can run the given script ALTRDB.SQL or the following command:

```
db2 alter bufferpool ibmdefaultbp size -1
```

---

- **SORTHEAP**

This database-level parameter is the capacity of in-memory sort. If a sort size exceeds this, the sort has to be written to a temp tables and merged. Make sure this and the SHEAPTHRES parameter (see next item) are large before any large index-creation, since it presorts the data. This parameter is also important for batch jobs, such as payroll, that do large sorts.

- **SHEAPTHRES**

This is a database manager level parm. If all the sort-heaps in the system at any given time exceed this value, the available memory to any further sorts is reduced. Make sure it's greater than  $SORTHEAP * N$ , where N is the number of sorts you expect to occur at any given time.

- **LOCKLIST**

This database-level parameter, along with MAXLOCKS, determines the maximum memory used for database locks. When this runs out (due to a large number of row locks acquired by transactions), lock escalation will occur to minimize the lock usage. Many Row locks will be escalated to one Table lock. The drawback of Table level lock is the reduction of concurrency among multiple applications, which need access to the same tables. Check the database event monitor for lock escalations.

- **NUM\_IOSERVERS**

This database-level parameter stores the Number of Processes/threads used for prefetch/parallel I/O, as well as for backup/restore. A good value is the number of physical disk drives uses to house the database plus 2.

- NUM\_IOCLEANERS

This database-level parameter stores the number of page-cleaners that do "write-behind" of dirty pages. The recommended value for this parameters is to match the number of CPUs inside the computer.

- RQRIOBLK

This database-level parameter stores the size of the cache used for row blocking for remote, cursor-based applications. Rows are placed in this cache in anticipation of their use and retrieved from here for the next FETCH request.

- ASLHEAP

Size of the cache used for row blocking for local applications.

- LOGPRIMARY

This database-level parameter controls the number of DB2 UDB Log files that will be pre-allocated for regular database transaction logging use. Setting this number to a high value will minimize the need to allocate log files on demand, which will improve runtime performance.

---

**Note.** You should separate log files on separate disks from the actual database data. You can use the database configuration parameter NEWLOGPATH to do this.

---

- DFT\_QUERYOPT

This database-level parameter determines the query optimization class used for the SQL compilation. The higher the level represents a more detailed study of the potential access path. Since PeopleSoft applications comprises dynamic SQLs only, setting this parameter to a high value will affect the compilation time for all SQLs. The recommended value for this parameter is the default value 5.

---

**Note.** For SQL that is complex and can benefit from the use of higher optimization class, users can alter the optimization class for that SQL alone with the following SQL construct:

```
SET CURRENT QUERY OPTIMIZATION = 7
[ complex SQL ]
SET CURRENT QUERY OPTIMIZATION = 5
```

---

Most of these memory-related parameters are allocated out of one of the many heaps. You may need to adjust the heap parameters accordingly.

---

## Tablespaces

This section discusses:

- DDL scripts.
- Using the PeopleSoft DMS tablespace DDL.
- DMS tablespaces: Cooked or raw.
- System catalog tablespace and other initial tablespaces.

- Capacity planning.

## DDL Scripts

PeopleSoft provides DDL scripts to create a database, and set database manager and database tuning parameters. These scripts are on the PeopleSoft installation file server in the \scripts directory. Run the following scripts:

```
\scripts\createdb.sql -- creates DB2 LUW database.
.
\scripts\xxddldms.sql -- creates DMS (Data Managed Storage) tablespaces
```

Where xx is the product identifier, such as HR for PeopleSoft HCM or FS for PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management.

## Using the PeopleSoft DMS Tablespace DDL

Create all tables and indexes in Data Managed Storage (DMS) tablespaces using PeopleSoft standard tablespace names as described in the installation guide. This storage option, as oppose to System Managed Storage (SMS), is appropriate for a database that you plan to change and grow. DMS is appropriate for a system test or production database.

---

**Note.** DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY feature is turned off in the xxddldms.sql script to avoid performance issue when dropping large number of tables. This feature can be turn on again with ALTER TABLESPACE command.

---

Here are some installation guidelines for manually creating your PeopleSoft database and tablespaces:

- On the database server, edit and run CREATEDB.SQL to create a database and default tablespace USERSPACE1. Note that this script assumes you will use Circular Logging; if archival logging is desired, you must make the necessary changes.
- On the database server, edit the DMS script /sql/hrddldms.sql. Instructions for editing this file are contained inside the file. This script creates all the PeopleSoft standard tablespaces.
- In Windows, use Data Mover to create and populate tables and indexes. In Data Mover, the command line below—if it exists in the Data Mover script—should either be removed or commented out (disabled) in the Data Mover script (the ';' in position 1 disables the command):

```
; set space * as USERSPACE1 ;
```

---

**Note.** Disabling the above command causes Data Mover to use PeopleSoft's standard tablespace grouping strategy.

---

### See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows, "Preparing for Installation"*

## DMS Tablespaces: Cooked or Raw

DMS tablespaces may be created as either COOKED Files System or RAW Storage Devices. PeopleSoft provides DDL script /sql/hrddldms.sql to support DMS COOKED Files System.

PeopleSoft does not provide a tablespace script to support the Raw device, but you can create the RAW device with the proper Operating System command and the following DB2 UDB command:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PSAPP MANAGED BY DATABASE USING
    (device '/dev/data1_lv' 20000)
```

On AIX, the COOKED File System refers to the Journal File System (JFS). On Windows, the COOKED Files System refers to NTFS.

---

**Note.** There is a roughly 5-10% performance gain on RAW device over COOKED file system on tablespaces which are frequently being updated. However, it is generally much easier to administer a COOKED file system than a RAW device.

---

## System Catalog Tablespace and Other Initial Tablespaces

For system test and production databases, PeopleSoft recommends that you consider tailoring the Create Database statement to override the DB2 LUW default tablespace definitions for SYSCATSPACE and TEMPSPACE1. An example of this is provided below, where CATALOG Tablespace defines the SYSCATSPACE and TEMPORARY Tablespace defines TEMPSPACE1:

```
CREATE DATABASE db2-database-name ON dir-name|drive COLLATE USING IDENTITY \
    CATALOG TABLESPACE MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING
    ('/cat-dir-name' )
    EXTENTSIZE 16 PREFETCHSIZE 32
    TEMPORARY TABLESPACE MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING
    ('/temp-dir-name' )
    EXTENTSIZE 8
```

---

**Note.** The above tablespaces may be defined as DMS tablespaces. If you omit these tablespace definitions, DB2 LUW will create these tablespaces in the file system directory denoted by *dir-name*.

---

## Optimizing Table Space Capacity With Auto-Resize

DB2 LUW offers the "AUTORESIZE" option for use with DMS table spaces so that the database system can automatically manage the allocation of additional space when a previous limit has been reached. PeopleTools supports the use of AUTORESIZE.

The AUTORESIZE option enables database administrators to create table spaces with an ample yet reasonable initial size and then specify the increment by which the system enlarges the table space when necessary. AUTORESIZE is transparent to any application connected to the database, and because it automatically manages table space size based on the specified configuration settings, database administrators do not need to enlarge table spaces manually on an ad hoc basis.

---

**Note.** AUTORESIZE is only available for table spaces within database-managed spaces (DMS). However, PeopleTools, as a standard, only creates DMS table spaces, so this restriction does not apply within the PeopleTools context. PeopleTools does not create system-managed spaces (SMS).

---

## Enabling AUTORESIZE

The SQL parameters for enabling and configuring auto-resize are:

Parameter	Description
AUTORESIZE	YES   NO  Indicates whether auto-resize should be enabled for a table space. Disabling auto-resize is not recommended.
INCREASESIZE	K   M   G  Specify the size of the increments by which the system should increase the table space size. Use an integer value in either kilobytes (K), megabytes (M), or gigabytes (G).  <b>Note.</b> This value can also be expressed in terms of a percentage by which to increase the table space size. However, expressing the increase size value in terms of a percentage is discouraged, unless you have detailed knowledge of how DB2 calculates the percentage. If you do not set the percentage to a value that optimally increases table space size based on the current size and the amount of data typically inserted in your system, you may incur undesired amounts of wasted space.
MAXSIZE	K   M   G   NONE  Specify a maximum size that the table space can reach. Use an integer value in either kilobytes (K), megabytes (M), or gigabytes (G).  NONE indicates that the table space can grow to the limit imposed by the file system.

How you enable AUTORESIZE depends on the status of your current implementation, as in, whether you are creating or upgrading a database, or just working with an existing database.

If you are creating a new PeopleSoft database or performing an upgrade on a PeopleSoft database, you use the Database Creation Wizard and the delivered DDL scripts to enable auto-resize as per the instructions in your PeopleSoft upgrade and/or installation documentation.

The DDL of the provided scripts and those created using the Database Creation Wizard is similar to the following CREATE TABLESPACE example:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PTTLRG MANAGED BY DATABASE USING
(
  FILE '/data1/psdb2/ptdbname/PTTLRG.DBF' 10 M
) EXTENTSIZE 16 PREFETCHSIZE 48 DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY OFF
AUTORESIZE YES INCREASESIZE 10 M MAXSIZE NONE ;
```

In this example, the system creates the table space PTTLRG with an initial size of 10 Mb, with the AUTORESIZE option on, specifying that the database system will increase the table space size by 10 Mb each time a limit is reached.

---

**Note.** If you have already determined the appropriate initial size, increase size, and maximum size for table spaces at your site, edit the delivered scripts to reflect those values.

---



If you are working with an existing PeopleSoft database and not performing any database creation or upgrade tasks on the entire database, you can submit a SQL ALTER command to update any existing table spaces for which you want to enable this feature.

The ALTER syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE <name> AUTORESIZE YES INCREASESIZE <size> MAXSIZE <size> ;
```

**Disabling Auto-Resize**

By default, AUTORESIZE is enabled for all new and upgraded PeopleSoft databases. Because of its convenience and because the PeopleSoft system assumes AUTORESIZE is on, disabling AUTORESIZE is not recommended.

To disable the auto-resize option for a table space, issue a SQL ALTER statement using the following syntax:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE <name> AUTORESIZE NO ;
```

**Determining Increase Size**

To determine the appropriate increase size value for your table spaces, Oracle recommends first categorizing your table spaces into the following categories: small, medium, and large. These categories reflect the growth potential of the table space. For example, a small table space is one that is not expected to increase at the same rate or reach the same size as a large table space.

The following table provides some suggested increase sizes by category.

Category	Suggested Increase Size Range
Small	10 M – 100 M
Medium	300 M – 500 M
Large	700 M – 1000 M

**Confirming that AUTORESIZE is Enabled**

To confirm that AUTORESIZE is enabled and working as desired, use the DB2 table space monitor snapshot output. For example, assume you create the table space PSHRDATA with AUTORESIZE on. PSHRDATA, historically, is a table space that typically reached maximum space if not properly monitored and adjusted by database administrators. In this example, PSHRDATA is created with an initial space allocation of 1500 8k pages, using the following SQL:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PSHRDATA PAGESIZE 8K MANAGED BY DATABASE USING
(
  FILE '/data1/psdb2/ptdbname/PTTREEIDX.DBF' 1500
) EXTENTSIZE 16 PREFETCHSIZE 48 BUFFERPOOL PSUBUFFPOOL DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY OFF
AUTORESIZE YES INCREASESIZE 10 M MAXSIZE NONE ;
```

After a period of time in which you can assume large amounts of transactional data has been inserted into your database, connect to the database and show the detail report on the table spaces. Use the **list tablespaces show detail** command.

```
db2 connect to <db-name>
db2 list tablespaces show detail
```

A section of the output would appear similar to the following:

```
.....
Tablespace ID          = 45
Name                   = PSHRDATA
Type                   = Database managed space
Contents               = Any data
State                  = 0x0000
  Detailed explanation:
    Normal
Total pages            = 2768
Useable pages          = 2752
Used pages             = 2000
Free pages             = 752
High water mark (pages) = 2000
Page size (bytes)      = 8192
Extent size (pages)    = 16
Prefetch size (pages)  = 48
Number of containers   = 1
.....
```

The current footprint (Total Pages) of PSHRDATA is now 2768 8k pages, well over the initial allocation. This clearly indicates that DB2 detected a request for additional free pages beyond the initial space allocation for PSHRDATA and automatically extended the table space.

### ***Monitoring Table Space Size Allocation***

While the AUTORESIZE option greatly reduces the amount of manual intervention, database administrators should continue to monitor the size and growth of the following elements of your database to ensure that you are optimizing space usage:

- File system
- Table space container

---

## **Temporary Table Creation**

For each temporary table you define, a base table structure and a number of its instances are created in the database as ordinary tables with ordinary table structures. The number of temporary table instances is determined by the value of the Temp Table Instances setting in PeopleTools options Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options added to the number of PeopleSoft Application Engine temporary tables. These temporary tables are used as work tables that hold transient data, and because they are real tables, they are permanent structures in the database and remain until an explicit **drop table** command is executed against them.

The nature of a temporary table means that the amount of data that each temporary work table holds varies significantly after each use. Therefore, when RUNSTATS are executed against them, there is a good chance that the statistics captured may not apply and will negatively influence the DB2 optimizer access path selection the next time you use the temporary work table.

Each record of the type Temporary Table is defined as a **VOLATILE** table in DB2 (beginning with version 8). This definition takes advantage of the DB2 optimizer's enhanced capability to formulate efficient index access paths for those tables that hold volatile data, without relying on current table statistics. Additionally, because each temporary work table can only be assigned to a single process, the temporary work table is defined with the **LOCKSIZE TABLE** attribute to reduce the number of lock resources to be managed by DB2. Both the **VOLATILE** and **LOCKSIZE TABLE** attributes are implemented using **ALTER** table statements.

### **Example: ALTER Statement Using VOLATILE and LOCKSIZE TABLE**

This example shows the additional DDL for **ALTER** statements generated for temporary tables that implements the **VOLATILE** and **LOCKSIZE TABLE** attributes.

```
CREATE TABLE PS_AC_CSTSEQ_TAO1 (
PROCESS_INSTANCE DECIMAL(10) NOT NULL,
    DEPOSIT_BU CHAR(5) NOT NULL,
    DEPOSIT_ID CHAR(15) NOT NULL,
    PAYMENT_SEQ_NUM INTEGER NOT NULL,
    BUSINESS_UNIT CHAR(5) NOT NULL,
    CUST_ID CHAR(15) NOT NULL,
    ID_SEQ_NUM INTEGER NOT NULL)
IN ARWORK INDEX IN ARWORKIDX
NOT LOGGED INITIALLY;

ALTER TABLE PS_AC_CSTSEQ_TAO1 VOLATILE;
ALTER TABLE PS_AC_CSTSEQ_TAO1 LOCKSIZE TABLE;
```

---

## **Client Database Catalog**

When cataloging databases on a client machine, always use **AUTHENTICATION** clause and match the authentication algorithm with the one specified on the server by the database manager parameter (**AUTHENTICATION**). For example:

```
db2 catalog database database_name at node node_name AUTHENTICATION SERVER
```

This will avoid additional network traffic between client and server generated to resolve the authentication algorithm discrepancy.

---

## **Meta-SQL %TruncateTable()**

In DB2 LUW, there's no SQL implementation of a Truncate Table command, such as the one found in Oracle. PeopleTools has implemented a DB2 UDB utility to achieve the same effect as the Truncate Table command. This utility is available through the PeopleCode function **%TruncateTable()**.

You might wish to disable this meta-SQL function because of the performance overhead incurred by bufferpool flushing. The negative effect of bufferpool flushing comes when you truncate large tables using the DB2 LUW API. The process can run much longer than a **SQL DELETE FROM** clause. If you're experiencing this problem, you can convert **%TruncateTable** into a **SQL DELETE FROM** clause.

To enable this conversion there is a setting (**DbFlags**) in **PSPRCS.CFG** and **PSAPPSRV.CFG** (or **PSADMIN**). **DbFlags** is a bitmap value and if it contains the value of 2, then SQL is used rather than the DB2 UDB API to set the table to zero rows. The default value for **DbFlags** is *zero*.

The following is an example:

DbFlags=2 will enable the workaround.

DbFlags=1 doesn't enable the workaround and the Truncate is done similar to the Oracle's Truncate command.

## Handling Errors

During the execution of the %TruncateTable() meta-SQL, error information is written to a disk file. The location of this disk file varies depending on which platform type is used.

### **Windows**

If you are running %TruncateTable on Windows, then the directory name format is "%TEMP%\PS\DB2Truncate\PS\_TruncateLogFile\_*pid\_id*.txt" , where *pid\_id* is a variable depending on the process ID.

### **UNIX**

If you are running %TruncateTable on UNIX, then the directory name format is \$PS\_HOME/log/DB2Truncate/PS\_TruncateLogFile\_*pid\_id*.txt, where *pid\_id* is a variable depending on the process ID.

In most cases, error files might be created under the following circumstances:

- %TruncateTable(Table\_name), where Table\_name doesn't exist.
- Internal errors in DB2 UDB.

---

## DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows Administration

This section discusses:

- Updating statistics.
- Performing queries on a Windows client.
- Object restrictions.
- Administrative tools.
- Connectivity using ODBC/CLI.

## Updating Statistics

We recommend that you update the database statistics on a periodic basis, typically weekly, to account for ongoing data changes. You do this by running `runstats` for tables and indexes in the database. This allows DB2 UDB's cost based optimizer to generate efficient access plans for your stored and dynamic SQL statements. Using the `SHRLEVEL CHANGE` keywords together with the `runstats` command will enable the application to access the table while the statistics are being computed. An example of the command is shown below:

```
db2 runstats on table sysibm.systables with distribution
and indexes all SHRLEVELCHANGE
```

`Runstats` can be executed from the Database Control Center or DB2 CLP. Type "`db2? runstats`" for more information.

PeopleSoft provides an SQR program, `RUNSTATS.SQR`, to execute `runstats` on all your System and PeopleSoft tables. This script is located in the database server's `/SQR` directory, and can be executed using the instructions found in installation guide. If desired, for efficiency's sake, you can modify this script to limit running the `runstats` command against only those tables that experience high growth or high update. To identify such tables, modify `RUNSTATS.SQR` to join tables to `SYSCAT.SYSTABLES` and only select those tables belonging to tablespace `xxLARGE`.

Use *explain* to determine the access path chosen by the DB2 UDB optimizer. You can either use the Visual Explain utility or the `db2expln` tool to get access path information.

### See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 Installation for DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows, "Creating a Database"*

## Performing Queries on a Windows Workstation

Query capability on Windows workstations can be accomplished using multiple products:

- IBM's DB2 Connect provides connectivity to a DB2 LUW database server (and other DB2 UDB Family servers) as well as SQL support.
- DB2 UDB "Command Window" or the graphical "Command Center". SQL issued from the Command Center can be stored as scripts and retrieved for later use from the Script Center.
- Third-party vendor tools such as Business Objects, Information Advantage, and so forth.

## Object Restrictions

PeopleSoft applications contain many table and index objects. The number of objects in a DB2 LUW database does not pose a problem as it would in DB2 z/OS.

Unlike DB2 z/OS, which places a restriction on the number of database objects in a single DB2 z/OS database (not a subsystem), the number of objects in a DB2 LUW database is not of concern. The DB2 z/OS DBD (DataBase Descriptor), which limits the number of objects in a single database to 25% of the DBD memory allocation, has no exact counterpart in DB2 LUW.

## Administrative Tools

Database Control Center is an easy to use, graphical interface that the DBA can use to configure database manager instances, databases, backup/recovery and media management. The Control Center is fully Java-enabled and can be executed as a Java application or Java applet using a standard browser.

## Connectivity Using ODBC/CLI

A PeopleTools development environment (two-tier client) establishes connectivity through these technology layers:

- PeopleTools layer.
- Microsoft ODBC layer.
- IBM ODBC Driver layer.

The following table describes the events occurring within each layer during a connectivity request.

<i>Technology Layer</i>	<i>Description of Events</i>
PeopleTools	<p>A PeopleTools application, such as Application Designer, Issues a connect to database request (SQL Connect). The PeopleTools utility PSODBC.DLL processes the request and formats the SQL request in an ODBC-compliant format and invokes the ODBC SQLConnect function. Information passed includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Database name.</li> <li>• User ID/Table Owner</li> <li>• Password</li> </ul>
Microsoft ODBC	<p>In the Microsoft ODBC Layer, ODBC.DLL reads the registry entry for the ODBC checking for the data source name (in this case, the database name). It finds this entry and loads the associated vendor driver, such as \WINDOWS\SYSTEM32\DB2CLI.DLL.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> By reading ODBC.INI, ODBC.DLL determines which of several possible vendor ODBC-compliant drivers to load. In this case, it loads the IBM driver, DB2CLI.DLL.</p>
IBM ODBC Driver	<p>In the IBM ODBC Driver Layer, DB2CLI.DLL:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• reads the Windows Environment Variable (DB2PATH) to obtain the path for the db2cae executable.</li> <li>• reads <code>\db2 connect install dir\db2\sqlldbidr\sqlldbidr</code> and <code>\db2 connect install dir\db2\sqlnudir\sqlnudir</code> to obtain database directory and node directory information.</li> <li>• formats and submits the connect request to the database server.</li> </ul>

### ***IBM CLI (Call Level Interface) on the Client***

IBM's Call Level Interface (CLI) programs, unlike embedded SQL programs, are not precompiled and bound to a database and, therefore, do not produce PLANs or Packages.

PeopleSoft uses the Call Level Interface for online client connectivity (as well as database server batch processing). Both CLI interfaces operate in a similar manner, executing SQL statements one at a time, at runtime, caching prepared statements in a package cache buffer controlled by DB2 LUW. Again, no PLAN or Package is produced, as happens in a DB2 z/OS environment using embedded SQL.

### ***Mapping Client and Server IP Addresses***

In a two-tier architecture, processes on the database server displayed using the DB2 UDB list application command can be mapped back to particular clients using the Application ID field. The ability to map a server process to a client is important since all PeopleSoft client tasks are connected using the identical table owner ID.

To map a server process back to a client, issue a DB2 UDB list application on the database server, then convert the value in the Application ID to a client's IP address. The Application ID is displayed in hexadecimal representation with each two characters representing a node in IP's dotted notation format. In the example below, Auth ID PTDVL is connected from the client at x'C65D379E', or IP Address 198.93.55.158.

<b><i>Auth ID</i></b>	<b><i>Application Name</i></b>	<b><i>Application ID</i></b>	<b><i>DB Name</i></b>
PTDVL	PSIDE.EXE	*TCPIP.C65D379E.960305015712	HR800DMO

**Note.** In the preceding example, Auth ID shows PTDVL in uppercase, even though the table owner is defined in the respective operating system as a login ID in lowercase.

---

## **Checklists and Troubleshooting**

This section discusses:

- Connectivity checklist.
- Diagnosing transaction hangs.
- DB2DIAG.LOG.
- ODBC Trace.
- db2trc.
- DB2 UDB Help facility.

### **Connectivity Checklist**

This checklist is provided to help diagnose online connectivity problems.

- On PeopleSoft signon dialog box, the database name must be specified in upper case.
- On PeopleSoft signon dialog box, the user/password is case-sensitive (examine table PSOPRDEFN).
- Are the ConnectID and ConnectPSWD specified properly in the PeopleTools Configuration Manager?
- Is the DB2 LUW database running? To check it:  
`Database Server, type "db2 connect to database-name"`
- Does the PS.PSDBOWNER table contain the database name (in uppercase) and ownerid (in lowercase)? It should contain 1 row only. If it contains more than 1 row, drop it and recreate it using `/sql/dbowner.sql`.
- Can you ping the server? This will test to see if the network is operating successfully.
- Can you connect to the database using the client Command Line Processor?
- Did you specify an ODBC data source for your database? You can do this with CAE's CLI-ODBC Administrator.
- DB2 Connect on Windows requires that the user ID, which is cataloging databases and nodes, be an Administrator (not just a user with administrative authorization). The Administrator's user ID must not exceed 8 characters.

## Diagnosing Transaction Hangs

One way to check to see whether the SQL is hung or if it is still executing due to a long unit of work or bad access path is to use DB2 LUW's Snapshot Monitor. Other diagnostic tools include vmstat and iostat to determine server CPU and I/O activity.

The "Snapshot Monitor" requires that database monitor switches be turned on. Unfortunately, these switches must be turned on before a process is started.

To use Snapshot Monitor:

1. Logon to the Command Line Processor on the server.
2. Issue the following statements:
  - `db2 update monitor switches using bufferpool on`
  - `db2 update monitor switches using table on`
  - `db2 update monitor switches using uow on`
3. Allow statistics to compile.
4. Issue the following statement(s):  
`db2 "get snapshot for database on hr910dmo" > snapsht1.dbx`
5. Wait a minute to allow additional statistics to compile.
6. Issue the following statement:  
`db2 "get snapshot for database on hr910dmo" > snapsht2.dbx`



7. Compare the two files and identify any changes, such as:

- Bufferpool logical reads
- Bufferpool physical reads
- Commit Statistics
- Dynamic SQL Statements Attempted
- Rows Selected

If parameter values are the same for both snapshots, then the transaction may be hung. If the most logical explanation is that the transaction is hung, perform this step to retry the transaction:

```
db2 force application (agent-id)
```

For example:

```
db2 force application (3265)    (parenthesis required)
```

---

**Note.** If an application is terminated using the above "force" command, the user will have to reconnect to the database server.

---

## DB2DIAG.LOG

The *instance-owner-home-dir/sqllib/db2dump/db2diag.log* file contains diagnosis information related to instance, utility, and connectivity problems. The full name of the directory may also be obtained by issuing a `get dbg cfg` command in the command line processor on the database server, then checking the `DIAGPATH` configuration setting. This file contains diagnosis information related to instance, utility, and connectivity problems.

## ODBC Trace

Go to Control Panel. Open ODBC Administrator, select the appropriate Data Source, and then press Options. Select the ODBC Trace option.

## db2trc

If the problem is repeatable, you can use `db2trc` to trace the database internal logic. Although this trace is mostly used by DB2 UDB service personnel, it may give you some clues. To obtain the help information of `db2trc`, type the following command:

```
db2trc -h
```

The following is a simple example of how to use `db2trc` to obtain DB2 LUW internal tracing information:

```
db2trc -l 1000000 on
[repeat the failing process]
db2trc flw > trc.flw
db2trc fmt > trc.fmt
db2trc off
```

## DB2 UDB Help Facility

DB2 UDB Message Reference can give you detailed information about your SQL error-code. A quick way to get similar information online is to do db2 "? *sqlcode*". For example:

```
db2 "? Sql11042"
```

---

**Note.** DB2 UDB requires a 4-digit error code suffix.

---

## Monitoring Module Information

For select PeopleTools "modules", the system captures the Module identifier and stores it in the DB2 ACCOUNTING field, which you can query as part of your typical performance monitoring. This can help you to associate transactions with a particular module when monitoring or troubleshooting.

PeopleTools populates the ACCOUNTING field as follows:

<i>Module</i>	<i>ACCOUNTING Value</i>
PIA transactions	PeopleSoft application component name
Integration Broker	service operation name
Application Engine	'PSAE'

You can use the GET SNAPSHOT command to view samples of the information passed per module type.

## Appendix D

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Informix

This appendix discusses:

- Database terminology.
- Dbspace strategy.
- Database server directory structure.
- Troubleshooting model.

---

## Database Terminology

PeopleSoft uses the following technical naming conventions for Informix databases:

<b>Database</b>	A set of data tables accessed and managed as a group. Informix manages the database at the system level.
<b>Informix Database Server</b>	A cooperating set of host processes and shared memory capable of managing one or more databases—a running online engine. Corresponds to a specific INFORMIXSERVER value and a matching entry in the sqlhosts file. May contain many databases each with its own catalog.
<b>Object Set</b>	A collection of database objects. PeopleSoft uses tables, indexes. An object set corresponds to the PeopleSoft owner ID.

---

## Working With Dbspaces

This section discusses:

- Dbspace strategy.
- Dbspace sizing.

## Dbospace Strategy

The following are some dbospace strategies to consider:

- Separate the root dbospace, physical logs, logical logs, and the temporary dbospace from one another and from the application dbospaces.

Place the root dbospace, logical log, and physical log in separate dbospaces on separate disks.

- Separate certain high volume application tables to optimize performance.

A minimum configuration for production systems is four physical drives (at least one each for database files, physical logs, logical logs, and temporary area).

- Separate the dbospace for data on one drive and the dbospace for indexes on a separate drive.

## Dbospace Sizing

This section provides an overview and discusses:

- Creating dbospaces.
- Setting Buffer Pools.
- Setting the PHYSBUFF Parameter.

### ***Understanding Dbospace Size***

Informix Dynamic Server enables you to configure the page size of standard or temporary dbospace a with non-default page size. By default, PeopleTools DDL scripts set dbospaces to 4KB regardless of the default page size of the operating system.

Advantages of having larger page sizes include:

- Dbospaces of larger page sizes can support larger index key sizes.
- More items can fit in a larger index page and there will be a decreased number of levels in a btree index, which reduces index scan times.
- Increased access efficiency because with a larger page, larger numbers of rows get transferred to/from shared memory/disk, which means fewer I/O operations for data and indices.
- Longer rows can fit into a single page reduces data access times due to the decreased number of pages read per row.
- Pages large enough to fit "oversized" rows eliminate the overhead of access time for remainder pages.
- Checkpoint time is typically reduced with larger pages.

## Creating Dbspaces

PeopleTools delivers two scripts, `ptddl.sh` and `createtblspace.sh`, located in `<PS_HOME>/scripts/unix` directory. The `ptddl.sh` script is executed by the Database Creation Wizard to create dbspaces required by a PeopleTools Demo database. The `createtblspace.sh` script is executed when the database needs to be created using only two dbspaces, as in `pstable1` and `psindex1`.

The `-k <page_size>` option of the `onspaces` command sets the dbspace size. The default page size is set to 4K, however, you can set the dbspace to a custom value for your site's requirements (6K, 8K, 16K, and so on).

Example `ptddl.sh`:

```
...
onspaces -c -d <DBSPACE> -k 4 -p </path>/<DBSPACE>.dbf -o 0 -s 30000
...
onspaces -c -d PSIMAGE -k 4 -p </path>/PSIMAGE.dbf -o 0 -s 150000
...
onspaces -c -d PSIMGR -k 4 -p </path>/PSIMGR.dbf -o 0 -s 5000
...
onspaces -c -d PTWORK -k 4 -p </path>/PTWORK.dbf -o 0 -s 5000
```

Example `createtblspace.sh`:

```
...
echo "Creating dbspace pstable1..."
$INFORMIXDIR/bin/onspaces -c -d pstable1 -k 4 -p $1/pstable1.dbf -o 0 -s $2
echo "Creating dbspace psindex1..."
$INFORMIXDIR/bin/onspaces -c -d psindex1 -k 4 -p $1/psindex1.dbf -o 0 -s $3
echo "Running a Level 0 Archive..."
$INFORMIXDIR/bin/ontape -s -L 0
```

---

**Note.** You can define a different page size for temporary tables, so that they have a separate buffer pool.

---

**Note.** Rootdbs and other critical dbspaces, logdbs and physdbs, are created with the page size specified by the operating system.

---

## Setting Buffer Pools

When creating a dbspace of non-default page size it requires a corresponding `BUFFERPOOL` configuration parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file. If it is not defined, the database server automatically adds an entry in the `ONCONFIG` file, which would be based on default value of `BUFFERPOOL`.

For example, if the `onspaces` command creates a new dbspace with a 4 KB page size, the database server takes the values of `buffers`, `lrus`, `lru_min_dirty`, and `lru_max_dirty` from the `BUFFERPOOL` default line, unless there already is a `BUFFERPOOL` entry for that page size.

The following example shows how the database server would automatically add a `BUFFERPOOL` entry for 4 KB based on the default values:

```
BUFFERPOOL
default,buffers=1000,lrus=8,lru_min_dirty=50.000000,lru_max_dirty=60.000000
BUFFERPOOL
size=2K,buffers=5000,lrus=8,lru_min_dirty=50.000000,lru_max_dirty=60.000000
BUFFERPOOL
size=4K,buffers=1000,lrus=8,lru_min_dirty=50.000000,lru_max_dirty=60.000000
```

Buffer pools can also be added using the `onparams` command. For example:

```
onparams -b -g 4 -n 3000 -r 2 -x 2.0 -m 1.0
```

This example adds 3000 buffers of 4KB each with 2 LRUS with a maximum dirty of 2% and minimum dirty of 1%. When using the `onparams` utility to add a buffer pool or when adding a dbspace with a different page size with the `onspace` utility, the information specified is automatically appended to the `ONCONFIG` file and new values are specified using the `BUFFERPOOL` keyword.

You cannot change the values by editing the `onconfig` file. If you need to resize or delete an existing buffer pool, you must restart the database server and then run `onparams` again.

Buffer pools that are added while the database server is running go into virtual memory, not into resident memory. Only those buffer pool entries that are specified in the `ONCONFIG` file at startup go into resident memory, depending on the availability of the memory you are using.

### ***Setting the PHYSBUFF Parameter***

It is recommended to set the `PHYSBUFF` configuration parameter to at least 128 kilobytes. If the database server is configured to use `RTO_SERVER_RESTART`, set the `PHYSBUFF` configuration parameter to at least 512 kilobytes. Setting `PHYSBUFF` to a lower value could impact transaction performance and will result in a performance warning during server initialization.

---

## **Database Server Directory Structure**

The environment variable `$INFORMIXDIR` points to the directory where Informix is installed on your machine; normally this is set to `/usr/INFORMIX`. The standard Informix directory structure is built under `INFORMIX` directory by the Informix install process.

The standard Informix architecture uses the "Two-Task Model." In this architecture, when a user connects to the database server a network thread is created to handle the network processing for that user.

Each Informix server instance consists of the following pieces:

- At least eight database processes that operate the database.
- At least three shared memory segments, through which the database processes communicate.
- The `$INFORMIXDIR/etc/sqlhosts` file holds networking parameters for each accessible server instance.

Entries include server name, network protocol, host name and tcp-ip service.

- The `$INFORMIXDIR/etc/$ONCONFIG` file.

This file primarily holds shared memory configuration parameters for the local server instance. These include the number of buffers, number of locks, size of the initial shared memory segment, and so on. The "onconfig" file also includes pointers to the root dbspace, the temporary dbspace, and the physical log dbspace, as well as the names of the backup tape devices. By convention, these files are often given a name such as `onconfig.inf11`, where `inf11` is the name of the server. This is helpful when managing multiple server instances on one host.

- Database "chunks."

Hold the data stored in the database. Under UNIX, these may be either "raw" or "cooked" files. In either case they should be stored in a common directory, with links pointing to their physical locations, if necessary.

**See Also**

*Administrator's Guide for Informix Dynamic Server*

---

## Troubleshooting Model

This section discusses some steps you can take to diagnose system signon problems. Understanding basic operations and process flow is essential when you are troubleshooting connectivity errors. Use the following model as a reference for this section.

1. Test terminal connection.

Try using TELNET, or a similar network utility, to get a terminal connection to your database server. If this succeeds, you probably have a problem with the way Informix-Connect or Informix is set up. Check to see if the Informix database server is active. If Step 2 fails, then the problem is within the networking layer.

2. Consult your networking experts.

The problem has been isolated to something within the network layer. Try to isolate the network problem. Can you log on to other servers? Are other terminals still able to connect? Try lowering level network diagnostics, if they exist





## Appendix E

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Oracle

This appendix discusses how to:

- Work with Oracle connectivity.
- Monitor PeopleSoft client database connections.
- Set the number of temporary tables.
- Use locally managed tablespaces.
- Work with Oracle Consumer Groups.
- Implement Transparent Database Encryption.
- Protect and Manage PeopleSoft applications with Database Vault.
- Work With Oracle 11g security features.
- Work with Transparent Application Failover.
- Implement Oracle Active Data Guard.

---

## Working With Oracle Connectivity

This section discusses:

- NET/10g/11g.
- PeopleSoft servers and the Oracle connection string.
- Open cursors.

### NET10g/11g

NET10g/11g offers peer-to-peer connectivity and a multi-protocol interchange (MPIC). The product is installed as multiple elements including:

- Transparent Network Substrate (TNS).
- Oracle Protocol Adapter.

- Multi-protocol interchange (MPIC).

NET10g/11g uses the configuration files SQLNET.ORA and TNSNAMES.ORA, which can be created using a system editor, or with the NET10g/11g Assistant.

## PeopleSoft Servers and the Oracle Connection String

The format of the Oracle connect string used to connect to the database is *userid/password@service\_name* for all PeopleSoft processes, including online, batch, and application server processes.

This makes setup and configuration easy for platform configurations that can support PeopleSoft batch server processes or application server processes. However, performance for the batch processes and application server processes on a server that also functions as the database server is slightly degraded, due to the overhead involved in routing through SQL\*NET.

PeopleSoft provides a configuration parameter, UseLocalOracleDB, for you to indicate which connect string to use. You set the parameter while configuring the application server or the Process Scheduler in the Database Options section.

### Database Options

When configuring an application server or the Process Scheduler, you can modify the parameters in the Database Options section if desired.

```
Values for config section - Database Options
UseLocalOracleDB=0
;ORACLE_SID=
EnableDBMonitoring=0
```

Do you want to change any values (y/n)? [n]:

Following are descriptions of the Database Options parameters:

Parameter	Description
UseLocalOracleDB	<p>Indicates if the PeopleSoft database that you are connecting to is in a Local Oracle SID. The default is 0, meaning that the database you are connecting to is remote. The resulting connect string is in the following format: <i>userid/password@service_name</i>.</p> <p>If you set this to 1, then the system used the following connect string when attempting to connect to the target database: <i>userid/password</i>. This implies a local connection.</p> <p>If you decide to use UseLocalOracleDB, then you must add the BEQUEAH_DETACH=YES parameter to the SQLNET.ORA file of the machine running the application server or Process Scheduler servers. This enables Oracle to clean up any orphaned database processes spawned on behalf of PeopleSoft transactions left over from aborted transactions.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> On Microsoft Windows, UseLocalOracleDB is not supported when using a 32-bit client connecting to a 64-bit database.</p>

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Oracle_SID	Indicates for a Local Oracle connection only, the name of the Local ORACLE_SID to which you want the PeopleSoft processes to connect. Many sites set up more than one ORACLE_SID on their servers. This parameter gives you the ability to choose which ORACLE_SID you wish to connect to when connecting in Local mode.
EnableDBMonitoring	This parameter enables or disables DB monitoring of three-tier connections. This feature is covered later in this chapter.  See <a href="#">Appendix E, "Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Oracle," Monitoring PeopleSoft Database Connections, page 298.</a>

The following tables describe the relationship between the UseLocalOracleDB parameter and the ORACLE\_SID environment variable.

<b>UseLocalOracleDB Flag</b>	<b>The target database is local</b>	<b>The target database is remote</b>
0 is the default setting  Internally the system will generate the following connect string when attaching to the target database: UID/PW@TNS_ALIAS	Access will be made via TNSNAMES	Access will be made via TNSNAMES
1 is the setting you use if you intend to use a Local Oracle DB.  Internally the system will generate the following connect string when attaching to the target database: UID/PW (Note the omission of the TNS_ALIAS.)	Access will default to the Local DB as designated by the ORACLE_SID environment variable  If the ORACLE environment variable TWO_TASK is set to a valid TNS_ALIAS, then this would also work. The existence of the TWO_TASK environment variable is in effect overriding the generated connect string.	To choose this option does not make sense if it is your intention to use a Local Oracle DB.  This combination will work if the ORACLE environment variable TWO_TASK is set to a valid TNS_ALIAS. You are in effect overriding the generated connect string.

<b>ORACLE_SID Parameter</b>	<b>UseLocalOracleDB Flag</b>	<b>UseLocalOracleDB Flag</b>
This parameter is delivered in the application server and Process Scheduler configuration file commented out. This indicates that the default setting is however the current ORACLE_SID environment variable is set.	0  The target database is remote	1  The target database is local  The ORACLE_SID parameter is not enabled (commented out) therefore ORACLE_SID for this process will default to the current ORACLE_SID environment variable.

<b>ORACLE_SID Parameter</b>	<b>UseLocalOracleDB Flag</b>	<b>UseLocalOracleDB Flag</b>
ORACLE_SID=xxxxxxx where xxxxxxxx equals a valid ORACLE_SID for the server that this process is running on.	If UseLocalOracleDB Flag is set to zero, then enabling ORACLE_SID is invalid since you are indicating a remote connection, the value associated with the ORACLE_SID parameter will be ignored.	If UseLocalOracleDB Flag is set to one, and ORACLE_SID is enabled, the value associated with the ORACLE_SID parameter will be exported as an operating system environment variable thus overriding the current ORACLE_SID environment variable.

**See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleCode Language Reference*, "Meta-SQL Elements," Meta-SQL Reference

**Open Cursors**

The minimum number of OPEN\_CURSORS required for PeopleSoft applications on an Oracle database is 1000.

---

**Monitoring PeopleSoft Database Connections**

This section provides an overview of PeopleSoft database connections and discusses how to:

- Enable database connection monitoring.
- Track PeopleSoft database connections by PeopleSoft User ID.
- Monitor MODULE and ACTION.

**Understanding PeopleSoft Database Connections**

PeopleTools provides the ability to monitor connections to the database server from Windows workstations (two-tier and three-tier connections) and browser connections. Some possible uses of monitoring database connections include system-wide troubleshooting, performance monitoring, "chargeback" accounting, and security audits for your system.

Administrators can obtain specific information regarding the user and the associated transaction when a user is connected to the database. A PeopleSoft system has many clients and user sessions connecting to one application server (directly, or indirectly through the web server), with only the application server maintaining connections to the database server.

Suppose one of your users has executed an extremely inefficient query that severely impacts the rest of the system. A Database Administrator would want to identify that user and take appropriate action. However, without an ability to monitor users you would probably have to terminate the physical connection, which would mean dropping the connection between the application server and the database server, which could potentially affect hundreds of users.

However, while only the application server maintains the actual database connection, PeopleTools records various information associated with each user connection so that client information can be monitored. Monitoring client information enables an administrator to collect information from two-tier connections, three-tier connections, and browser connections alike.

Associated with each connection and transaction is the following set of user information:

- PeopleSoft user ID
- OSUserName
- MachineName
- AppServerDomainName
- ProgramExecutable

This information allows the system to associate activity on the database server with a particular workstation and user. This information is stored in the `CLIENT_INFO` column of the `V$SESSION` dynamic view.

Administrators are also often interested in compiling performance metrics based on the system usage per application. For this type of monitoring the PeopleSoft system populates the `MODULE` and `ACTION` fields of the `V$SESSION` dynamic view.

Oracle products, such as Oracle Enterprise Manager and Oracle Audit Vault use information stored in the `CLIENT_IDENTIFIER` column of `V$SESSION`.

## Enabling Database Connection Monitoring

Database monitoring is always enabled for:

- COBOL programs.
- SQR programs.
- Processes run through Process Scheduler.
- Two-tier Windows workstation connections.

For connections handled by the application server (browser and three-tier Windows connections) the PeopleSoft systems administrator has the option to enable this feature by setting the `EnableDBMonitoring` parameter to '1' in `PSADMIN` or the application server configuration file (`PSAPPSRV.CFG`).

## Tracking PeopleSoft Database Connections by PeopleSoft User ID

This section provides an overview of tracking database connections by user ID, a legend for interpreting illustrations, and discusses the following:

- Oracle process connections.
- Two-tier Windows client connections.
- Application server process connections.
- Three-tier Windows client connections.

- Browser (PIA) connections.
- Process Scheduler connections.
- SQR connections.
- COBOL connections
- Windows and browser connections multithreaded through the application server.

### ***Understanding Tracking PeopleSoft Database Connections by PeopleSoft User ID***

To view the information associated with client connections, sign on to SQLPlus for the appropriate SID and execute the following SQL Query:

---

**Note.** This is a sample query that ties the OS PID and PeopleSoft CLIENT\_INFO to the process connected to the Oracle database.

---

```
set linesize 200
select p.spid,
       substr(s.osuser,1,10) osuser,
       substr(s.username,1,8) username,
       substr(s.program,1,24) program,
       substr(s.client_info,1,60) ClientInfo
from v$session s, v$process p
where s.paddr=p.addr
and s.osuser is not null
order by s.osuser
/
```

The result of this query will differ somewhat per connection type. The following sections describe the information returned for various scenarios.

### ***Legend***

<b><i>ID</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>
JZARATE (uppercase)	NETWORK login ID for Windows workstation.
JZARATE123199	Windows client MACHINENAME.
TMJONES (uppercase)	NETWORK login ID for Windows workstation.
TMJONES110299	Windows client MACHINENAME.
JRSMITH (uppercase)	NETWORK login ID for Windows workstation.
JRSMITH031198	Windows client MACHINENAME.
PREILLY (uppercase)	NETWORK login ID for Windows workstation.
PREILLY060499	Windows client MACHINENAME.
PT844P01	PeopleSoft schema (PS SYSADM ID or Access ID).

<i>ID</i>	<i>Description</i>
PT81	Tuxedo domain name.
PTDMO, VP1, and PS	PeopleSoft user IDs used to signon to the database from the various clients.
oracle (lower case)	Owner ID of all of the Oracle processes.
certora (lowercase)	UNIX login ID of the PeopleSoft administrator starting the application server and Process Scheduler.

### **Oracle Process Connections**

Execution of the sample query noted above shows the Oracle Processes for the SID in which PeopleSoft database PT844P01 resides and this SQL\*Plus session used to monitor the client info. There is no client info because no PeopleSoft client connections currently exist.

Oracle Processes and this SQLPLUS session are used to monitor the client info for network user JZARATE.

```
SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)
```

7 rows selected.

### **Two-Tier Client Connections**

For the two-tier connection, you can expect to monitor the following client information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,,%executable%,"
```

Adding to what was previously displayed, this is a two-tier client connection from workstation TMJONES110299, Peoplesoft OPRID PS, executing PSIDE.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

8 rows selected.

```

### ***Application Server Process Connections***

For the application server connection, you can retrieve the following information from the database:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,%tuxedo_domain%,%executable%,"
```

Adding to what was previously displayed, this shows the application server process connections for Domain PT81, from server st-sun01, using UNIX login ID certora, with the application server processes connecting to the database as user ID PTDMO.

Keep in mind that each application server process maintains an individual connection to the database. If your application server is up and running, you should see the following information after executing the session query:



```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-
sun01,PT81,PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-
sun01,PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-
sun01,PT81,PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

11 rows selected.

```

### ***Three-Tier Connections – Windows Workstations***

For the three-tier connections, you can retrieve the following client information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,%tuxedo_domain%,%executable%, ""
```

When the three-tier workstation is connected, then you should see the application server process that is executing the transaction for the client. For example, the PSAPPSRV server process handles the majority of the requests. Let's assume for this example that the PSAPPSRV is processing the current client request.

Adding to what was previously displayed, this is a three-tier workstation JRSMITH031198, signing on as PSOFT with a user ID of VP1, to Domain PT81 and utilizing two application server processes (PSAPPSRV).

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15395     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-⇒
sun01,PT81,
PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

11 rows selected.

```

### **Browser Connections – (PIA)**

For browser connections (PIA connections), you can retrieve the following client information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,%tuxedo_domain%,%executable%, " "
```

When the user is connected, you should see the application server process that is executing the transaction for the browser. For example, the PSAPPSRV handles the large queries executed by user connections. Let's assume for this example that the PSAPPSRV is processing the current client request.

Adding to what was previously displayed, this is a PIA client, PREILLY060499 (connecting through a web browser), signing on as PSOFT/PTDMO, to Domain PT81 and utilizing two application server processes (PSAPPSRV).

From a monitoring perspective, there is no difference between a three-tier windows connection and a PIA browser connection.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15395     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,
PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

11 rows selected.

```

### ***Process Scheduler Connections***

For the Process Scheduler connection, you can expect to see the following information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,,%executable%,"
```

Adding to what was previously displayed, this is the Process Scheduler running, started by OSUSER certora, from server st-sun01, logged in as PSOFT with a user ID of PTDMO.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15435     certora PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15402     certora PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,
PT81,PSSAMSRV,
8364      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)

8366      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)

8368      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)

8370      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)

8372      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)

8374      oracle                                oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

12 rows selected.

### **SQR Connections**

For the SQR program connections, you can expect to see the following information:

```
"%oprid%,%spid%"
```

Adding to what was previously displayed, this is an SQR report run from the workstation JZARATE123199, submitted from the user ID PS, and having a PID of 15449.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15449     JZARATE  PT844P01 sqrw.exe                        PS,15449
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,
PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,
PT81,PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

13 rows selected.

```

### **COBOL Connections**

For the COBOL program connections, you can expect to see the following information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,,%executable%,"
```

Adding to what was previously displayed, this a COBOL program PTPTEEDIT, run from the workstation JZARATE123199, submitted from PeopleSoft user ID PS.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15449     JZARATE  PT844P01 sqrw.exe                        PS,329
15451     JZARATE  PT844P01 PTPTEdit.exe                          PS,JZARATE,JZARATE123199,,
PTPTEDIT,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-→
sun01,PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

14 rows selected.

### **Windows Workstation and Browser Connections Multithreading Through the Application Server**

For multithreaded connections, you can retrieve the following client information:

```
"%oprid%,%osusername%,%machinename%,%tuxedo_domain%,%executable%,%"
```

The application server multithreads incoming three-tier Windows or PIA browser connections through the application server processes already connected to the database. The next several examples illustrate a continual changing of the monitoring information displayed through the application server "thread" based on user activity and incoming requests.

Adding to what was previously displayed, accessing the database again from the three-tier Windows workstation JRSMITH031198 reflects a change in the user ID VP1 and client machine name for the both application server processes.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15449     JZARATE  PT844P01 sqrw.exe                        PS,329
15451     JZARATE  PT844P01 PTPTEdit.exe                          PS,JZARATE,JZARATE123199,,
PTPTEDIT,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-=>
sun01,PT81,
PSSAMSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

14 rows selected.

Adding to what was previously displayed, accessing the database from the browser on machine PREILLY060499 illustrates a change in the user ID PTDMO and client machine name for one of the application server processes.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15449     JZARATE  PT844P01 sqrw.exe                        PS,329
15451     JZARATE  PT844P01 PTPTEdit.exe                          PS,JZARATE,JZARATE123199,,
PTPTEDIT,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,
PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

14 rows selected.

Adding to what was previously displayed, accessing the database from the three-tier Windows workstation JRSMITH031198 reflects a change in the user ID VP1 and client machine name for one of the application server processes.



```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE
15449     JZARATE  PT844P01 sqrw.exe                        PS,329
15451     JZARATE  PT844P01 PTPTEdit.exe                          PS,JZARATE,JZARATE123199,,
PTPTEDIT,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,
PT81,PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,,PREILLY060499,
PT81,PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

14 rows selected.

Adding to what was previously displayed, the following illustrates accessing the database from the three-tier Windows workstation JRSMITH031198 executing a functional process that requires use of all of the application server processes. This is reflected in the change in the user ID VP1, and client machine name for all of the application server processes.

---

**Note.** Because the SQR program has completed running, there is no SQR information available.

---

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15387     TMJONES  PT844P01 pside.exe                                PS,TMJONES,TMJONES110299,,
pside.exe,
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE                                =>

15451     JZARATE  PT844P01 PTPTEDIT.exe                                PS,JZARATE,JZARATE123199,,
PTPTEDIT,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
15395     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
15409     certora  PT844P01 PSSAMSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSSAMSRV,
15402     certora  PT844P01 PSAPPSRV@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) VP1,,JRSMITH031198,PT81,
PSAPPSRV,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

13 rows selected.

Adding to what was previously displayed, the application server has been shut down and the COBOL process PTPTEDIT has completed. All clients have logged off. The Process Scheduler is still active.

```

SQL> /
SPID      OSUSER  USERNAME PROGRAM                                CLIENTINFO
-----
15276     JZARATE  PT844P01 SQLPLUSW.EXE                                PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
15435     certora  PT844P01 psprcsrv@st-sun01 (TNS V1-V3) PTDMO,certora,st-sun01,,
psprcsrv,
8364      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (PMON)
8366      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (DBW0)
8368      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (LGWR)
8370      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (CKPT)
8372      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (SMON)
8374      oracle   oracle@st-sun01 (RECO)

```

8 rows selected.

## Monitoring PeopleSoft MODULE and ACTION Information

In addition to the CLIENT\_INFO field, PeopleTools also populates the MODULE and ACTION fields of the V\$SESSION and V\$SQL dynamic views. This provides increased monitoring capabilities if you use Oracle performance monitoring utilities, including:

- Oracle Enterprise Manager
- Oracle Database Resource Manager
- Oracle Automatic Workload Repository

By monitoring MODULE and ACTION values you can:

- Provide more specific PeopleSoft information for several Oracle performance monitoring tools.
- View and analyze performance and system resource usage for selected PeopleSoft application modules.
- Write custom SQL to aggregate PeopleSoft performance and system usage information based on the MODULE, ACTION, and CLIENT\_INFO values.

Depending on the type of connection, or the PeopleTools feature being used, the system populates the MODULE and ACTION fields with the information described in the following table.

<b>PeopleSoft Technology</b>	<b>MODULE Value</b>	<b>ACTION Value</b>
application server (browser connections)	PeopleSoft component name	PeopleSoft page name
Integration Broker	service operation name	PeopleCode event
Application Engine	'PSAE'	Application Engine program name

Each SQL statement in V\$SQL has a MODULE field populated based on the MODULE field of the session that first submitted the SQL. You can write additional SQL to obtain valuable performance information aggregated based on the values of these fields.

Keeping in mind that the usage of the MODULE and ACTION values is intended mainly to be used within the context of Oracle performance monitoring utilities, to become familiar with the type of information provided you can issue SQL queries, such as the following samples:

```
select module, action, client_info from v$session;
```

or

```
set linesize 200
select p.spid,
       substr(s.osuser,1,10) osuser,
       substr(s.username,1,8) username,
       substr(s.program,1,24) program,
       substr(s.client_info,1,60) ClientInfo,
       substr(s.module,1,48) module,
       substr(s.action,1,32) action
from v$session s, v$process p
where s.paddr=p.addr
and s.osuser is not null
order by s.osuser;
```

## Exposing PeopleSoft User Information Through the CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER Column

Additional monitoring information was included enhancing the availability of PeopleSoft user information in Oracle products like Oracle Audit Vault and Oracle Enterprise Manager. PeopleSoft user ID information is also stored in the CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER column of the V\$SESSION table.

The CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER column contains only the user ID, whereas the CLIENT\_INFO column also contains the user ID value, but it is typically accompanied by other user information, like machine name for example. In some cases, a monitoring application may only need the user ID information. To get this information from the CLIENT\_INFO column would require programmatic transformation and parsing of the CLIENT\_INFO string. Displaying only the user ID in the CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER column, simplifies the retrieval of the user ID by products like Oracle Audit Vault and Oracle Enterprise Manager. No further transformation or parsing of the string is required.

Database administrators can also retrieve the information directly from the database with queries similar to the following:

```
SQL> select module, client_identifier, client_info from v$session where module =
'pside.exe';
```

MODULE	CLIENT_IDENTIFIER	CLIENT_INFO
pside.exe	QEDMO	QEDMO,bng2,BENG-PC,,pside.exe,

The example above displays the User ID information in both the CLIENT\_INFO and the CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER columns. The latter can be used by Oracle Audit Vault. The user ID information can be retrieved from the following connection types:

- two-tier connections.
- three-tier connections.
- programs run through Process Scheduler.

The following sections provide sample queries and results.

### ***Example: Working with CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER Information and Three-Tier Connections***

The following query displays the user ID information associated with a three-tier connections:

```
SQL> select module, client_identifier, client_info from v$session where client_i
dentifier like 'QEDMO%';
```

MODULE		
PSAPPSRV@sp-lnx07.peoplesoft.com (TNS V1-V3)		
CLIENT_IDENTIFIER		
QEDMO		
CLIENT_INFO		
QEDMO,,10.138.230.162,FS850U02,PSAPPSRV,		

In this example the user ID information is available under CLIENT\_INT0 and CLIENT\_IDENTIFI0r, however CLIENT\_IDENTIFI0R only stores the user ID information while CLIENT\_INFO stores other information, like the client connection details.

**Example: Working with CLIENT\_IDENTIFI0R Information and Process Scheduler**

It is also possible to monitor the user ID for programs running through Process Scheduler. In the following example an Application Engine program ran through Process Scheduler using the user ID QESS. By running the following query, it is possible to display the user ID information.

```
SELECT module, client_identifier, client_info
FROM v$session
WHERE client_identifier like 'QESS%';
```

MODULE	CLIENT_IDENTIFI0R	CLIENT_INFO
PSAE	QESS	QESS,,sp-lnx07.peoplesoft.com,,PSAESRV,

## Setting the Number of Temporary Tables

Normally you will leave the number of temporary tables set to the default of three. You may need to change this setting for optimal performance, depending on various aspects of your implementation, including account transaction volumes, benchmark numbers for the current hardware and database platform, as well as your service-level requirements. Use the following procedure if you need to adjust the number of temporary tables to improve performance in your implementation.

To set the number of temporary tables:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options.
2. Set the Temp Table Instances (Total) and Temp Table Instances (Online) fields to the desired settings.

**Note.** Temp Table Instances (Total) should always be set to the same values as Temp Table Instances (Online), unless you have been instructed otherwise in the application documentation.

3. Save your changes.

**Note.** The total number of instances generated consists of the allocations specified on the PeopleTools Options page plus the allocations specified for each individual Application Engine program.

**See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Engine*  
*PeopleSoft Red Paper "PeopleSoft Batch Performance Tuning on Oracle"*

## Using Locally Managed Tablespaces

PeopleSoft supports the latest Oracle locally managed tablespace (LMT) syntax to control segment space allocation. A Locally Managed Tablespace (LMT) is a tablespace that manages its own extents maintaining a bitmap in each data file to keep track of the free or used status of blocks in that data file. Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to a block or a group of blocks. When the extents are allocated or freed for reuse, Oracle changes the bitmap values to show the new status of the blocks. These changes do not generate rollback information because they do not update tables in the data dictionary (except for tablespace quota information), unlike the default method of Dictionary - Managed Tablespaces.

Benefits of using LMTs include:

- Locally managed tablespaces do not record free space in the data dictionary, it reduces contention on these tables.
- Local management of extents automatically tracks adjacent free space, eliminating the need to coalesce free extents.
- Avoids recursive space management operations, which can occur in dictionary-managed tablespaces if consuming or releasing space in an extent results in another operation that consumes or releases space in a rollback segment or data dictionary table.
- Sizes of extents that are managed locally can be determined automatically by the system. Alternatively, all extents can have the same size in a locally managed tablespace.
- Changes to the extent bitmaps do not generate rollback information because they do not update tables in the data dictionary (except for special cases such as tablespace quota information).
- Reduced fragmentation No coalescing required.

Specifically, the following scripts have been modified to use this syntax: UTLSPACE.SQL, PTUPGDDL.SQL, and xxDDL.SQL. (Where 'xx' is the product code).

For example:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PSINDEX DATAFILE '/u04/oradata/<SID>/psindex.dbf' SIZE 64M
EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL AUTOALLOCATE
SEGMENT SPACE MANAGEMENT AUTO
;
```

The following guidelines intend to help you determine which tables to migrate to the appropriate 'LARGE' tablespaces based on table size during the move to production. If you change tablespace assignments, you first need to run SETSPACE.SQR to synchronize the PeopleSoft metadata with the changes made to the Oracle catalog with respect to any new table space assignments. Also, we recommend that you use LMTs with 1M extent size and ASSM for large objects (> 10000 blocks) and 128K extent size for smaller objects (<10000 blocks). To determine the size of any object (table or index) in blocks > 10000, execute the following SQL statement:

```
select segment_name, tablespace_name, blocks
from user_extents
where blocks > 10000
GROUP BY segment_name
/
```

The following is an example of a large tablespace:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PSLARGE DATAFILE '/u04/oradata/<SID>/pslarge.dbf' SIZE 64M
EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL UNIFORM SIZE 1M
SEGMENT SPACE MANAGEMENT AUTO;
```

The following is an example of a non-large tablespace:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE PSSMALL DATAFILE '/u04/oradata/<SID>/pssmall.dbf' SIZE 64M
EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL UNIFORM SIZE 128K
SEGMENT SPACE MANAGEMENT AUTO;
```

---

## Working With Oracle Consumer Groups

PeopleTools enables you to map predefined PeopleSoft resource groups to Oracle resource consumer groups that you create, specifically for use with PeopleSoft. Using Oracle Database Resource Manager features, database administrators can monitor and manage the database resource consumption of PeopleTools executables and optimize system performance.

For example, assume that occasionally long running queries run through PeopleSoft Query degrade the performance of the entire system by consuming large amounts of the available database resources. PSQRYSRV.EXE, the application server process dedicated to handling processing requests submitted by PeopleSoft Query, is mapped to the PeopleSoft Resource Group, QUERY SERVER, by default. By creating a 'PsQuery' consumer group in your Oracle system, you can limit the percentage of CPU processing available to PSQRYSRV.EXE. If you limit the CPU usage for PSQRYSRV.EXE to 10 percent, for example, other high-priority processing on the system will continue to have system resources available, while PSQRYSRV.EXE is limited only to its allotted 10 percent of CPU processing.

To take advantage of mapping PeopleSoft resource groups to Oracle resource groups, you need to:

- Review the delivered, predefined PeopleSoft resource groups.
- Determine areas of your PeopleSoft system where you'd like to implement control over CPU usage.
- Create the appropriate resource plan and consumer groups in your Oracle database.
- Map PeopleSoft resource groups to the consumer groups you created.

### See Also

*Oracle Database Administrator's Guide: "Using the Database Resource Manager"*

## Reviewing PeopleSoft Resource Groups

The following table describes the delivered PeopleSoft resource groups and the PeopleTools executables they contain.

---

**Note.** How the executables are grouped is not configurable. For example, you can't further subdivide nor combine the delivered PeopleSoft resource groups.

---

<b><i>PeopleSoft Resource Name</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Mapped Executable(s)</i></b>
ANALYTICAL SERVER	Executables required by the PeopleSoft Analytic Calculation Engine.	PSANALYTICSRV
APPLICATION ENGINE	Executables required by the PeopleSoft Application Engine.	PSAESRV PSAE
APPLICATION SERVER	Executables required by core application server processing.	PSAPPSRV PSSAMSRV PSPPMSPRV PSPRCSRVS
COBOL	Executables required for running COBOL programs.	PSRUN
DATA MOVER	Executables required for running Data Mover.	PSDMTX PSDMT



<b>PeopleSoft Resource Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mapped Executable(s)</b>
MISCELLANEOUS	Executables required for running various PeopleTools executables, from PeopleSoft Configuration Manager to Verity's spider program. These executables are categorized into this category because they are typically used infrequently and/or do not consume enough system resources to warrant their own resource group.	JAVAGEN MKSYD MKVDK PRCSADM PSBITEST PSBOERUN PSCBLUCVRT PSCBLUCVRTZ PSCFG PSCRCONV PSCRRUN PSCVTRPT PSDAEMON P SDOCCGI PSEMAGENTSERVICE PSEMAIL PSIDE PSMAIL PSMBSRV PSMCFLOG PSMONITORSRV PSMSFADMIN PSMSFATTACH PSMSFATTRIBUTES PSNTSRV PSNVS PSOLAP PSOSE PSPALDBG PSPALXML PSPSADM PSQED PSREAPER PSREFRESHENGINE PSRELEASEINFO PSRENSRV PSSRCHSRV

<b>PeopleSoft Resource Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mapped Executable(s)</b>
		PSSVCHARNESS PSTAAT PSTRANS PSUNICONV PSUQSRV PSWATCHSRV PSXFR REAPER REGSVR32 SQLAPI TRC2API UBBGEN VSPIDER
PUB SUB	Executables required for processing and handling the Integration Broker implementation.	PSBRKDSP PSBRKHND PSSUBHND PSSUBDSP PSPUBHND PSPUBDSP PSDBGPRC PSDBGSRV PSDSTSRV PSMSGDSP PSMSGHND PSMSTPRC
QUERY SERVER	Executables required to process PeopleSoft Query requests.	PSQRYSRV
QUICK SERVER	Executables required for running SQR for PeopleSoft requests.	PSQCKSRV
SQR	Executables required for running SQR for PeopleSoft requests.	PSSQR
VERITY	Executables required for running core Verity search functionality.	PSVERITYEXEC PSVERITYPIPEEXEC

## Determining Where to Implement a Consumer Group

While PeopleTools delivers a set of predefined resource groups that you can map to Oracle consumer groups, you only need to create consumer groups for the resource groups where you need to introduce control of system resource usage.

For example, if COBOL and PeopleSoft Analytic Calculation Engine processing are the only areas of your PeopleSoft system that cause unwanted resource usage, then you only need to create Oracle consumer groups to map to ANALYTIC SERVER and COBOL PeopleSoft resource groups.

## Creating an Oracle Resource Plan and Consumer Groups

This section describes the process of defining the resource plan, consumer groups, and plan directives to correspond to the PeopleSoft resource groups.

To create the plan, groups, and directives, you can use the tool of your choice, such as SQL Plus, Oracle SQL Developer, or the Resource Manager interface in Oracle Enterprise Manager.

---

**Note.** This section covers information specific to PeopleSoft. It does not cover all topics related to Oracle Database Resource Manager. This documentation assumes that you have read and understand the information contained in Oracle Database Administrator's Guide related to Oracle Database Resource Manager.

---

To create a resource plan, consumer group(s), and directives:

1. Connect to the Oracle SID containing the PeopleSoft schema.
2. Create a pending area.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA( );
```

3. Create a resource plan, with a name of your choice.

For example:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
COMMENT => 'Resource plan/method for PeopleSoft Users Sessions');
```

4. Create the desired consumer groups.

Create the number of consumer groups required to correspond to the PeopleSoft resource groups that need to be controlled. For this example, assume that only the resource usage of executables related to the application server and PeopleSoft Query need to be controlled.

For example:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP
(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'Application Server',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for online users sessions');

EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'PSQuery',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for PSQuery sessions');
```

5. Create the directives for the consumer groups you created.

For example:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'Application Server',
COMMENT => 'Applications Server sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 50,
CPU_P2=> 0, PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_P1 => 8);
```

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'PSQuery',
COMMENT => 'PSQuery sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 10, CPU_P2 => 0,
PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_P1 => 2);
```

6. Validate the resource plan.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
```

7. Submit the plan.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
```

8. Grant the PeopleSoft schema user (PeopleSoft Access ID) these additional Oracle privileges necessary to administer resource plans:

```
GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER
```

```
EXECUTE
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(' <ACCESS_ID> ',
'ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER', TRUE);
```

```
GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP
```

```
EXECUTE
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP(' <ACCESS_ID> ',
' <CONSUMER_GROUP_NAME> ', FALSE);
```

9. Enable the Database Resource Manager in your PeopleSoft SID.

For completing this, you have two options:

- Set RESOURCE\_MANAGER\_PLAN='PeopleSoft\_plan' in the init.ora file for PeopleSoft SID.
- Issue the following ALTER statement: ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE\_MANAGER\_PLAN='PeopleSoft\_plan';

## Example: Creating PeopleSoft Resource Plan and Consumer Groups SQL Script

You can issue each SQL statement separately, or you may elect to create a single script to create the required consumer groups. The following is a sample SQL script for creating a resource plan with consumer groups for your PeopleSoft system.

```

BEGIN

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
COMMENT => 'Resource plan/method for PeopleSoft Users Sessions');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'Application Server',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for online users sessions');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'PSQuery',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for PSQuery sessions');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'PubSub',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for PUBSUB sessions');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'Application Engine',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for Application Engine');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP(CONSUMER_GROUP => 'Cobol',
COMMENT => 'Resource consumer group/method for Cobol');

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'Application Server',
COMMENT => 'Applications Server sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 50, CPU_P2=> 0,
PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_P1 => 8);

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'PSQuery',
COMMENT => 'PSQuery sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 10, CPU_P2 => 0,
PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_P1 => 2);

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'PubSub',
COMMENT => 'PubSub sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 10, CPU_P2 => 0,
PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_P1 => 3);

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'Application Engine',
COMMENT => 'Application Engine sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 10, CPU_P2 => 50,
CPU_P3 => 50);

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(PLAN => 'PeopleSoft_plan',
GROUP_OR_SUBPLAN => 'Cobol',
COMMENT => 'Cobol sessions at level 1', CPU_P1 => 10, CPU_P2 => 50, CPU_P3 => 50);

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA()

```

## Mapping PeopleSoft Resource Groups to Oracle Consumer Groups

The Pt Ora Resource page enables you to map PeopleSoft resource groups with the Oracle consumer groups you have defined.

Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, Oracle Resource Management.

Pt Ora Resource	
<a href="#">Customize</a>   <a href="#">Find</a>   <a href="#">View All</a>       First 1-10 of 11 Last	
PeopleSoft Resource Name	Oracle Consumer Group
1 ANALYTICAL SERVER	<input type="text"/>
2 APPLICATION ENGINE	<input type="text"/>
3 APPLICATION SERVER	<input type="text"/>
4 COBOL	<input type="text"/>
5 DATA MOVER	<input type="text"/>
6 MISCELLANEOUS	<input type="text"/>
7 PUB SUB	<input type="text"/>
8 QUERY SERVER	<input type="text"/>
9 QUICK SERVER	<input type="text"/>
10 SQR	<input type="text"/>

Pt Ora Resource page

**PeopleSoft Resource Name**

PeopleTools provides predefined PeopleSoft resource groups containing one or more PeopleTools executables. The entire set of delivered PeopleSoft resource groups appears in this list.

**Oracle Consumer Group**

After you have created the appropriate Oracle resource plan and consumer groups to correspond to the PeopleSoft resource groups, enter the name of the appropriate Oracle resource group in the edit box.

Enter the consumer group name exactly as it appears in the SQL you submitted to create it. For example, if the SQL you used to create the consumer group appeared as:

```
CONSUMER_GROUP => 'PSQuery'
```

Then, in the Oracle Consumer Group edit box, enter *PSQuery*.

---

## Implementing Oracle Transparent Data Encryption

This section contains an overview and discusses how to:

- Determine fields to encrypt.
- Set up the Oracle Wallet.
- Set the encryption algorithm.
- Encrypt fields.

- Manage fields encrypted for TDE.

### See Also

For more information on Oracle's Transparent Data Encryption feature refer to *Oracle® Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide*

## Understanding Transparent Data Encryption

PeopleTools enables you to implement Oracle's Transparent data encryption (TDE) feature to encrypt the columns you select, enhancing the security of your PeopleSoft applications.

Transparent data encryption (TDE) enables encryption of sensitive data in database columns as it is stored in the operating system files. It provides for secure storage and management of encryption keys in a security module located outside database, separating ordinary program functions from those that pertain to security, such as encryption.

This separation enables you to divide administration duties between DBAs and security administrators, which is a strategy that enhances security because no administrator is granted comprehensive access to data. For example, one administrator manages only the keys, while another manages only the database.

TDE is a key-based access control system enforcing authorization using these keys:

Key	Description
Table	For each database table that contains encrypted columns, there is one encryption key used to encrypt all the columns, regardless of the number of encrypted columns in a given table.
Master	Each table's column encryption key is, in turn, encrypted with the database server's master key. The Master key is stored in an Oracle wallet, which is part of the external security module.

TDE is transparent to the application, and no views or additional tables are required. The application logic associated with SQL and table access will continue to work without modification.

To implement this feature within your PeopleSoft application, you need to:

- Determine the fields that are candidates for TDE.
- Set up the Oracle wallet.
- Set the encryption algorithm.
- Encrypt fields.

---

**Note.** This feature is available for Oracle databases running 10g R2 and later. Oracle did not provide this feature on any earlier version.

---

## Determining Fields to Encrypt

Examples of information that are candidates for TDE include:

- Names.
- Contact information (address, telephone number, email address, and so on).
- Credit card number.
- Passport number.
- Driver's license number.
- Age.
- Salary.
- Academic grades, scores, marks, and so on.

---

**Note.** Depending on the type of business and country in which you are running your PeopleSoft applications, there may be specific types of information, PII, that needs to be encrypted to comply with regulatory standards.

---

### **See Also**

Your PeopleSoft application documentation

## Managing the Oracle Wallet

With TDE, each individual table has its own table key, which is used to encrypt the selected columns in that table. Each table key is, in turn, encrypted using the TDE master key. The TDE master key is stored and protected outside the database in an Oracle Wallet, which is a container that stores authentication and signing credentials, including:

- TDE master key.
- PKI private keys.
- Certificates.
- Trusted certificates for SSL.

Encrypted table keys are placed in the data dictionary. When a user enters data into the column defined as encrypted, the Oracle database retrieves the master key from the wallet, decrypts the encryption key for that table from the data dictionary, uses that encryption key on the input value, and stores the encrypted data in the database.

### ***Setting up the Oracle Wallet***

Before implementing TDE, creating an Oracle Wallet is required.



---

**Warning!** After implementing TDE, the Oracle Wallet must be opened each time a database instance starts (or has been restarted) or else TDE will not work. If the wallet is not open, users will see error messages if they attempt to access any data encrypted using TDE.

---

To set up an Oracle Wallet for TDE:

1. Specify the wallet location.

By default, the wallet is created in the directory \$ORACLE\_BASE/admin/\$ORACLE\_SID/wallet.

So, if \$ORACLE\_BASE is /ds1/product/oracle and \$ORACLE\_SID is HRDMO, then the wallet will be stored in the directory /ds1/product/oracle/admin/HRDMO/wallet.

You can set a different directory by specifying it in the sqlnet.ora file located in \$ORACLE\_HOME/network/admin. For instance, if you want the wallet to be in /orawall directory, place the following lines in the sqlnet.ora file:

```
ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION =  
  (SOURCE=  
    (METHOD=file)  
    (METHOD_DATA=  
      (DIRECTORY=/orawall)))
```

---

**Note.** Oracle recommends adding this location to regular backup utility.

---

2. Create the wallet.

Issue the following SQL as a user with the ALTER SYSTEM privilege, such as SYSTEM, SYS, or SYSDBA. In this example, HRMSTKEY is the password.

```
alter system set encryption key  
authenticated by "HRMSTKEY";
```

The preceding command creates the wallet in the specified location, sets the password of the wallet as HRMSTKEY, and opens the wallet for TDE to store and retrieve the master key.

---

**Note.** The password is case-sensitive and must be enclosed in double quotes. The password doesn't show up in clear text in any dynamic performance views or logs.

---

### ***Opening and Closing the Wallet***

After you create the wallet and set the password, every time you start the database, you'll have to open the wallet explicitly, using SYS, SYSTEM, or SYSDBA accounts.

For example,

```
alter system set encryption wallet open authenticated by "HRMSTKEY";
```

To close the wallet:

```
alter system set encryption wallet close;
```

## Setting the Encryption Algorithm

You set the desired encryption algorithm used by TDE on the PeopleTools Options page in the Database Encryption Algorithm edit box.

Access the PeopleTools Options page (PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options).

The algorithms you can enter are:

- Advanced Encryption Standard algorithm with a 128-bit, 192-bit, or 256-bit key.
- Triple DES algorithm with a 168-bit key.

Specify the desired algorithm by entering one of the following values into the Database Encryption Algorithm edit box exactly as it appears below:

- AES128
- AES192
- AES256
- 3DES168

---

**Note.** You must specify an encryption algorithm to enable the Encrypt option for a field definition in Application Designer.

---

## Encrypting Fields

You encrypt fields in Application Designer by selecting the Encrypt check box on a field definition, and then creating a table or altering an existing table.

---

**Note.** The Encrypt check box is enabled only on Oracle databases running version 10g R2 or later that also have an encryption algorithm specified in the Database Encryption Algorithm edit box on the PeopleTools Options page.

---

These PeopleSoft field types can be encrypted:

- Character
- Long Character (see note below)
- Number
- Signed number
- Date
- DateTime
- Time

---

**Note.** Long Character field types may only take advantage of TDE when the following conditions are true: the field length is greater than 0 and less than 1334 *and* the Raw Binary field attribute *is not* set.

---

These PeopleSoft field types *can not* be encrypted:

- Image
- Image reference
- Attachment

After you define the field to be encrypted, and either create a table or alter an existing table containing that field definition, the Build feature generates DDL SQL containing the ENCRYPT clause in the following syntax:

```
ENCRYPT using 'ALGORITHM'
```

For example,

```
ALTER TABLE PS_AM_BI_HDR  
MODIFY (CR_CARD_NBR ENCRYPT using 'AES256' NO SALT);
```

---

**Note.** If you are using Oracle Database version 10.2.0.4 or higher, the syntax includes the NOMAC parameter. For example, ALTER TABLE PS\_AM\_BI\_HDR MODIFY (CR\_CARD\_NBR ENCRYPT using 'AES192' 'NOMAC' NO SALT);

The NOMAC parameter reduces the storage requirements and provides improved performance.

---

See your Oracle database documentation for more information on NOMAC.

When DDL SQL containing the ENCRYPT clause is run against the database, Oracle:

- creates a cryptographically secure encryption key for the table containing the column.
- encrypts the clear text data in the column, using the specified encryption algorithm.

## Managing Fields Encrypted for TDE

This section covers these topics related to the ongoing maintenance of encrypted fields:

- Decrypting fields.
- Regenerating an encryption key.
- Upgrading TDE encrypted fields.

### ***Decrypting Fields***

If you decide that you no longer want a field encrypted for TDE, you can issue a SQL ALTER operation using the DECRYPT clause. For example, assume you wanted to decrypt the SSN field on the ACCOUNT table.

```
ALTER TABLE ACCOUNT MODIFY (SSN DECRYPT);
```

### ***Regenerating An Encryption Key***

Situations where you might consider regenerating a table encryption key include:

- You suspect a table key has been compromised.
- You want to take advantage of a different encryption algorithm.

You regenerate a table encryption key by issuing a SQL ALTER operation using the REKEY clause. For example, assume you wanted to rekey the PS\_AM\_BI\_HDR table to take advantage of AES256.

```
ALTER TABLE PS_AM_BI_HDR REKEY using 'AES256';
```

This creates a new table key and recreates the encrypted column values using the new table key.

### ***Upgrading TDE Encrypted Fields***

All metadata field definitions are delivered with no-encryption attributes enabled. PeopleSoft applications will not deliver any metadata indicating encryption enabled for any field for an initial installation database file, project, or a PeopleTools or PeopleSoft application patch.

If you customize the field by adding TDE encryption, you need to keep track of the fields and associated record definitions and ensure that you maintain the desired encryption status through any upgrades that you perform.

See Your PeopleSoft upgrade documentation

### ***Altering Tables With TDE Encrypted Fields***

When altering tables with TDE encrypted fields using the Alter in Place option, Application Designer automatically switches the Index Creation Options selection to Recreate index only if modified even if you specifically select Recreate index if it already exists in the Build Settings dialog box.

---

## **Protecting and Managing PeopleSoft Applications with Database Vault**

This section provides an overview and discusses:

- Restricting access for the access ID.
- Restricting access for PSFTDBA ID.
- Using multiple, alternate, access IDs.

## **Understanding Oracle Database Vault**

Oracle Database Vault provides an extra layer of security that protects a database against insider security threats. One of Database Vault's key features is that it protects PeopleSoft application data from being accessed by super-privileged users, such as DBA or system administrators, but it still allows them to maintain the Oracle database.

A super-privileged user, such as a DBA, should not have access to PeopleSoft application data. Application data can include salary, identification numbers, credit card numbers, and other personal information. On the other hand, the DBA must still be able to perform database maintenance, such as back up and recovery. Database Vault allows DBAs to do their jobs, but does not allow the DBA to have access to application data.

PeopleTools has validated the use of Oracle Database Vault with PeopleSoft applications. From that validation effort we've provided sample PeopleSoft DB Vault security policies. The sample policies are available on Oracle Technology Network (OTN).

See [http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/products/database\\_vault/index.html](http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/products/database_vault/index.html).

These sample policies lock the database to allow all PeopleSoft application processes to access the database, while restricting any super user, like a DBA, from viewing the data using any Oracle delivered query tool. These policies illustrate a minimal usage of Database Vault functionality and may be modified or enhanced based on your specific level of required database security. The following table illustrates how the implementation of the example Database Vault policies affects the PeopleSoft Access ID and end-users, such as VP1 or PS.

<b>User Account</b>	<b>Database Vault</b>
SYSADM (Peoplesoft Access ID)	Before Database Vault, the Oracle DBA would use the Access ID for all database maintenance tasks, and they could view all of the data in the database. For example, a DBA might have used the PeopleSoft Access ID during all system testing to query the database when they needed to verify data in the database. Once Database Vault is enabled, the Access ID will no longer be able to access SQL*Plus, for example.
PSFTDBA (Account for DBAs)	With Database Vault enabled, the Oracle DBA responsible for applying PeopleSoft upgrades will no longer use the PeopleSoft Access ID. The DBA will now use the new PSFTDBA account to login to SQL*Plus and perform database maintenance tasks. The PSFTDBA account does not allow the DBA to run SELECT statements on the database tables, but INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE are allowed.
General PeopleSoft user IDs (VP1, PS, and so on)	The PeopleSoft "end-user" IDs, such as VP1, are <i>not</i> affected by Database Vault. Database Vault is transparent to VP1 and other PeopleSoft end-users.

## Restricting Access For the Access ID

In the PeopleSoft system, the access ID is the Oracle owner of all schema objects in a PeopleSoft database. With Database Vault you can restrict Oracle users other than the access ID from having 'SELECT' privilege on any access ID objects.

This restrictive usage is supported by using the sample PeopleSoft Database Vault security policies. When the sample PeopleSoft Database Vault security policies are implemented and Database Vault is enabled on a PeopleSoft database running on Oracle, the policies allow the access ID to do everything it currently needs to do on behalf of PeopleSoft components.

By design, all DML including SELECT DML is allowed by the access ID if the DML is issued through a "known" PeopleTools component, as defined in the sample PeopleSoft Database Vault security policies.

SELECT DML access is restricted for the access ID if not executed through a defined PeopleTools component.

SQLPlus and other ad hoc query tools are not explicitly defined in the sample policies and therefore cannot be used to issue SELECT DML against the database.

## Restricting Access For PSFTDBA ID

The sample policies and scripts provide for non-access ID access to the database through the Oracle user, PSFTDBA. This user is intended to be used when you need SQLPLUS access to the system.

In order for DBAs to perform system maintenance, upgrade tasks, and so on, the sample policy scripts create the PSFTDBA account. With this account the following actions are allowed on database tables:

- INSERT
- UPDATE
- DELETE

The sample PeopleSoft Database Vault security policies restrict the PSFTDBA ID from performing a SELECT against the access ID's objects. If you use the PSFTDBA account to run a SELECT statement, an error message similar to the following appears:

```
sp-hp15:$ sqlplus PSFTDBA/PSFTDBA@Q8501123

SQL*Plus: Release 11.1.0.6.0 - Production on Wed Apr 9 10:45:36 2008

Copyright (c) 1982, 2007, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.1.0.6.0 - 64bit Production
With the Partitioning, Oracle Label Security, Oracle Database Vault and
Real Application Testing options

SQL> select * from Q8501123.PSSTATUS;
select * from Q8501123.PSSTATUS
                                *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01031: insufficient privileges
```

The PSFTDBA ID is designed so that your DBA's use it rather than the access ID to increase security when performing database maintenance. When performing some tasks, keep in mind that PSFTDBA does not have sufficient access to the database to perform all PeopleSoft maintenance tasks, such as all upgrade tasks.

For example, when running SQRs from the workstation, the PSFTDBA user ID cannot run SELECTs on the database to generate reports. This is a defined PeopleSoft Database Vault policy restriction. SQR's should be run as scheduled Process Scheduler jobs on the server. Also, when applying PeopleSoft upgrades involves some steps that require access to the database using the access ID. For example, in some cases you need to run Data Mover in bootstrap mode using the access ID/password. Data Mover scripts cannot be run as PSFTDBA. In these cases, the key limitation to keep in mind is that the PSFTDBA ID cannot run a select against any access ID owned tables, which includes tables required for Data Mover to log in to the system.

In cases, where you need SELECT access for certain features (SQR, Data Mover, and so on) you can configure a set of specific, alternative ID's to be used for PeopleSoft upgrade tasks while still remaining in compliance with the Database Vault policies.

## Using Multiple Alternate Access IDs

The sample PeopleSoft Database Vault security policies provide protection of highly sensitive information in the PeopleSoft tables from database "super users." In some cases, you may need a more tailored access, such as in the cases of upgrades, patching, auditing, and the separation of duties for the PeopleSoft Access ID.

You can leverage Database Vault so that PeopleSoft tables, procedures and triggers could be protected can still be protected while allowing special access to complete upgrade and maintenance tasks. The privileges in the Database Vault PeopleSoft template can be given to the multiple, alternate, access IDs. By using multiple, alternate, access IDs to perform PeopleSoft maintenance, you can mitigate the issues involved with distributing the password of the base access ID to multiple users.

The multiple, alternate, access IDs (PSFTDBAnn) technique has been tested with Database Vault in the field on PeopleSoft installations and offers a solution where unique, identifiable accounts can be used to perform PeopleSoft patching and upgrades. These accounts can be limited to the modules and machine names from which the PSFTDBAnn ID can run. These accounts also can be heavily audited, to make sure that they do not introduce malicious code, which removes the need to implement heavy auditing on the base access ID account.

With multiple, alternate, access IDs you can:

- Use multiple, alternate, access IDs that can be used just for PeopleSoft upgrade/maintenance.
- Create PSFTDBAnn accounts that have many auditing options enabled, not affecting the use of the production access ID (SYSADM).
- Use Oracle's Audit Vault to enhance the separation-of-duties when it comes to centrally managing audit information.
- Configure Database Vault so that the PSFTDBAnn account can be restricted to particular machines and times, and so on.
- Take advantage of Database Vault's strictly DBA account(s) (PSFTDBA) that can modify the database and system, but not issue selects on tables in the PeopleSoft Realm. The PSFTDBA account can do many DBA activities such as alter tablespaces, examine performance, start and stop the system, but not see sensitive information. The PSFTDBA account can apply Oracle Database Patches, but not apply PeopleSoft type of patches.
- Restrict knowledge of the access ID password, as it is no longer required for PeopleSoft maintenance.
- Address many more of the concerns third party auditors are identifying on systems that contain highly sensitive information in PeopleSoft applications.

In the following examples, the unofficial account "PSFTDBAn" represents multiple access IDs, although it can be almost any name. The PSFTDBAn accounts need to retain the ability to do 'SELECTS' on PeopleSoft objects. This technique leverages a protected Login Trigger that alters the CURRENT\_SCHEMA, so that the PSFTDBAn accounts can *act* as the access ID (SYSADM) account, but preserve the user's identity (PSFTDBA1) when running any commands.

To configure multiple, alternate, access IDs:

1. Create one to 'n' multiple, alternate, access IDs (authorized Oracle USERS):

```
create user psftdba1 identified by oracle_1;
create user psftdba2 identified by oracle_1;
create user psftdba3 identified by oracle_1;
```

## 2. Grant minimal privileges to these alternate authorized USERS:

```
grant connect,resource to psftdba1;
grant connect,resource to psftdba2;
grant connect,resource to psftdba3;
```

## 3. CREATE an Oracle instance level logon trigger to issue an ALTER SESSION SET CURRENT\_SCHEMA whenever an alternative authorized user logs into the instance.

```
drop trigger psft_login_trg;
create or replace trigger psft_login_trg
after logon on database

begin
-- * use dvf if in a database vault environemnt.
-- * database vault would also help protect the peoplesoft realm, and
logon trigger, and so on
-- if dvf.f$session_user in ('PSFTDBA1' , 'PSFTDBA2', 'PSFTDBA3') then
if sys_context('userenv','session_user') in in ('PSFTDBA1' , 'PSFTDBA2',
'PSFTDBA3') then
execute immediate 'alter session set current_schema='SYSADM';
end if;
end;
/
```

Every time one of the alternative authorized USERS logs into the instance, an ALTER SESSION SET CURRENT\_SCHEMA=ACCESSID is issued. From here on in any operation performed that is unqualified would be done in the ACCESSID schema.

For example, if the 'PSFTDBA1' were logged into the database directly using SQLPLUS or indirectly using Data Mover, then any 'VALID' operation performed that is unqualified would be done in the ACCESSID schema. All of 'PSFTDBA1's actions on the database could be audited if the Oracle Auditing facility (Audit Vault) were used. If you need to verify you have database connectivity, you can use the PSFTDBAn account for your test. Data Mover and SQR testing from the workstation will be able to use the PSFTDBAn account.

---

## Working With Oracle 11g Security Features

Oracle 11g introduces security features, which from a database security perspective, increase restrictions for database access. These changes are part of the "Secure By Default" configuration of 11g. These changes include setting a defined limit for the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME and PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME associated with the default profile. This section discusses how PeopleSoft systems are affected and what your options are.

## Understanding Default Profiles

All Oracle users created in an instance are assigned a default profile, such as the default profile delivered with 11g. There are differences between the default profiles for 10g and 11g.



Oracle Database Version	Default Profile Values
Oracle 10g	PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME: UNLIMITED PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME: UNLIMITED PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME: UNLIMITED
Oracle 11g	PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME: 180 PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME: 1 PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME: 7

For pre-11g Oracle releases, the default profile did not specify a `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` limit. As such, by default, the password for a given Oracle user never expired. `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` and `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` were also unlimited. For 11g, the default profile has a `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` of 180 days. `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` and `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` also have limits.

For a PeopleSoft installation on the Oracle platform, several Oracle user IDs are created during the installation. Those Oracle users are:

- `ACCESSID` (default is `SYSADM`)
- `CONNECT ID` (default is `people`)
- `PS` (owns the `PSDBOWNER` table)

The `ACCESSID` is the schema owner for all database objects related to a specific PeopleSoft application installation. The `ACCESSID` and `ACCESSID` password are stored and encrypted in the PeopleSoft security table `PSACCESSPRFL`.

```
SQL> descr SYSADM.PSACCESSPRFL
Name                               Null?      Type
-----
SYMBOLICID                        NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(8 CHAR)
VERSION                           NOT NULL   NUMBER(38)
ACCESSID                          NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(16 CHAR)
ACCESSPSWD                        NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(16 CHAR)
ENCRYPTED                          NOT NULL   NUMBER(38)

SQL> SELECT  * from SYSADM.PSACCESSPRFL;

SYMBOLIC      VERSION  ACCESSID      ACCESSPSWD      ENCRYPTED
-----
SYSADM1              7    sBzLcYlPrag=    sBzLcYlPrag=          1
```

The connect ID is a pseudo logon which allows PeopleSoft to associate multiple PeopleSoft user IDs to the same connect ID. The connect ID has the minimum privileges required to connect to the database (only `SELECT` privileges on specific PeopleTools tables). After a connection has been established using the connect ID, PeopleSoft security uses the PeopleSoft user ID to control access to objects in the database. The PeopleSoft signon process validates the connect ID on the server, rather than the user ID. The connect ID simplifies database security maintenance, as you don't need to maintain access for all PeopleSoft users, just for the connect ID.

The PS ID is used once, during PeopleSoft database creation, to create the `PSDBOWNER` table. Once this table has been created, read access and write privileges are made public to everyone, then the PS user ID privileges are revoked.

## Encountering Issues Related to Oracle 11g Security

When the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME has been reached, the PeopleSoft Oracle users (in this case the PeopleSoft ACCESSID and CONNECT ID) will be locked out of the database. This means that any PeopleSoft process cannot access the database, such as application server, Process Scheduler, COBOL, Data Mover, and so on.

If this occurs you will see any of the following Oracle database error messages:

ORA-28000: the account is locked

Cause: The user has entered wrong password consequently for maximum number of⇒ times specified by the user's

profile parameter FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS, or the DBA has locked the account

Action: Wait for PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME or contact DBA

ORA-28001: the password has expired

Cause: The user's account has expired and the password needs to be changed

Action: change the password or contact the DBA

ORA-28002 the password will expire within string days

Cause: The user's account is about to about to expire and the password needs to be changed.

Action: Change the password or contact the database administrator.

These messages may appear in a SQL trace, an application server log, a Process Scheduler log, or in an error message in the GUI when attempting to access the database (signon to Application Designer or Data Mover). The following are some select examples of what you can expect to see in log and trace files.

The trace will show the login failing as follows:

CONNECTID.

2-4 13.06.56 1.581000 Cur#0.6060.QE849C42 RC=28001 Dur=1.581000

Connect=Primary/QE849C42/people/

2-5 13.06.56 0.000000 Cur#0.6060.QE849C42 RC=-1 Dur=0.000000 XER

rtncd=761802124 msg=

2-6 13.06.56 0.000000 Cur#0.6060.QE849C42 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 ERR rtncd=28001

msg=ORA-28001: the password has expired

The following illustrates an application server or Process Scheduler boot with passwords already expired:

PeopleTools 8.xx.07 Client Trace - 2008-10-24

```

PID-Line   Time           Elapsed   Trace Data...
-----
1-1        14.25.45          Tuxedo session opened {oprid='QEDMO',
appname='Two Tier', addr='//TwoTier:7000', open at 01C67EC8, pid=4956}
1-2        14.25.45      0.058000 Cur#0.4956.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.003000 --- router
PSORA load succeeded
1-3        14.25.45      0.155000 Cur#0.4956.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.155000 INI
1-4        14.25.45      0.192000 Cur#0.4956.QE849C41 RC=28002 Dur=0.192000
Connect=Primary/QE849C41/people/
1-5        14.25.45      0.000000 Cur#0.4956.QE849C41 RC=-1 Dur=0.000000 XER
rtnacd=761800508 msg=
1-6        14.25.45      0.000000 Cur#0.4956.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 ERR
rtnacd=28002 msg=ORA-28002:
the password will expire within 7 days
1-7        14.25.48      2.718000 Cur#0.4956.notSamTran RC=0 Dur=0.000000 DON
1-8        14.25.51      2.742000 Tuxedo session opened { DisconnectAll at 01C67EC8,
pid=4956}

```

The following illustrates a client trace of a application server or Process Scheduler boot:

PeopleTools 8.49.07 Client Trace - 2008-10-24

```

PID-Line   Time           Elapsed   Trace Data...
-----
1-1        14.30.38          Tuxedo session opened {oprid='QEDMO',
appname='Two Tier', addr='//TwoTier:7000', open at 01C67EC8, pid=3328}
1-2        14.30.38      0.056000 Cur#0.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.004000 --- router
PSORA load succeeded
1-3        14.30.38      0.238000 Cur#0.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.238000 INI
1-4        14.30.38      0.529000 Cur#1.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.529000
Connect=Primary/QE849C41/people/
1-5        14.30.38      0.036000 Cur#1.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 GET
type=1003 dbtype=4
1-6        14.30.38      0.000000 Cur#1.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 GET
type=1004 release=11
1-7        14.30.38      0.076000 Cur#1.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 COM
Stmt=
SELECT OWNERID FROM PS.PSDBOWNER
WHERE DBNAME=:1
.
1-41       14.30.40      0.200000 Cur#1.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.200000 Disconnect
1-42       14.30.40      0.251000 Cur#0.3328.QE849C41 RC=28002 Dur=0.220000
Connect=Primary/QE849C41/QE849C41/
1-43       14.30.40      0.000000 Cur#0.3328.QE849C41 RC=-1 Dur=0.000000 XER
rtnacd=18874368 msg=
1-44       14.30.40      0.000000 Cur#0.3328.QE849C41 RC=0 Dur=0.000000 ERR
rtnacd=28002 msg=ORA-28002: the password will expire within 7 days
1-45       14.30.42      2.293000 Cur#0.3328.notSamTran RC=0 Dur=0.000000 DON
1-46       14.30.43      0.788000 Tuxedo session opened { DisconnectAll
at 01C67EC8, pid=3328}

```

The failure and return of the GRACE PERIOD warning message gives you time to react before the password actually expires, enabling you to be proactive and reset or change the ACCESSID and/or the CONNECT ID password(s).

## Oracle 11g Security Configuration Options

This section discusses options for dealing with Oracle 11g security, including:

- Setting the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME to unlimited.
- Creating a PeopleSoft-specific profile.
- Resetting the PeopleSoft installation user IDs.
- Changing the PeopleSoft installation user IDs.

### ***Setting the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME to Unlimited***

You can set the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME in the default profile to unlimited. If this is done prior to creating the PeopleSoft-specific Oracle user IDs used for the PeopleSoft database installation, then the default behavior will mimic the pre-Oracle 11g behavior.

This can be done by creating the ACCESSID and CONNECT ID using the following command:

```
ALTER PROFILE DEFAULT LIMIT PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME UNLIMITED
;
```

---

**Note.** While feasible, this particular solution is counter to the secure by default positioning of Oracle 11g and to regulations requiring periodic changes to important passwords.

---

### ***Creating a PeopleSoft-Specific Profile***

You can create a PeopleSoft-specific profile which sets the PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME to unlimited. Creating the new PeopleSoft profile should be done when you create the database rather than altering PeopleSoft users from the default profiles to the PeopleSoft-specific profiles. Switching the a PeopleSoft-specific profile after you have created the PeopleSoft-specific users expired password limits does not automatically modify the expiry\_date column in USER\_USERS (done when creating the users with the default profile).

Create the ACCESSID and CONNECT ID user IDs using the delivered scripts, PS\_HOME/scripts/PSADMIN.SQL and PS\_HOME/scripts/CONNECT.SQL. After doing so, the PeopleSoft Oracle user IDs would have the default profile assigned. Alter the ACCESSID and CONNECT ID user IDs to make use of the alternate profile rather than the default. This can be done using the following commands:

```
CREATE PROFILE PSPROFILE LIMIT PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME UNLIMITED
;
```

This creates the PSPROFILE profile with password limits values set. All values not explicitly listed are derived from the default profile.

The following statements alter both the default ACCESSID and CONNECT ID to utilize the PSPROFILE profile with the password limit set for PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME to unlimited:

```
ALTER USER SYSADM PROFILE PSPROFILE
;
ALTER USER PEOPLE PROFILE PSPROFILE
;
```

---

**Note.** While feasible, this solution will allow the profile expiration behavior to mimic the pre-Oracle 11g behavior, but this runs counter to the intent of regulations that require changing critical passwords on a regular basis.

---

### ***Resetting the PeopleSoft Installation User IDs***

You can reset the PeopleSoft installation Oracle user ID passwords (the ACCESSID and CONNECT ID) in all of the places it needs to be reset. After the passwords expire, reset them to the original value. You can reset the password using the PASSWORD command or by ALTER USER command.

---

**Note.** If using Database Vault, then only the database vault account manager can reset the account, because the access ID cannot login to SQLPLUS to change the password.

---



---

**Note.** While feasible, this option runs counter to the intent of regulations that require changing critical passwords on a regular basis.

---

### ***Changing the PeopleSoft Installation User IDs***

The recommended option is to change the PeopleSoft installation required Oracle user ID passwords (the ACCESSID and CONNECT ID) after they have expired, and reflect those changes in all required locations. This option enables you to conform to regulations that require changing critical passwords on a regular basis.

If the password expires and an Oracle user ID password is changed within the Oracle database for the ACCESSID or CONNECT ID, the PeopleSoft system will still have the old password stored in the PeopleSoft security metadata tables and configuration files. These changed passwords will have to be reflected in the PeopleSoft security metadata tables and configuration files as well as the database.

At the database level, you can use the PASSWORD and ALTER USER commands to change the ACCESS ID and CONNECT ID passwords. For example:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\>sqlplus people/people@QE849C42

SQL*Plus: Release 10.2.0.3.0 - Production on Tue Oct 21 10:55:57 2008

Copyright (c) 1982, 2006, Oracle. All Rights Reserved.

ERROR:
ORA-28001: the password has expired

Changing password for people
New password: <changed to 'peop2e'>
Retype new password: <changed to 'peop2e'>
Password changed

SQL> exit
```

Or,

```
ALTER USER QE849C42 IDENTIFIED BY CHANGE PW ACCOUNT UNLOCK;

User altered.

ALTER USER people IDENTIFIED BY peop2e ACCOUNT UNLOCK;

User altered.

SQL> exit
```

---

**Note.** You may also have to include the UNLOCK keyword to unlock the account (if the password retry has been exceeded).

---

In PeopleTools, open Configuration Manager and change the Connect Password value on the Startup tab.

Then, open Data Mover in bootstrap mode (using the new ACCESSID password) to run the necessary commands to change the ACCESSID passwords on the appropriate PeopleSoft metadata tables. For example,

```
SET LOG c:\temp\changeaccessidpswd.out;
UPDATE PSSTATUS SET OWNERID = 'QE849C42';
UPDATE PSOPRDEFN SET OPERPSWD = OPRID, ACCTLOCK=0, ENCRYPTED = 0;
UPDATE PSACCESSPRFL SET ACCESSID = 'QE849C42', ACCESSPSWD = 'CHANGEPW',
VERSION = 0, ENCRYPTED = 0;
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD *;
```

---

**Note.** For Oracle 11g, the password is case sensitive.

---

Lastly, apply the connect ID changes to the psprcs.cfg and psappsrv.cfg configurations files and rebuild the domains. For example:

```
[Startup]
;=====
; Database Signon settings
;=====
DBName=QEDMO
DBType=ORACLE
UserId=QEDMO
UserPswd==QEDMO
ConnectId=people
ConnectPswd=peop2e
ServerName=
```

---

## Working With Oracle Transparent Application Failover

PeopleTools provides limited support for Oracle Transparent Application Failover (TAF). PeopleTools TAF support includes:

- PeopleSoft servers can be configured to transparently reconnect to a surviving RAC instance in the event of an instance failure with in a RAC cluster.
- PeopleSoft servers can be configured to transparently fail over to an Oracle Database Data Guard standby when the primary database is lost.

---

**Note.** In most cases, other than a slight pause in the operation, the failover is transparent to the application end user.

---

PeopleTools is designed to listen for Oracle fast application notification (FAN) events to derive the failover behavior. Upon receipt of a FAN event, PeopleSoft servers break their existing TCP connections and initiate TAF, which references the TNSNAMES.ORA connect alias address list and establishes a connection to the surviving instance.

See Your Oracle RAC and database administration guides for the details of implementing and managing Oracle RAC clusters.

## End-User System Behavior With TAF Configured

The following table summarizes PeopleSoft behavior during RAC or Data Guard failover when TAF is configured.

<b><i>PeopleSoft Client Scenario</i></b>	<b><i>Behavior</i></b>
End user is updating data and submits or saves the updates during or just after the database failure.	Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the database session on a surviving node and PeopleSoft resubmits the update.
End user is paging through queried data when the database failure occurs.	Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the database session on a surviving node, re-executes the query, repositions the SQL cursor, and returns the next set of rows.
End user is issuing a new query or switching screens just after the database failure.	Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the database session on a surviving node.

## Batch System Behavior With TAF Configured

The following table summarizes PeopleSoft batch system behavior during RAC or Data Guard failover when TAF is configured.

<b><i>PeopleSoft Batch System Scenario</i></b>	<b><i>Behavior</i></b>
Process Scheduler	Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the session on a surviving node. The Process Scheduler fails over with no administration intervention required.
Application Engine job submitted just <i>before</i> primary instance failure	<p>Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the session on a surviving node but Application Engine job may fail and appear in the PeopleSoft Process Monitor with a status of <i>No Success</i>. These jobs will need to be resubmitted.</p> <p>If the Application Engine job has been implemented to be restartable, the Process Scheduler will automatically restart the job.</p> <p>If the Application Engine job was not in an open-transaction and was performing only SELECT statements, it will fail over and complete successfully.</p>
Application Engine submitted <i>during</i> or just <i>after</i> primary instance failure	Oracle reconnects and reconstructs the session on a surviving node, the Application Engine job is then submitted on the new primary database and completes successfully.
COBOL jobs just <i>before</i> primary instance failure	<p>If the COBOL program does pure queries (SELECT statements), then it will fail over to the surviving node and complete successfully.</p> <p>If the COBOL program executes INSERTS, UPDATES and DELETES, it will <i>not</i> complete successfully on the surviving node. Manual intervention is required to restart the COBOL jobs.</p>

<b><i>PeopleSoft Batch System Scenario</i></b>	<b><i>Behavior</i></b>
Crystal and SQR reports	The behavior is the same as COBOL
PSQUERY, Tree Viewer, XMLP Viewer	Will fail over and complete successfully.

---

## Implementing Oracle Active Data Guard

This section provides an overview and discusses:

- Installing and configuring Oracle Active Data Guard.
- Setting up the secondary access ID.
- Creating the domain boot user.
- Creating synonyms and database links.
- Configuring Domains.
- Configuring read-only components.
- Configuring read-only process definitions.

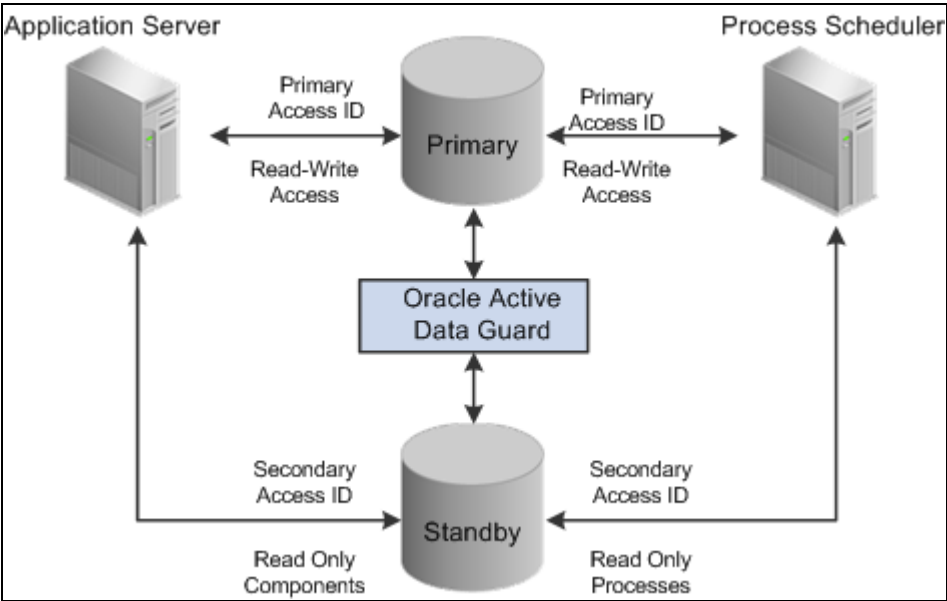
## Understanding Active Data Guard Within PeopleSoft

Oracle Active Data Guard, with Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition, enables you to offload resource-intensive activities from a production database to a synchronized standby database. Oracle Active Data Guard enables read-only access to a physical standby database for queries, sorting, reporting, web-based access, and so on, while continuously applying changes received from the production database.

If you use Oracle Active Data Guard at your site, PeopleTools provides the infrastructure to use Active Data Guard with your PeopleSoft application databases.

The following diagram depicts how Oracle Active Data Guard enables you to incorporate the use of a standby database for you to offload designated read-only transactions, freeing up more resources to handle the read-write transactions on your primary (production) database.





Oracle Active Data Guard synchronizing the primary and standby database so read-only requests can be routed to the standby database for processing

The following table describes the elements within the diagram:

Element	Description
Primary Database	Your production database, handling the read-write requests of your transactional system. For example, this database fills orders, updates employee information, adds new product offerings, and so on.
Standby Database	Your clone of the primary database designed to handle read-only, or mostly-read-only (MRO), requests so that those transactions can be offloaded from your primary database, conserving resources on the production system. Examples of MRO requests include, PSQUERY Viewer, Tree Viewer, components that only submit SELECT SQL to display lists of employees, products, and so on.
Oracle Active Data Guard	Synchronizes the data stored in the primary and standby databases so that they remain exact duplicates. This is achieved using a combination of Oracle Active Data Guard features and DBLINKS and Remote Synonyms defined by scripts delivered with PeopleTools.
Primary Access ID	The PeopleSoft access ID used for connecting to the primary, production database.
Secondary Access ID	The alternative PeopleSoft database user (access ID), which will be used for connecting to the standby database and subsequently accessing the primary database's tables using LOCAL and REMOTE synonyms.

<b>Element</b>	<b>Description</b>
Read Only components	<p>By default, when Oracle Active Data Guard is enabled, these components will always run against the standby database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PSQUERY Viewer</li> <li>• Tree Viewer</li> <li>• XMLP Viewer</li> <li>• SES Feeds Generation</li> <li>• FEEDS Reader</li> </ul> <p>Other components can also be made to run against the standby database, by setting the Read Only option in the component properties dialog box in Application Designer.</p>
Read Only processes	Like components, Process Scheduler process definitions can also be configured to run against the standby database by setting the Read Only option in the process definition.

## Installing and Configuring Oracle Active Data Guard

Oracle Active Data Guard needs to be licensed, installed, and enabled for your server before you can begin setting up your PeopleSoft system to take advantage of this feature. The primary and standby databases need to be set up according to the Oracle Active Data Guard documentation.

### See Also

*Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration 11g*

## Creating the Secondary Access ID

This section discusses how to configure the secondary access ID for use with your primary and standby databases.

To configure the secondary access ID:

1. Run the psadmin.sql script against your primary database.
  - Run the script from PS\_HOME\scripts.
  - When prompted, provide the secondary access ID and password.
2. Insert a row in the PSDBOWNER table for the standby database and the secondary access ID.

For example:

```
INSERT INTO PS.PSDBOWNER VALUES( 'DATABASE', 'ACCESS_ID' );
Commit;
```

3. Create an access profile to associate the secondary access ID with a symbolic ID.
  - In Application Designer, select Tools, Misc Def, Access Profile, and click New.
  - Provide the new symbolic ID, and enter the secondary access ID and password you created using psadmin.sql.

## Creating the Domain Boot User

Create or clone a PeopleSoft user ID and associate it with the secondary access ID so that the user profile will be able to start an application server domain and alternate Process Scheduler server connecting to the standby database.

To create the domain boot user:

1. Select PeopleTools, Security, Copy User Profiles, and enter a new user ID and password.
2. From the Symbolic ID dropdown list on the General tab for the user ID you just created, select the symbolic ID associated with your secondary access ID.
3. Open Data Mover and encrypt the new user profile's password by running the following:

```
UPDATE PSOPRDEFN SET operpswd='<PASSWORD>', encrypted=0
Where oprid='<USER_ID>';
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD *;
```

## Creating Synonyms and Database Links

The mechanism used in the PeopleSoft implementation of Oracle Active Data Guard for making database objects in the standby database available relies on the existence of a secondary access ID.

The secondary access ID does not own any objects, so, sufficient access to and awareness of objects in the primary database. To associate standby database objects with the equivalents in the primary database, the following must be established:

- Local synonyms.
- Remote synonyms.
- Database links to the primary database.

---

**Note.** Remote synonyms and database links are required for the tables to which the standby database needs non-SELECT access.

---

To create the synonyms and database links, PeopleTools delivers these scripts in PS\_HOME\scripts:

- createlocalsynonyms.sql
- createremotesynonyms.sql
- createdblinktoprimarydb.sql

### ***Creating Local Synonyms***

To create local synonyms you use the `createlocalsynonyms.sql` script. Run this script against the primary database while connected as the primary access ID. Before running the script, edit it to include your primary access ID in place of the `<SYSADM>` variable.

The `createlocalsynonyms.sql` generates the following scripts:

- `createlocaltablesynonyms.sql`
- `createlocalviewssynonyms.sql`

You run these scripts against the primary database connected as the secondary access ID.

### ***Creating Remote Synonyms***

Remote synonyms are required for the tables identified as requiring DML access. If you decide to set a component to "read-only" after your analysis, then you need to include the underlying tables that require DML access to this script manually.

To create remote synonyms, you run the `createremotesynonyms.sql` script.

You run this script against the primary database connected as the secondary access ID.

### ***Creating Database Links to the Primary Database***

To create database links, you run the `createdblinktoprimarydb.sql` script.

This script creates a fixed database link between the secondary access ID and the primary access ID on the primary database.

Before running this script, open it and edit it, and replace:

- `<DBNAME>` with the primary database TNSALIAS.
- `<SYSADM>` with the primary access ID.
- `<PASSWORD>` with the primary access ID password.

You run this script connected to the primary database with the secondary access ID.

## **Configuring Domains**

The domains connecting to your primary database must also be configured to connect to your standby database. This is accomplished by specifying the standby connection credentials in the Startup section of the domain configuration for both the application server and Process Scheduler domains.

For example:

Values for config section - Startup

```

DBName=PRIMARY
DBType=ORACLE
UserId=QEDMO
UserPswd=QEDMO
ConnectId=people
ConnectPswd=people
ServerName=
StandbyDBName=STANDBY
StandbyDBType=ORACLE
StandbyUserId=PTSTNDBY
StandbyUserPswd=PTSTNDBY

```

The Startup section enables you to specify signon credentials for both the primary and standby databases. The following table shows which parameters are associated with which database.

<b>Database</b>	<b>Parameters</b>
Primary	DBName DBType UserId UserPswd
Standby	StandbyDBName StandbyDBType StandbyUserID StandbyUserPswd

The Standby... parameters are used to maintain the simultaneous connection to the standby database.

---

**Note.** Typically, the primary and standby database share a common connect ID.

---

## Configuring Read-Only Components

If you have Oracle Active Data Guard configured and enabled for your PeopleSoft system, by default, the requests generated by the following components will be run against the standby database:

- PSQUERY Viewer
- Tree Viewer
- XMLP Viewer
- SES Feeds Generation
- FEEDS Reader

However, you can also set other components to run against the standby database to divert selected requests from your primary database. To set a component to run in "Read-Only" mode (run against the standby database) you need to modify the component properties.

To configure a component for read-only processing:

1. In Application Designer, open the component.
2. Select View, Definition Properties.
3. On the Component Properties dialog box, select the Use tab.
4. Select the Read Only check box.
5. Click OK.

---

**Note.** Selecting the Read Only property should only be done after detailed analysis. You need to make sure that the requests generated from the component perform operations like selecting and displaying lists, rather than inserting, updating, or deleting rows. If there are some DML operations that the component must make, the affected tables need to be identified, and a remote synonym needs to be created between the standby and primary databases.

---

## Configuring Read-Only Processes

If you have Oracle Active Data Guard configured and enabled for your PeopleSoft system, Process Scheduler processes can be set to run against the standby database to divert selected processes from your primary database.

To configure a Process Scheduler processes for read-only processing:

1. Select PeopleTools, Process Scheduler, Processes.
2. Open the process definition..
3. On the Process Definition page, select the Read Only check box.
4. Click OK.

---

**Note.** Selecting the Read Only option should only be done after detailed analysis. You need to make sure that the processes perform operations like selecting data or generating reports, rather than inserting, updating, or deleting rows. If there are some DML operations that the process must make, the affected tables need to be identified, and a remote synonym needs to be created between the standby and primary databases.

---

## Appendix F

# Administering PeopleSoft Databases on Sybase

This appendix discusses:

- Required configuration.
- Trace options.
- Other considerations.

---

## Required Configuration

PeopleSoft applications require certain standard configuration at the server and the database that are not optional and cannot be changed. This section discusses the following options that you must have enabled:

- Server Options.
- Database Options.

## Server Options

This section discusses the following options:

- Lock scheme to datarows
- Lock promotion
- Language options
- Page size
- EBFs

### ***Lock Scheme to Datarows***

Row level locking is preferred and required with PeopleSoft applications. The following command enables the necessary configuration for your server:

```
sp_configure 'lock scheme', 0, 'datarows'  
go
```

## **Lock Promotion**

The following is the configuration delivered for the installation:

```
sp_setrowlockpromote server, NULL, 2147483647, 2147483647, 100
go
```

The purpose of setting this parameter to this value is to avoid the promotion of row level locking, which could potentially increase considerably the amount of locks required on certain activities such as loading a database through datamover. You can modify the configuration in order to allow the promotion of locks earlier when loading databases, but remember to change the configuration back after the process ends.

## **Language Options**

When installing your server, use the *iso\_1* character set as the default for your server.

## **Page Size**

Select a 4k or 8k page size during server installation. The 16k page size is not supported.

## **EBFs**

PeopleSoft certifies Sybase ASE by its interim release. All of the EBF's above the certified interim release are certified until the next interim release is reached.

# **Database options**

Make sure your database uses ansi nulls by default. This is a database option that is set up at installation. The configuration occurs automatically when using the database configuration wizard and is enabled by the SQL script *createdb.sql* when installed manually.

The following line shows how to enable this:

```
sp_dboption dbname, 'allow nulls',true
go
```

Another option that needs to be enabled is the following:

```
sp_dboption dbname, 'ddl in tran',true
go
```

During the database load it is recommended to truncate the transaction log. The following command is executed at installation:

```
sp_dboption dbname, 'trunc',true
go
```

Remember to disable the truncation of the transaction log if desired. This option should not be enabled for production databases.



---

## Trace Options

This section discusses:

- Trace flags in PeopleSoft tools.
- Sybase API-specific tracing.

### Trace Flags in PeopleSoft Tools

When reporting problems to customer support, it is advisable to generate files with traces of the problem that you want to report. Use the trace flags incorporated in PeopleSoft tools to generate these files. The trace flags are accessible through the configuration files for the Process Scheduler and the application server and through the selection of several flags when using the PeopleSoft Configuration Manager on your developer workstation.

Use "TRACESQL=63" to display the SQL statements executed when using PeopleSoft applications. This trace flag is very useful to identify problems in the SQL being executed against a database that hosts a PeopleSoft application.

The trace flag will show the details about the execution of a SQL statement, including:

- if the statement was recompiled.
- if the statement was using an old query plan.
- the time it took to execute.
- the time between executions.
- if the SQL was parametrized.

#### **See Also**

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Setting Application Server Domain Parameters"

*Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*, "Using the PSADMIN Utility"

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager"

### Sybase API-Specific Tracing

When using Sybase, you can select from three SQL Trace options that you can use to enable very detailed Sybase tracing:

- Database API-specific Calls

- Sybase Bind Information
- Sybase Fetch Information

To set these options, use the Trace tab in the PeopleSoft Configuration Manager. Keep in mind that online performance will be affected.

The output of the Sybase tracing can be found in %TEMP%/SYBxxx.TMP, where xxx is a random integer that is different for each file based on each connection.

If you select any options other than Database API, Sybase Bind Information, and Sybase Fetch Information, the tracing output will be found in %TEMP%/DBG1.TMP.

---

**Note.** Only use tracing for debugging purposes, since performance will be affected. Depending on what level of tracing you select, a very large file can be created. To turn tracing off for Windows, clear the boxes in Configuration Manager.

---

### See Also

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: System and Server Administration*, "Using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager"

*PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

---

## Other Considerations

This section discusses:

- Database monitoring.
- Device management.
- Caches.
- Segments.
- Tempdb.
- Network packet size.
- Updating statistics.

## Database Monitoring

Activation of the "EnableDBMonitoring" flag, available through the configuration files for the Process Scheduler and the Application Server, allows you to populate context information of the query executed against the database. This is particularly useful when looking for information about the PeopleSoft user running a particular SQL statement.

### **Example of SQL Statement**

The following is an example of SQL statements that will display the context information of a user once "EnableDBMonitoring" is enabled. Modify the scripts according to your needs.

```
SELECT clientname, clienthostname, clientapplname  
FROM master..sysprocesses  
WHERE spid=spid
```

If you don't know the SPID of the user you are trying to monitor, start with the DBID.

## **Device Management**

Try to use separate physical devices for the various servers in your system. Ideally, you should have one device for database data, one device for tempdb, one device for master, one device for syslogs, and one device for the operating system.

---

**Note.** Tempdb and transaction logs (syslogs) are used very heavily. PeopleSoft highly recommends using a separate device and allocating adequate space. Mirror the syslogs for recovery.

---

## **Caches**

Consider using named caches on tempdb and syslogs. Also, consider experimenting with different private log cache sizes as this can improve performance. You can definitely reduce the contention for the last page of syslogs by increasing the size of the Private Log Cache for the users so that they will write to the syslogs table less frequently. Your Database Administrator should determine required memory to support your number of users.

## **Segments**

Consider using segments to separate data, non-clustered indexes, and heavily used tables onto separate devices.

## **Tempdb**

Tempdb is heavily used for sorting (order by statements) and to create worktables for "OR" and "GROUP BY" statements. It is rebuilt every time the dataserver is booted; no permanent data is stored in it. Because of this, the normal considerations for recoverability do not apply to tempdb.

---

**Note.** You should consider binding tempdb to its own named cache.

---

### **Sizing**

Tempdb should be sized according the number of concurrent users, the size of the sorts or group by statements, and the largest possible sort that might be done in tempdb. You will need to consider all databases running on your dataserver because they all share tempdb.

## Placement

Whether to place tempdb on a journaled file system, a logical volume, a raw device or a solid-state device is platform-dependent. Following are some considerations for each:

- **Journaled File System**

Placing tempdb on a journaled file system is faster on many platforms because the OS buffers the writes so that Sybase Adaptive Server doesn't have to wait for physical disk writes. If you have enough OS memory to buffer all of the writes, then tempdb can essentially stay in memory and never have to write to disk.

When you initialize a file system device(file), Sybase Adaptive Server does not know that there is really enough space in the file system for the size you specify. At run time, the server may well run out of space if the file system was—or became—too full for the tempdb file.

A precaution would be to configure a separate file system solely for the tempdb file, and set permissions so that only the server can write to this device.

---

**Note.** Do not place user databases on a journaled file system as Adaptive Server cannot guarantee recoverability if the system shuts down abnormally.

---

- **Raw Device**

There are no special considerations for placing tempdb on a raw device.

- **Solid-State Device**

This is a special device that essentially runs in memory. If tempdb is an I/O bottleneck, then placing tempdb on a solid-state device can improve performance

Another consideration is placing the tempdb syslogs on a separate device.

## Network Packet Size

You may be able to improve performance for large result sets by matching the Sybase data packet size to your network packet size and reclaiming unused network bandwidth. Larger packets will also improve network performance by reducing the number of packets sent between the client and server.

From within Configuration Manager, on the Common tab of the Edit Profile dialog box, you can increase the TCP Packet Size for Sybase. Sybase uses a default of 512 bytes and it accepts packet sizes in increments of 512.

The Sybase server must also be configured to accept the larger packet size. To increase the packet size at the server level, issue the following command using Sybase ISQL or a similar SQL utility:

```
1> sp_configure 'max network packet', 1024
2> go
```

---

**Note.** Increase the network memory allocated per connection using the sp\_configuration additional network memory command when increasing the max network packet size.

---

These server commands will require the Sybase dataserver to be rebooted before the configurations will take effect

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft does not recommend increasing the dataserver default network packet size from the default value of 512. This will ensure that all PeopleSoft clients are able to connect. If the TCP Packet Size is increased on the client with Configuration Manager and the max network packet size is not increased on the server, Signon failure will occur.

---

### **See Also**

*Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise Reference Manual*

*Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise Performance and Tuning Guide*

## **Updating Statistics**

When an index gets created, the system gathers statistics about the table. These statistics help to determine the best search method for accessing a table. Each time an index gets created, the statistics are updated for that table. When an index is dropped, the statistics are not removed. In this case you will want to delete the statistics for the dropped index. Use the Sybase DELETE STATISTICS command follow by an UPDATE STATISTICS to rebuild your existing index and column statistics.

You should also update database statistics if there have been significant changes to the index—such as adding or deleting a large number of rows in a table. To do this, use the Sybase UPDATE STATISTICS command. You can run this command against tables and indexes in a database.

---

**Note.** There is no command to delete and update statistics for an entire database.

---



## Appendix G

# Configuring Remote Data Access

This appendix provides an overview of remote data access and discusses how to:

- Configure application servers and Process Scheduler servers for remote data access with Informix.
- Configure application servers and Process Scheduler servers for remote data access with Oracle.
- Configure application servers and Process Scheduler servers for remote data access with DB2 UDB.
- Configure application servers and Process Scheduler servers for remote data access with Sybase.
- Configure application servers and Process Scheduler servers for remote data access with Microsoft SQL Server.

---

## Understanding Remote Data Access

Remote Data Access is a feature used in your PeopleSoft environment if you use the Data Transformer feature available with many PeopleSoft applications, as part of Enterprise Components.

Oracle develops, certifies, and tests remote data access using the drivers provided by the supported DBMS vendors. JDBC drivers are either supplied with the database product that you already have, or can be obtained separately from your database vendor. Using these drivers ensures a predictable and well supported environment, with less potential for interoperability issues.

---

**Note.** These setup instructions for configuring a JDBC driver on the application and batch servers are needed only if you use remote database sources for the Data Transformer feature of common components. Do not install the driver otherwise.

---

---

## Configuring Application Servers and Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access for Informix

Before you can use remote data access with Informix on UNIX or Windows, the Informix database connectivity software (the supported version of Informix Client) must be installed on the system where the application or Process Scheduler server is running.

You must also install and configure the supported version of IBM Informix JDBC Driver on the same machine. The driver installation program is included as part of your Informix server software distribution — refer to your Informix JDBC Programmers Guide for details.

See PeopleSoft Supported Platforms, *PeopleSoft Hardware and Software Requirements*, and your PeopleTools installation documentation for Informix for version and installation information

---

**Important!** You can install the JDBC driver anywhere. However, for proper remote data access functionality with your PeopleSoft system, you must install it under %INFORMIXDIR%/ifxjava\_home.

---

If you're using the application server, you must edit the application server configuration file, PSAPPSRV.CFG. If you're using the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler (batch server), you must edit the server configuration file, PSPRCS.CFG. These configuration files are located in the *PS\_CFG\_HOME* directory within the appropriate *domain* or *database name* directory.

Under the line ";JavaVM Shared Library=" in the appropriate configuration file, add the following:

```
; RDBA Informix
Add to CLASSPATH=%INFORMIXDIR%/ifxjava_home/lib/ifxjdbc.jar
```

---

## Configuring Application Servers or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access for Oracle

This section discusses how to:

- Prepare to configure Oracle.
- Configure Oracle connectivity on UNIX.
- Configure Oracle connectivity on Windows.

### Preparing to Configure Oracle Remote Data Access

Before you can use Remote Data Access with Oracle, the appropriate database connectivity software must be installed on the system where the application server or Process Scheduler server is running. The supported version of database connectivity software is determined by your database version.

See PeopleSoft Supported Platforms, *PeopleSoft Hardware and Software Requirements*, and your PeopleTools installation documentation for Oracle for version and installation information

To connect to a remote Oracle database, you must edit the application server configuration file, PSAPPSRV.CFG. If the Process Scheduler server is being used, you must edit the Process Scheduler server configuration file, PSPRCS.CFG, as well. These configuration files can be found in the *PS\_CFG\_HOME* directory within the appropriate *domain* or *database name* directory.

From the Remote Database Connection page (PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, Remote Database Connection), you can specify an Oracle data source as "specific" or with TNSNAMES. "Specific" doesn't require a TNSNAMES entry, and will use the Oracle "thin" JDBC driver. However, if TNSNAMES is configured for the remote database, you can use the TNSNAMES style entry.

### Configuring Oracle Connectivity for Remote Data Access on UNIX

Determine the Oracle home directory and specify it in the configuration files by adding the following two lines under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section:



```
; RDBA Oracle JDBC driver
Add to CLASSPATH=%ORACLE_HOME%/jdbc/lib/ojdbc14.jar
Add to CLASSPATH=%ORACLE_HOME%/jdbc/lib/orail8n.jar
```

## Configuring Oracle Connectivity for Remote Data Access on Windows

Determine the Oracle home directory and specify it in the configuration file. For example, if Oracle the home directory is C:\Apps\DB\Oracle901, add the following lines under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section:

```
; RDBA Oracle JDBC driver
Add to CLASSPATH=C:\Apps\DB\Oracle901\jdbc\lib\ojdbc14.jar
Add to CLASSPATH=C:\Apps\DB\Oracle901\jdbc\lib\orail8n.jar
```

---

## Configuring Application Servers or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access with DB2 UDB

This section discusses how to:

- Configure DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows.
- Configure DB2 UDB for z/OS.

Before you can use remote data access, you must install the appropriate database connectivity software on the system where the application server or Process Scheduler server is running. In addition, you must edit the PSAPPSRV.CFG and, the PSPRCS.CFG configuration files.

See PeopleSoft Supported Platforms, *PeopleSoft Hardware and Software Requirements*, and your PeopleTools installation documentation for Oracle for version and installation information

## Configuring Remote Data Access for DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows

The minimum database connectivity software that needs to be installed is the IBM DB2 Run-Time Client. In addition, the application server configuration file, PSAPPSRV.CFG, must be edited. If the Process Scheduler server is being used, the Process Scheduler server configuration file, PSPRCS.CFG, must be edited as well. These configuration files reside in the *PS\_CFG\_HOME* directory within the appropriate *domain* and *database name* directory.

To edit the file, determine DB2 UDB's home directory and specify it in the configuration file.

For example, if DB2 UDB's home directory is C:\Apps\DB\DB2ODBC8, you should add the following lines under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section:

```
; RDBA DB2 Add to CLASSPATH=C:\Apps\DB\DB2ODBC8\java1x\db2java.zip
```

Or, if DB2 UDB's home directory is /mnt/db2/v8.1/java12, you should add the following lines under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section:

```
; RDBA DB2 Add to CLASSPATH= /mnt/db2/v8.1/java1x/db2java.zip
```

## Configuring Remote Data Access for DB2 UDB for z/OS

The database connectivity software that needs to be installed is IBM DB2 Connect. In addition, if the application server is being used, the application server configuration file, PSAPPSRV.CFG, must be edited manually. If the Process Scheduler server is being used, the Process Scheduler server configuration file, PSPRCS.CFG, must be edited as well. These configuration files reside in the *PS\_CFG\_HOME* directory within the appropriate *domain* and *database name* directory..

Determine DB2 UDB's home directory, and specify it in the appropriate configuration file. For example, if DB2 UDB's home directory is C:\Apps\DB\DB2ODBC8, add the following lines under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section:

```
; RDBA DB2
Add to CLASSPATH=C:\Apps\DB\DB2ODBC8\java1x\db2java.zip
```

---

## Configuring Application or Process Scheduler Servers for Remote Data Access with Sybase

Before you can use remote data access with Sybase on UNIX or Windows, the supported version of Sybase's database connectivity software, Sybase Client, must be installed on the system where the application server or Process Scheduler server is running.

See PeopleSoft Supported Platforms, *PeopleSoft Hardware and Software Requirements*, and your PeopleTools installation documentation for Oracle for version and installation information

In addition, if the application server is being used, the application server configuration file, PSAPPSRV.CFG, must be edited. If the batch server is being used, the batch server configuration file, PSPRCS.CFG, must be edited as well. These configuration files are located in the *PS\_CFG\_HOME* directory within the appropriate *domain* or *database name* directory.

Under the ";JavaVM Shared Library=" section add the following lines:

```
; RDBA Sybase
Add to CLASSPATH=%SYBASE%/jConnect-5_5/classes/jconn2.jar
```

---

## Installing and Configuring the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC Driver

Microsoft does not allow the redistribution of the JDBC driver for the Structured Query Language (SQL) server by other vendors, such as Oracle. So, you need to download it from the Microsoft website, and install it into the *PS\_HOME*\class directory.

To load and configure the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC Driver:

1. Download the Microsoft SQL Server Driver for JDBC from Microsoft.

For example: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/data/aa937724.aspx>

---

**Note.** These drivers are not used by Tuxedo or the web server, so you can ignore any comments on this site about supported versions of various web servers.

---

2. Click the link for Windows..
3. Save the program to disk in c:\temp or desktop.
4. Double-click the setup.exe file.
5. Accept all the defaults.

The JDBC driver files are installed in C:\program files\microsoft SQL server <ver> for JDBC\lib.

6. Copy all three files—mssbase.jar, mssqlserver.jar, msutil.jar—to *PS\_HOME*\class.



## Appendix H

# Archive Data Tool (Deprecated in PeopleTools 8.44)

The Archive Data tool, provided in PeopleTools 8.40-8.43, was deprecated in PeopleTools 8.44. The pages associated with the Archive Data tool are still provided with the current release of PeopleTools for upgrade compatibility, and they appear under PeopleTools, Archive Data. *Do not* use these pages to create or maintain data archives in the current PeopleTools release.

The deprecated Archive Data tool is superseded by the current Data Archive Manager. Any new archives, should be created and maintained with the Data Archive Manager, which is documented within this PeopleBook. Access the Data Archive Manager pages by selecting PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager.

### See Also

[Chapter 3, "Using PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager," page 61](#)

---

## Creating and Designing Archive Templates

This section discusses how to:

- Specify fields and archival criteria.
- Join record criteria.
- Generate and edit Structured Query Language (SQL).

## Pages Used to Create and Design Archive Templates

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Record Criteria	ARCH_PROJ	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, Record Criteria	Use this page to specify fields and archival criteria.
Join Record Criteria	ARCH_OTH_CTRL	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, Join Record Criteria	Use this page to join the record criteria.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
SQL Designer	ARCH_SQL	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, SQL Designer	Use this page to generate and edit the SQL that will be used to perform the archive process.

## Specifying Fields and Archival Criteria

Access the Record Criteria page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, Record Criteria).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Record Criteria page

The process of archiving data begins with the creation of an archiving template, which logically groups all of the online tables that are to be archived into a single entity. You associate the online table with its history table counterpart, and you select the fields to archive and the criteria by which to archive.

**Archive ID** Displays the ID for a group of transactions that comprise an archive definition during the archiving process.

**Description** Enter a description. Use up to 30 characters to describe the archive.

<b>Archive to Flat File</b>	Select to archive the project <i>directly</i> to a flat file without having to create history tables.
<b>Copy Archive ID</b>	Click to copy the current archive project to a new archive ID. All tables, criteria, and other criteria are copied to the new archive ID.
<b>Archiving Record</b>	Select the online tables to be archived. You can archive multiple online tables within one archive ID.
<b>History Record</b>	Enter the name of the table where the archived data will be stored.
<b>Copy Table</b>	Click to copy all criteria to a new row in the existing archive ID. This button is useful when handling multiple tables.
<b>Go to Request Page</b>	Click to access the Archiving Process page.
<b>Go to Report Page</b>	Click to access the Report Request page.
<b>FieldName</b>	Enter columns in the online tables to specify archive criteria. Specifying the fields and adding the conditions is comparable to the WHERE clause in a SQL statement.
<b>Operator</b>	Select an operator. Options are =, <>, <, >, <=, >=, LIKE, and NOT LIKE.
<b>Value to Match</b>	<p>Enter a column value to match against, as in 07/01/1999 or \$75,000.</p> <p>You can also use special parameter markers in the format of %PSPARMnn% where <i>nn</i> can be any number. For example, valid parameter markers could be %PSPARM1% or %PSPARM18%.</p> <p>When the system generates the SQL statement, %PSPARMnn% is embedded into the SQL statement and substituted with values entered using the run control pages. For example, you can create an archive project based on a business unit and then enter the actual business unit at run time.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Parameter markers are currently not implemented with DATE fields.</p> <hr/>
<b>A/O</b>	Click to specify AND or OR. This button is only visible if you add multiple lines to the field list.

## Joining Record Criteria

Access the Join Record Criteria page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, Join Record Criteria).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

Record Criteria

Join Record Criteria

SQL Designer

Archive ID: PCRES1

Descr: Archive resources by BU

Record to be archived

Find | View All

First 1 of 2 Last

Archiving Record: PROJ\_RES\_ARCH

☐ Copy Parent Record

+

-

Criteria to archive join record

Find | View All

First 1 of 1 Last

Record Name:

FieldName

Operator:

Value to Match

Join Record Criteria

If there are dependencies from other tables in the archiving template, such as parent-child relationships or joining against reference tables, you must include the criteria on this page. This can also be done by selecting the Copy Parent Record check box. For this to work correctly, the parent table criteria must already exist on the Record Criteria page. You can specify multiple levels, such as grand-parent-to-parent, grand-parent-to-parent-to-child, and so on.

Archiving Record	Displays the table to be archived.
Copy Parent Record	Select to enable the criteria that exist in the parent record on the Record Criteria page to be copied to the Join Record Criteria page. When you select this check box, an edit box appears for you to select the parent table.
Record Name	Enter the name of the table to be joined. You can request multiple table joins per archiving table. The two tables must share common keys.
Field Name	Enter the columns of the online tables to add to the archive criteria.
Operator	Select an operator. Options are =, <>, <, >, <=, >=, LIKE, and NOT LIKE.
Value to Match	Enter a column value to match.
A/O	Click to select AND or OR.

Generating and Editing SQL

Access the SQL Designer page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Designer, SQL Designer).



**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

SQL Designer page

The SQL Designer page is useful for generating and editing the SQL that will be used to perform the archive process. In addition, you can count the number of rows that will be affected by the current archive process and check for duplicate rows that the SQL is affecting. To access this page, you must have entered basic information on the Record Criteria page and the Join Record Criteria page.

**Note.** The buttons that appear on this page depend on your security access privileges and the current archive setting. To set security access to the page, access the Archive Security page.

### Generate Project SQL

Click to create all SQL statements for the entire archive template.

### Generate Record SQL

Click to produce the SQL statements for the current record. The following types of SQL are created:

- Delete from the online tables (Archive Delete process).
- Remove data from history tables (Remove from History process).
- Roll back (Archive Rollback process).
- Create SELECT that moves rows from the online table to the history table (Archive Selection process).

<b>Archive Process</b>	Displays the processes that have been selected on the Archive Data page.
<b>Count Rows</b>	Click to view the row count that the generated SQL will affect.
<b>Chk Dup Rows</b> (check duplicate rows)	Click to see if an incorrect join will cause duplicate rows to be archived.
<b>Edit SQL</b>	Click to modify the generated SQL. If you edit and save the SQL, a flag is used to indicate that the SQL is user-modified and is not system-generated. When you modify the SQL and save it, the text above the edit box indicates that the SQL has been altered from the original, system-generated SQL.
<b>Run SQL</b>	Click to run the generated SQL. Typically, this button used by the archive developer during the development and testing of the archive. After the archive template is developed, a PeopleSoft Application Engine program runs the SQL in batch.

---

## Working With the Archives

This section discusses how to:

- Grant access rights.
- Administer archive projects.

## Pages Used to Work with the Archives

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Archive Security	ARCH_SECURITY	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Security	Use this page to grant access rights to the permission lists that use PeopleSoft Archive Data Tool.
Archive Utilities	ARCH_UTILS	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Utilities	Use this page to perform administrative tasks associated with the archive projects.































## Granting Access Rights

Access the Archive Security page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Security).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

Data Archive Security Definitions						Customize   Find   View All   		First 	1-9 of 9 	Last
*Permission List		Can Generate SQL?	Can Edit SQL?	Can Run SQL?	Can Purge Audit?					
ALLPAGES 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
ALLPNLS 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
PTPT1000 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
PTPT1200 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
QADMIN 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
QALLPGS 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
QEMRUNTI 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
QEMSETUP 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
QEPAGES 		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					

### Archive Security page

This page enables you to grant access rights to the permission lists that use PeopleSoft Archive Data Tool.

The permission lists that you add need to exist already in PeopleTools Security. The permission list must be the primary permission list for the user profile in order for the user to have access to the command button.

<b>Permission List</b>	Select the permission lists to which you grant archive data access.
<b>Can Generate SQL?</b>	Select to enable the user to generate SQL on the SQL Designer pages by activating the Generate SQL button.
<b>Can Edit SQL?</b>	Select to enable the user to edit the SQL on the SQL Designer page.
<b>Can Run SQL?</b>	Select to enable the user to run SQL on the SQL Designer page.
<b>Can Purge Audit?</b>	Select to enable the user to purge the audit history on the Archiving Audit page.

---

**Note.** PeopleTools delivers a process group ARCHALL that should be added to the appropriate permission list using PeopleTools Security. You cannot run any archive processes until this group is added to the permissions list.

---

## Administering Archive Projects

Access the Archive Utilities page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Utilities).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

Archiving Event

☒ Copy Archive Project

☐ Rename Archive Project


☐ Delete Archive Project

☐ Generate DM Script

COPY - This will create a copy of an Archive Project.

Use: To run this utility, select an Archive ID from the drop-down list. Type in the name of a new Archive ID to copy to. Then, click on Sparky.

Note: You will have to regenerate the SQL for the new Archive ID.

\*Archive ID:  

\*New Archive ID:

Go

Archive Utilities page

The Archive Utilities page is used for archive project administration. The administrative operations include copying, renaming, deleting, exporting and importing.

Select the action that you want to perform. The instructions for each action appear in the text box to the right.

<b>Copy Archive Project</b>	Select to Create a copy of the archive template that you specify in the Archive ID field and give it the name that you enter in the New Archive ID field.
<b>Rename Archive ID</b>	Select to rename the archive according to the values that you enter in the Archive ID and New Archive ID fields.
<b>Delete Archive ID</b>	Select to delete the archive that you specify in the Archive ID field. Once an archive is deleted, you can no longer access it.
<b>Generate DM Script</b>	Select to generate both the import and the export PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts for the archive. You can also export all projects by selecting the corresponding check box.

---

## Working With Archive Data

This section discusses how to:

- Find data that meets your criteria.
- Create scripts to move data.
- View and edit scripts.

## Pages Used to Work with Archive Data

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Find Data	DATA_FIND_INPUT	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Find Data	Use this page to find data in the online system that meets your criteria for your archive project.
Data Transfer Input	DATA_TRANS_INPUT	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Transfer Data, Data Transfer Input	Use this page to search for specific fields in the database and create PeopleSoft Data Mover export and import scripts to move the data between databases.
Data Transfer Output	DATA_TRANS_OUTPUT	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Transfer Data, Data Transfer Output	Use this page to export and import data by running the PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts.

## Finding Data That Meets Your Criteria

Access the Find Data page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Find Data).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

**Search Criteria**
[Find](#) | [View All](#)
First ◀ 1 of 1 ▶ Last

\*Field Name:

Match Type:

Value to Match:

**Search Result**
[Customize](#) | [Find](#) | [View All](#) | 
First ◀ 1-4 of 4 ▶ Last

Record	Row Count	Key?	Build?		
JOB	20	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>
NVS_REPORT	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>
QE_JRNL	266	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>
QE_JRNL_LN	4071	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>

**Build Archive Project** ☐

Find Data page

This page enables you to find data in the online system that meets your criteria. Once you have located the data, you can then immediately create a new archive project.

<b>Field Name</b>	Enter the name of the field that you want to find a match for.
<b>Match Type</b>	Specify whether the match between the field value and the match value should be equal or <i>like</i> . Options are = and <i>LIKE</i> .
<b>Value to Match</b>	Enter the value for the system to search for within the specified field name.
<b>Find Data</b>	After you have entered the desired criteria, click Find Data for the system to begin searching the online data.
<b>Record</b>	Displays the record containing the rows that meet the criteria.
<b>Row Count</b>	Displays the number of rows in the record that meet the criteria.
<b>Key?</b>	Indicates whether the field is a key field in the record.
<b>Build?</b>	Click to include the record in the generated archiving project. This check box is automatically selected if the field is a key field.
<b>Build Archive Project</b>	Select to create a new archive project. After entering the name and description of the project, click Go to display the Archive Designer pages that enable you to create the new archive.

## Creating Scripts to Move Data

Access the Data Transfer Input page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Transfer Data, Data Transfer Input).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

**Data Transfer Input** | **Data Transfer Output**

**Search Criteria** Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Field Name: BUSINESS\_UNIT Match Type: LIKE Value to Match: %01 Find Data + -

**Search Result** Customize | Find | View All First 1-4 of 4 Last

Record	Row Count	Key?	Build?		
JOB	20	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	+	-
NVS_REPORT	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
QE_JRNL	266	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
QE_JRNL_LN	4071	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-

Create Datamover Exp Script? ☐

### Data Transfer Input page

The Data Transfer Input page enables you to search for specific fields in the database and create PeopleSoft Data Mover export and import scripts to move the data between databases. For example, this can be used to generate Data Mover scripts that can export data from the production database into a training or test database.

<b>Field Name</b>	Enter the name of the field for which you want to find a match.
<b>Match Type</b>	Select the type of match between the field value and the match value. Options are = and <i>LIKE</i> .
<b>Value to Match</b>	Enter the value for the system to search for within the specified field name.
<b>Find Data</b>	Click to search for the values that you've specified.
<b>Record</b>	Displays the record containing the rows that meet the criteria.
<b>Row Count</b>	Displays the number of rows in the record that meet the criteria.
<b>Key?</b>	Indicates whether the field is a key field in the record.
<b>Build?</b>	Click to include this record in the generated script. This check box is automatically selected if the field is a key field.
<b>Create Data Mover Export Script</b>	Select to enable the system to create a PeopleSoft Data Mover export script.
<b>Data Mover File Path</b>	Enter the file path of the PeopleSoft Data Mover files in the generated script.
<b>Data Mover Export File Name</b>	Enter the export file name in the generated script.

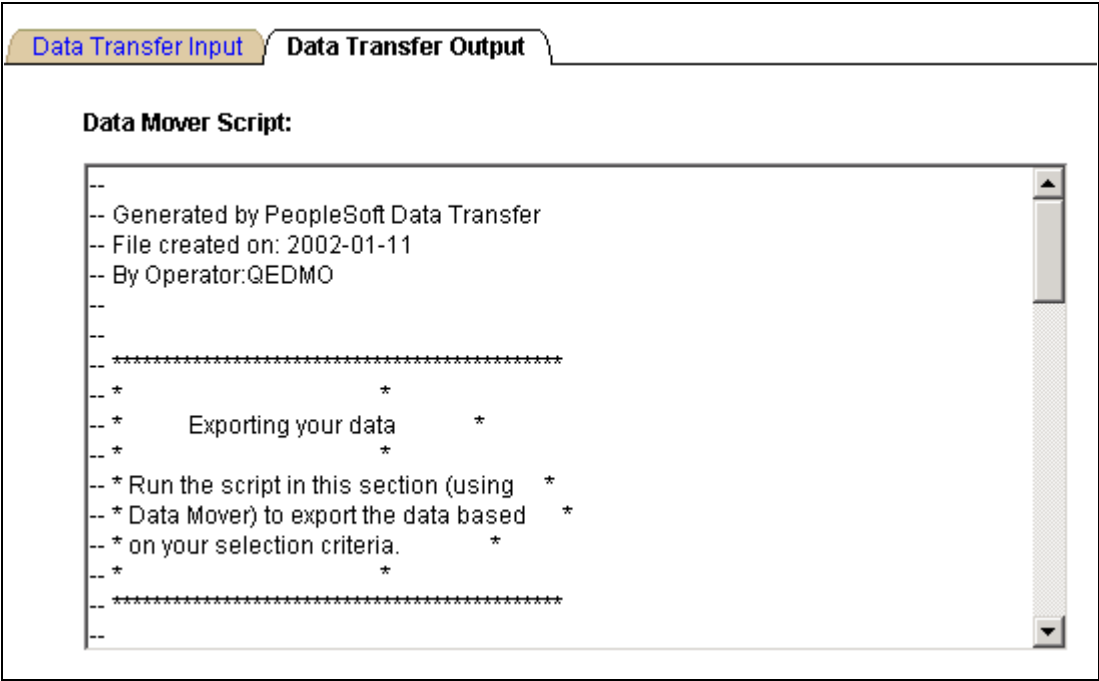
<b>Data Mover Import File Name</b>	Enter the import file name in the generated script.
<b>Delete Before Import</b>	If this check box is selected, the generated script includes a DELETE statement for the user-specified criteria in the WHERE clause. The DELETE statement appears before the Data Mover IMPORT statement.

**Note.** The generated PeopleSoft Data Mover script appears in a text box on the Data Transfer Output page.

## Viewing and Editing Scripts

Access the Data Transfer Output page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Transfer Data, Data Transfer Output).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.



Data Transfer Output page

The Data Transfer Output page contains two PeopleSoft Data Mover scripts: one to export the data and one to import the data.

To run the script using PeopleSoft Data Mover, you need to copy the generated script to a text editor (Notepad, for example) and then save it as a Data Mover script (DMS) file.



---

## Running Data Archival Processes

This section discusses how to:

- Begin the archiving process.
- Export data from online tables to flat files.
- Export data from history tables to flat files.
- Restore archived data using staging tables.

### Pages Used to Run Data Archival Processes

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Archive Data	ARCH_RQST	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Data	Use this page to archive the selected data from your online tables.
Archive Online to Flat Files	ARCH_FLT_RQST	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Online to Flat Files	Use this page to export data from online tables to flat files.
Export History to Flat Files	ARCH_HST_RQST	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Export History to Flat Files	Use this page to export data from history tables to flat files.
Import from Flat Files	ARCH_IMP_RQST	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Import from Flat Files	Use this page to restore archived data using staging tables.

### Beginning the Archiving Process

Access the Archive Data page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Data).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

Run Control ID: Arch\_1

[Report Manager](#) [Process Monitor](#)

Run

Archive Project

\*Archive ID:

Auto Fill Records

[Go To Project Panel](#)

Commit Processing

Archive Commit Flag ☐

Archive Process

☒ Selection ☐ Rollback

☐ Delete ☐ Remove from History

Pre/Post AE Processing

Pre AE:

Post AE:

Records to be Processed

Find | View All

First 1 of 1 Last

Do ☐

Table Name:

History Tables:

Run Time Parameters

Find | View All

First 1 of 1 Last

Parameter Name	Field	Operator	*Value
			<input type="text"/>

Archive Data page

Once you have created an archive template, you can begin the archiving process. This is when the system moves the selected data from your online tables.

- Archive ID

Select an existing archive ID.
- Auto Fill Records

Click to display all the tables to be included in the archive project.
- Go to Project Page

Click to access the Archive Designer pages.
- Archive Process

Select the archive process to run. Options are:

  - Selection: Copy the data from the online tables to the history tables.
  - Rollback: Copy the data from the history tables to the online tables.
  - Delete: Remove the data from the online tables, but only when they have already been copied to the history tables.
  - Remove from History: Delete the data from the history tables.
- Commit Processing

Select to enable the Commit After option, which specifies how many rows of data the system processes before issuing a database commit. Otherwise, the system issues a commit after each record has been processed.

**Pre/Post AE Processing**  
(pre/post Application Engine processing)

If you have any custom PeopleSoft Application Engine programs that you want to run against the data, either before or after archiving, specify the appropriate program here. The available fields are:

- Pre AE: Select an existing Application Engine program to run before the archiving process.
- Post AE: Select an existing Application Engine program to run after the archiving process.

**Do**

Select to indicate whether the table is processed at run time

**Table Names**

Displays the tables containing the data to be archived.

**History Tables**

Displays the tables where the system stores the archived data.

**Run Time Parameters**

If your archive template contains runtime parameters (%PSPARMnn%), specify a value that the system substitutes in the SQL statement at run time.

## Exporting Data From Online Tables to Flat Files

Access the Archive Online to Flat Files page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Online to Flat Files).

---

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

---

Run Control ID: Test

[Report Manager](#) [Process Monitor](#) Run

Archive Project

Archive ID: QE\_ARCH

JRNL/JRNL\_LN TEST

Directory to store flat files: C:\temp\

Auto Fill Records

[Go to Project Page](#)

Pre/Post AE Processing

Pre AE:

Post AE:

Records to be Exported

Find | View All

First 1 of 2 Last

Do

Table Name:

File Path:

☒

QE\_JRNL

C:\temp\qe\_jrnl.csv

Run Time Parameters

Find | View All

First 1 of 1 Last

Parameter Name

Field

Operator

\*Value

Archive Online to Flat Files page

**Note.** This archive process deletes the data from the online tables immediately after the system has exported it to the flat files.

Run	Click to export the data to the flat files.
Archive ID	Select an existing archive ID.
Directory to store flat files	Enter the path for the directory in which you want to store the resulting flat files. When you click Auto Fill Records, the directory is added as a prefix to each of the resulting file names.
Auto Fill Records	Once you've selected an archive ID, click to display the table names associated with the archive. In addition, you must specify the path where the data will be exported.
Go to Project Page	Click to access the Archive Designer pages.
Pre/Post AE Processing (pre/post Application Engine processing)	<div>If you have any custom PeopleSoft Application Engine programs that you want to run against your data either before or after archiving, specify the appropriate program here. The available fields are:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Pre AE: Select an existing Application Engine program to run before the archiving process.</li><li>Post AE: Select an existing Application Engine program to run after the archiving process.</li></ul>

Do	Select to specify whether to process this table.
File Path	Displays path and file names to which the data for each table will be written. If necessary, you can manually enter the file path so that a table has unique file name and location.
Run Time Parameters	If the archive process contains the runtime parameter markers (%PSPARMnn%), specify a value that the system substitutes in the SQL statement at run time.

Exporting Data From History Tables to Flat Files

Access the Export History to Flat Files page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Export History to Flat Files).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Run Control ID: test

[Report Manager](#)[Process Monitor](#)

Run

Archive ID:

QE\_JRNL/QE\_JRNL\_LN

Directory to store flat files:

Auto Fill Records

History Records to be Exported

[Find](#) | [View All](#)First 1-2 of 2 Last

No:	Table Name:	File Path:	
1	QE_JRNL_H	<input type="text" value="C:\temp\qe_jrnl_h.csv"/>	
2	QE_JRNL_LN_H	<input type="text" value="C:\temp\qe_jrnl_ln_h.csv"/>	

Export History to Flat Files page

Run	Click to export the data in the history table to the designated flat file.
Archive ID	Select an existing archive ID.

Directory to store flat files	Enter the path for the directory in which to store the resulting flat files. When you click Auto Fill Records, the path is added as a prefix to each of the resulting the file names.
Auto Fill Records	Click to display the table names. In addition, you must specify the path where the data is exported.
Table Name	Displays the name of the table that is processed. This field is populated by clicking the Auto Fill Records button.
File Path	Displays the path and file names to which the data for each table is written. If necessary, you can manually enter the file path so that a table has a unique file name and location.

Restoring Archived Data Using Staging Tables

Access the Import From Flat Files page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Import from Flat Files).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Run Control ID: Sample\_Doc

[Report Manager](#)[Process Monitor](#)

Run

Number of rows to commit after:

500

Files to be Imported

[Find](#) | [View All](#) | [First](#) | 1 of 1 | [Last](#)

File Path:

Table Name:

+

-

Import From Flat Files page

Run	Click to import the data from the flat file into the designated staging table.
Number of rows to be processed before commit to DB	Enter the number of rows that the program processes before it issues a COMMIT.

<b>File Path</b>	Enter the path and the name of the file containing the flat file that you want to import into the database.
<b>Table Name</b>	Enter the staging table name where the program inserts the data from the import file.

---

## Running Data Archival Reports and Audits

This section provides an overview of archival reports and audits and discusses how to:

- Run archive reports.
- Create an audit inquiry.
- View audit results.

## Understanding Archive Reports and Audits

Before running the archive process, you should generate reports to verify the data that you are archiving before deleting it from the online tables. This report lists the archive ID definitions, which consist of the following:

- Archiving tables.
- Selection criteria.
- Dependency criteria (criteria from other tables).
- SQL that will run each of the archiving processes.

These definitions also help you create your own reports through PeopleSoft Query.

The Audit Report page generates report for a specific archive ID and places the file in the destination that you provide.

## Pages Used to Run Data Archival Reports and Audits

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Archive Report	ARCH_RPT	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Report	Use this page to run archive reports.


<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Audit Inquire	ARCH_AUDIT_INQ	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Audit Archiving, Audit Inquire	Use this page to view all online processes that have been executed in the Data Archiving tool without waiting for the output from the batch process. You can also delete the audit if you have the necessary access privileges.
Audit Report	ARCH_AUDIT_RPT	PeopleTools, Archive Data, Audit Report	Use this page to view all processes that have been run in the Data Archiving tool. You can also print the resulting SQL.

## Running Archive Reports

Access the Archive Report page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Archive Report).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Run Control ID: test4
[Report Manager](#)
[Process Monitor](#)

Archive ID:  
[Go to Project Page](#)

File Path:

Archive Report page

**Archive ID** Select the archive ID to audit.

**Go to Project Page** Click to access the Archive Designer pages.

**File Path** Enter the path where the generated report is saved on the batch server.



## Creating an Audit Inquiry

Access the Audit Inquire page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Audit Archiving, Audit Inquire).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Audit Inquire

User ID:

Archive ID:

Event:

From Date:

to:

View Audit

Purge Audit

Customize | Find | View All | First 1 of

User ID	Event	Event Date	Event Time	Archive ID	Table Name	Archive Process	Run Control ID	Process Instance	SQL Generated Type	Detail
										Detail

Audit Inquire page

The Audit Inquire page is useful for online viewing of all processes that have been executed in the Data Archiving tool without waiting for the output from the batch process. In addition, you can delete the audit if you have the necessary access privileges.

Add the criteria in the edit boxes, click View Audit, and view the results arranged by column.

User ID	Select which user to audit.
Archive ID	Select an existing archive ID.
Event	Select an archiving event from the list. You can select from all processes that have been run by Data Archiving Manager.
From Date	Select a start date for the audit
To	Select an ending date for the audit.
View Audit	Click to have the system create the audit report and display the appropriate fields on the page.
Purge Audit	If you have the correct security permission set up on the Audit Security page, you can click to purge an audit.
File Path	Enter the path where the generated report is saved on the batch server.
Detail	Click to show the details related to the audit events . For example, if you edited the SQL using the SQL Designer page, the Details page will show the original SQL as well as the modified SQL.

Viewing Audit Results

Access the Audit Report page (PeopleTools, Archive Data, Audit Report).

**Warning!** This page is associated with the deprecated Archive Data tool and should not be used to create or administer data archives. Use the Data Archive Manager (PeopleTools, Data Archive Manager) to create and administer data archives.

Run Control ID: test4

[Report Manager](#)[Process Monitor](#)

Run

Archive Operator

Class:

Archiving Event:

Archive ID:

From Date:

File Path:

☐ Print SQL?

Audit Report page

The Audit Report page creates a batch output file showing all processes that have been run in the Data Archiving tool. In addition, you can print the resulting SQL.

Archive Operator Class	Select which user ID to audit.
Archive ID	Select an existing archive ID.
Event	Select an archiving event from the list. You can select from all processes that have been run by Data Archiving Manager.
From Date	Select a start date for the audit.
To	Select an ending date for the audit.
Print SQL?	Select to have the SQL statements for each of the archiving processes printed in the report

384

Copyright © 1988, 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.

## Appendix I

# Mass Change

This appendix contains an overview and discusses how to:

- Define types.
- Generate SQL.
- Define templates.
- Select prompt tables.
- Configure Date and Datetime formatting.
- Build Mass Change definitions.
- Create groups.
- Execute Mass Change definitions.
- Use Mass Change.

---

**Note.** Mass Change is a deprecated product. Support will be maintained for this product, but no new development will be produced for Mass Change. If you used Mass Change in previous PeopleSoft releases, it is strongly recommended that you use Application Engine instead.

---

### See Also

*Enterprise PeopleTools 8.51 PeopleBook: Application Engine, "Getting Started With Application Engine," Application Engine Overview*

---

## Understanding Mass Change

When end users manipulate the data in a PeopleSoft application, they are essentially executing SQL statements. PeopleSoft provides many of the statements necessary for updating that data, but you might occasionally need to create more.

Mass Change is a SQL generator you can use to develop and perform custom applications. Using Mass Change, a developer can set up a series of INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE SQL statements that the end user can execute to perform business functions.

The overall structure of Mass Change is similar to that of PeopleSoft Query, except that Query *retrieves* data from the database, while Mass Change actually *updates* the database.

Mass Change is also similar to Application Engine, as far as its end results—updating the database. However, unlike Application Engine, Mass Change generates SQL for you. Also, Mass Change definitions contain no processing logic.

You can use Mass Change to:

- Perform high-volume, set oriented transactions.
- Copy data from table to table.
- Archive table data.
- Perform transactions not normally supported through PeopleSoft pages.

Mass Change design is based on three components:

- *Types* are the lowest level components. A Mass Change type defines the type of SQL statements to be generated, the records involved, and the sequence of execution. Mass Change types are defined by application developers familiar with SQL and the database design.
- *Templates* are built upon Mass Change types. Mass Change templates are used to specify which fields, if any, make up the WHERE clause of the SQL statement and which fields can be hard-coded with a particular value. Templates are typically defined by application developers.
- Mass Change *definitions* are built upon Mass Change templates, and are generally created and executed by end users. Mass Change definitions are used to specify the values and operators for each field in the statement's WHERE clause, and default fields, and to generate the actual SQL statement.

Anyone who defines Mass Change types or templates should have both a solid understanding of SQL and an extensive knowledge of the PeopleSoft database the SQL will run against. Ideally, your end users should not have to add any Mass Change types or templates. When they create Mass Change definitions, all the necessary information will default from the type and template except for the field and operator values they enter.

---

## Defining Types

Mass Change types determine the basic structure of the SQL statements that a Mass Change definition will generate. They define how many SQL statements will be generated, which records will be operated on, how they will be operated on, and the order in which the operations will take place.

Mass Change types and templates both require a PeopleSoft owner. Assigning an *owner* designates the PeopleSoft system from which the Mass Change type originated. The list of owners to choose from is pre-defined by PeopleSoft.

You define Mass Change types using pages in the Mass Change Type Component.

---

**Note.** To create a new Mass Change type, you must create one from scratch. Because there is no *File, Save As* menu option, you cannot clone an existing type.

---

To define a Mass Change Type:

1. Open or add a type.

To open an existing type, select *Mass Change, Use, Mass Change Type* you'll be prompted for a *Mass Change Type ID*. Enter letters or numbers in the search field. Click Search to get a list of possible values.

The *Description* page appears.

You use the *Description* page in the Mass Change Type Component to enter details about how the type is to be used and who "owns" it.

2. Select a *PeopleSoft Owner*, deselect *Public Use*, if desired, and enter a *Description*.

The *PeopleSoft Owner* identifies the PeopleSoft system from which the type originates. Each type *must* have an owner. When the *Public Use* checkbox is selected, the Mass Change type will be available to other users. Deselecting *Public Use* prevents other users from being able to access this type. This option is selected by default.

3. Select the Records and Join Fields page.

This page is where you lay the foundation for the SQL statements that Mass Change generates.

4. Enter the appropriate number in the *Execution Seq* field and define the SQL statement.

The *Execution Seq* field indicates the order in which the statements will be executed. When you add a SQL Statement, you enter the Execution Seq number manually. The number cannot exist already.

You can insert statements within an existing sequence by renumbering the subsequent steps, starting with the last step. For example, if the type consists of 5 statements and you want to add a new one between statements 3 and 4, you give statement 5 an Execution Seq value of 6, give statement 4 an Execution Seq value of 5, and create the new statement with an Execution Seq of 4.

If you select the *Free Form SQL* option, you bypass Mass Change's automated SQL generation process and will only be able to enter SQL into the last page in this Component. All other fields will be disabled.

If you select *Used for File Download/Upload*, the system will automatically generate a SQL SELECT statement based on the structure of the table you are uploading from or downloading to. This is the only time the system will generate a SQL Select statement on its own initiative.

5. Choose a *Record* and select the *SQL Action* you want to perform against it. Assign it a *Sequence* number.

The second set of scroll arrows on the page controls which records each SQL statement will operate on, and in what manner. Each record is operated on in order, as indicated by the *Sequence* number. You manipulate record order the in same way as statement order (*Execution Seq*).

For each *Record* you add to an SQL Statement, you select a *SQL Action* to be performed. The SQL Action you choose tells Mass Change what kind of SQL statement to generate and the Record values specify which records and fields to use in the statement.

The following table explains the available SQL Actions:

SQL Action	Definition	Use
Delete	Removes specified rows from the record.	Eliminates data.
Insert	Inserts rows of data into the record. Data is supplied by one or more Select-type SQL Actions.  If no Select action is added, adds rows with null values and any specified field default values.	Adds data.
Select Distinct	Returns one row for each unique row retrieved from the record.	Adds data without adding duplicate rows.
Select Sum	Returns one row; each field contains the field value total from all rows retrieved from the record.	Adds one row of data reflecting the total of all field values from the specified rows.
Select	When used with Insert, returns specified rows from the record.	Adds data.
Update	Updates specified rows in the record.	Changes data.

6. Add more *Records*, as desired.

For each additional record, click the add row button. Then, repeat step 4.

7. Add more *SQL Statements*, as desired.

For each additional SQL Statement, click the add row button. Then, repeat steps 2 through 4.

8. Save your work.

Click *Save* to save this Mass Change type to the database.

9. Select the *Join Fields* for each *SQL Statement*.

Once you've selected the records and actions for a Mass Change type and saved your work, you can define the *Join Fields* that Mass Change will use to build a SQL SELECT clauses for the INSERT statement(s). You'll be prompted with a list of all fields common to the records for which you've chosen a Select, Select Distinct, or Select Sum SQL action.

Only two join fields appear on the page at one time. However, you can add as many additional rows as there are common fields. Use the scroll arrows to view all your join fields.

10. Navigate to the *Fields and Where* page.

This page is where you enter field defaults for the records you are updating or into which you are inserting information. These are usually system fields that are key to your system processing, but of which the end user is unaware.

11. For each Insert or Update action row, define any system fields to be set.

Enter a *Field Name* for which you want to set a default value, select the *Field Action* that will be performed on it, and a *Value* appropriate for the Field Action. To add more fields, click the add new row button.

*Field Action* specifies how the field value will be updated. The *Value* field is used in a number of ways, depending on your Field Action selection. The following table explains Field Action options and usage:

Field Action	Definition	Use
Append	Adds the text specified in Value to the existing string.	Adds text to an existing text string. CHAR type only.
Count	Count.	CNT (Business_Unit)  Don't put quotation marks around values. Mass Change will do this for you on character fields.
Field	Sets the field value equal to that of the field specified in Value.	Copies the field value of one field into another.
Max	Sets the field value equal to the highest value found between the current value and the value of the field specified in Value.	Finds the highest value between two fields.
Sum Field	Sets the field value to equal the current value plus the value of the field specified in Value.	Adds two field values together.
Value	Sets the field value = Value.	Hard-codes a field value.

12. For each Insert, Update, or Delete action row, specify the *Additional Where Clause*, if any.

You can use the *Fields and Where* page to append an *Additional Where Clause* to each SQL statement. The WHERE clause you specify will be appended to the SQL generated for the record experiencing an update, delete, or insert.

You can insert substitution parameters into the additional WHERE clause. These parameters are identified by two dollar signs (\$\$) before and after them. For example:

```
AND COST_BAL_VW.MIN_TRANS_DT <= MC_DEFN_AM_TRANS_DT
AND COST_BAL_VW.PROCESS_INSTANCE = $$PI$$
```

The system will supply the bind value when the SQL statement is executed. Valid parameters are:

- \$\$ARCHIVE\_DT\$\$: Archive date.
- \$\$ARCHIVE\_ID\$\$: Archive ID.
- \$\$OPRID\$\$: User ID.
- \$\$PI\$\$: Process Instance.
- \$\$RC\$\$: Return Code.

13. Save your work.

### **Free Form SQL Page**

The last page in the Mass Change Type Component—*Free Form SQL*—enables you to enter customized SQL statements for a Mass Change type.

The only field on this page is *Free Form SQL Statement*. If this field is enabled—meaning you've selected *Freeform SQL* on the *Records and Join Fields* page, you can enter the SQL statement(s) you want the Mass Change type to use.

---

**Note.** It is not recommended to use the freeform option, as it can greatly complicate maintenance. You should be able to generate just about any SQL statement you need using the standard Mass Change pages.

---

## **Generating SQL**

In the sections to come, we explain how to make Mass Change generate SQL statements based on the information you entered in the type, template, and definition pages. However, in order to know what information to provide, you should understand a bit about how Mass Change uses that information.

As we explained earlier, the SQL Action values in the Records and Join Fields page tell Mass Change what *kind* of SQL statement to generate; the Record values specify which records and fields will be used in the statement.

Insert and Select SQL actions work together. If a SQL Statement contains an Insert action, Mass Change creates an INSERT statement and uses all Select-action records for creating the associated SELECT clause. It doesn't matter where in the sequence the Selects and Inserts occur. If more than one Insert action exists in a SQL Statement row, additional INSERT statements will be generated, all using the same SELECT clause. In short, Mass Change can create *multiple* SQL statements using the information from *one* SQL Statement row.



The name SQL Statement on the Records and Join Fields page is a little misleading because Mass Change can actually generate a number of statements from one SQL Statement row, depending on your Record and SQL Action selections.

Typically, we recommend limiting your page selections to create just one SQL statement per SQL Statement row. For example, put an Update-action record in one SQL Statement row, put a Delete-action record in another, and so on. However, in cases where Inserts share a common SELECT clause, it makes sense to put them all in one SQL Statement so you don't have to set up the Select records over and over. If you have multiple Inserts that each require a *different* SELECT clause, then you must put each Insert in its own SQL Statement row.

---

**Note.** SQL Statement rows that contain Select actions with no Inserts will not generate any SQL. Select actions must be associated with at least one Insert action.

---

Mass Change always includes the tables MC\_DEFN and MC\_DEFN\_owner in the FROM portion of SELECT clauses. The fields in these tables are used to control execution and to add null values for time, date, and datetime fields, if necessary. Therefore, if you specify an Insert-action record without specifying at least one Select-action record, Mass Change will still generate a SQL statement. However, it will result in added rows that are empty except for any system field defaults or MC\_DEFN fields that match up.

In addition, Mass Change always ends each SELECT clause with the following WHERE clause:

```
WHERE MC_DEFN.MC_DEFN_ID = '<definition_ID>'
AND MC_DEFN.MC_DEFN_ID = MC_DEFN_<owner>.MC_DEFN_ID
```

If any other WHERE conditions are supplied—from join fields, criteria fields, or an additional Where clause—Mass Change appends them to this clause.

---

## Defining Templates

Mass change templates take the SQL definition one step further. Templates enable you to control which fields will be available for the user to specify when defining a Mass Change definition, and whether those fields will be used as selection criteria or defaults. Criteria fields are used in the WHERE clause for the statement. Default fields are used in SELECT clauses in INSERT statements and in SET clauses in UPDATE statements.

You define Mass Change templates using the *Mass Change Template* Component.

---

**Note.** To create a new Mass Change template, you must create one from scratch. Because there is no File, Save As menu option, you cannot clone an existing template.

---

To define a Mass Change template:

1. Open or add a template.

To open an existing template, select *Mass Change, Use, Mass Change Template* you'll be prompted for a *Mass Change Template ID*. Enter one and click *OK*. The *Description* page appears.

The *Description* page in the Mass Change Template Component is where you assign a Mass Change type and an owner to the template.

2. Select a *Mass Change Type ID*, and a *PS Owner*. Enter a *Description*.

The *Mass Change Type ID* specifies the type on which the template will be based. This sets up the default record and field selections in the next page. The *PS Owner* field identifies the PeopleSoft system from which the template originates. Each template *must* have an owner.

The *Description* should explain how and why you would use a particular template.

3. Navigate to the *Criteria and Fields* page.

You use the *Criteria and Fields* page to specify which fields will be used as selection criteria, and which will be used as defaults.

4. Enter your *Criteria Fields* and *Default Fields* information.

*Criteria Fields* are those fields that the end user will use to retrieve rows from the Select-, Update-, and Delete-action records identified in the associated Mass Change type. In other words, these are the fields to be used in the WHERE clause of the generated SQL statement.

*Default Fields* are those to which an end user can assign a default value.

Use the scroll arrows to view each *SQL Statement*. For each statement, select the *Record* and the *Field Name* for the criteria and default fields for which the end user will enter values.

The Mass Change type associated with a template limits which *Record* and *Field Name* can be selected for each SQL Statement. Prompting on *Record* brings up a list of valid records for each statement. When a *Record* is selected, prompting on *Field Name* shows the valid fields. For each field selected, enter a descriptive *Field Label* or use the default.

The *Field Label* text will appear as a display-only label above the corresponding field entry box in the *Mass Change Definition* pages—to guide the end-user.

To add another field, click the add new row button.

5. Click the *Save* button to save your work.
6. Grant yourself access to the new template.

Before you can use the template to build a definition, you must update your Mass Change Operator Security profile to include access to the template.

---

## Selecting Prompt Tables

If you want the user to be able to prompt for criteria and default field values when creating a Mass Change definition, you must select a prompt table for each field using the Mass Change Prompt Records page.

To add a prompt record:

1. Select *Mass Change*, *Use*, *Mass Change Prompt Records*, and follow the link to *Add a New Value*.
2. Enter the *Record (Table) Name* and *Field Name* for which you want to set up a prompt table.

The *Prompt Records* page appears.

3. Select the *Prompt Table*.

Enter the appropriate *Prompt Table* name, or select one from the drop-down list.

4. Click the *Save* button to save your work.

---

## Configuring Date and Datetime Formatting

Each RDBMS handles date and datetime field data in different ways. You can instruct Mass Change to automatically format your date and datetime fields correctly using the Mass Change Datetime Params page.

To specify the datetime formatting for an RDBMS:

1. Select *Use, Mass Change Datetime Params*.

The Mass Change Datetime Params dialog appears.

2. Select a *Database Platform* and click *OK*.

The Mass Change Datetime Params page is displayed.

3. Specify the appropriate prefixes and suffixes.
4. Click the *Save* button to save your work.

---

## Building Mass Change Definitions

Once you've properly set up the types, templates, prompt tables, and security, you can build a Mass Change definition. When you create a definition, all information will default from its Mass Change type and template, except for the criteria and default field values and users

You define a Mass Change definition by using the Mass Change Definition Component. We discuss the first page, *Description*, in the previous section. The remaining pages are where you identify criteria fields and default fields, and generate the actual SQL statements.

To add a new definition:

1. Select *Mass Change, Use, Mass Change Definition*.

The Mass Change Definition dialog displays:

Here is where you identify the Mass Change Template on which the definition will be based.

2. Select a *Mass Change Template*, specify an *Archive ID* and *Archive Date*, if desired, and enter a *Description*.

3. In the *Criteria and Defaults* page, specify the Criteria and Defaults information.

In the *Criteria and Defaults* page, you specify the values of the criteria and default fields defined by the template.

The *Criteria* rows consist of a SQL operator (edit box on the left) and a value (on the right). When you specify an operator and a value, you are completing a WHERE clause condition for the field in question. You can only enter one SQL operator per *Criteria Field*. However, you can enter multiple values by adding rows.

For each criteria field, select an operator and a value. For each default field, enter a value.

The following table lists the valid operators, how they are used, and an example of each one as used on a set of Business Units that includes: CORP, FRNGN, NEWGN, SUBCO, and WORLD.

Operator	Meaning	Example	Result
<	Less than	< NEWGN	CORP, FRNGN
< =	Less than or equal to	< = NEWGN	CORP, FRNGN, NEWGN
< >	Not equal to	< >NEWGN	CORP, FRNGN, SUBCO, WORLD
=	Equal to	= NEWGN	NEWGN
> =	Greater than or equal to	> = NEWGN	NEWGN, SUBCO, WORLD
>	Greater than	> NEWGN	SUBCO, WORLD
BTW	Between value A and value B	BTW CORP SUBCO	CORP, FRNGN, NEWGN, SUBCO
NBT	Not between value A and value B	NBT CORP SUBCO	WORLD
IN	In a subset of	IN CORP SUBCO	CORP, SUBCO
NIN	Not in a subset of (complement)	NIN CORP SUBCO	FRNGN, NEWGN, WORLD
LIK	Like (used with a % wildcard)	LIK NEW%	NEWGN
NLK	Not like (used with a % wildcard)	NLK %GN	CORP, SUBCO, WORLD

The *Default Fields* box displays fields that will be updated and allows you to enter a *Value* for each field. If you've created prompt tables for the fields on this page, you can select from a list of valid values for each field.

4. In the *Application Specific Fields* page, enter any information required for the definitions for your particular application.

5. Select the *Generate SQL* page.

You use this page to create the SQL statement(s) based on the information you've contained in the type, template, and definition. Mass Change gives you the opportunity to check the SQL text generated by a Mass Change definition before actually executing it.

You view the SQL statement(s) by clicking the Generate SQL button. The SQL text is created and displayed in the large, display-only, edit box.

If you're unhappy with the SQL, you can delete it, using the Clear SQL button, and rewrite the Mass Change definition, template, or type, as needed.

Using the Count button in the lower left corner of the page displays the total number of rows affected by each statement.

In this page, you can also opt to Execute SQL Upon Saving. If you select this checkbox, the SQL will be executed when you save the page if your Mass Change Operator Security profile authorizes you to execute definitions online. If you do not enable this option, you can save the Mass Change definition, then execute it in the background, using a run control.

6. Review the statement(s).

Check the statement text. Be sure any FROM or WHERE clauses reference the proper tables, fields, and values. As a further test, press *Count*. This displays the total rows affected by each statement.

Are the totals what you expected? If everything checks out, continue to the next step. If not, redefine the definition, template, or type, as necessary.

7. Select *Execute SQL Upon Saving*, if desired.

8. Click the *Save* button to save the definition.

If you selected *Execute SQL Upon Saving*, the definition begins executing.

---

## Creating Groups

Quite often, you may need to execute a group of Mass Change definitions in series. Mass Change functionality makes it possible to define groups of definitions and execute them all using one run control ID.

You define groups using the *Mass Change Group* page.

Like types and templates, each group must have a single *PS Owner*. This designates from which PeopleSoft system the mass change group originates.

The *Mass Change Definition* field identifies the definitions in the group. You can add as many as you like. Each one should be assigned an *Execution Sequence* number, which determines the execution order.

To create a group:

1. Select *Use, Mass Change Group, Add*.

The *Mass Change Group* page displays.

2. Assign a *PS Owner*, and add *Mass Change Definitions* to the group.

To add a definition, place your cursor in a definition field and click the add new row button.

3. Assign *Execution Sequence* numbers to each definition.

These numbers determine the order of execution.

4. Click the *Save* button to save the group.

---

## Executing Mass Change Definitions

You can execute Mass Change definitions either online or in the background.

### Executing Online

To execute a Mass Change online, you must have permission granted in PeopleTools security (*OK To Execute MC Online?* selected).

To execute a Mass Change online:

1. In the *Mass Change Definition, Generate SQL* page, select the *Execute SQL Upon Saving* checkbox.
2. Click the *Save* button to save the page.

### Executing in the Background

To execute one or more Mass Change definition(s) in the background, you'll first need to specify the definition or group you'd like to execute. You do this using the Run Mass Change page. When you run the definition or group, you'll see the Process Scheduler Request dialog.

To execute a definition or group in the background:

1. Select *Process, Mass Change, Add*.

The *Add -- Mass Change* dialog appears.

2. Enter a *Run Control ID* and click *OK*.

The *Process -- Mass Change* page opens.

The *Mass Change Run Type* options specify the kind of execution that will occur. In this section we discuss only *Execute Single Mass Change* and *Execute Mass Change Group*.

3. Select either *Execute Single Mass Change* or *Execute Mass Change Group*.
4. Select the desired definition or group from the *Execution Parameters* boxes.

5. Click *Run*.

The Process Scheduler Request dialog appears.

In this dialog, you specify how, when, and where to execute the mass change.

6. Enter the desired settings and click *OK*.

---

## Performing Mass Changes in PeopleSoft Asset Management

Because of the extreme power Mass Change has to change large amounts of data in the database, we strongly recommend that you do not use Mass Change to write directly to the database. Rather, we suggest you write to intermediary tables, so that you can review the changes and approve, delete, or correct them. Then use another SQR to load the data into the database.

In the Asset Management implementation of Mass Change, we write to three load tables, INTFC\_FIN, INTFC\_PHY\_A, and INTFC\_PHY\_B. INTFC\_FIN holds financial information; INTFC\_PHY\_A and \_B hold non-financial information.

Our AM Utilities window contains pages for reviewing, editing, and approving data in the load tables. This same window also displays pages for running the AM Transaction Loader SQR, which loads the data in the load tables into the Asset Management database.

This setup affords the user some protection against making massive erroneous changes to the database. As an example, we'll look at how to perform mass changes in PeopleSoft Asset Management.

Processing mass changes in PeopleSoft Asset Management consists of a definition phase and a processing phase. First, you define the selection criteria and changes to be made to the selected data, then you run the SQRs that carry out the changes you defined.

In general, you'll complete the following steps.

To run Mass Change in Asset Management:

1. Choose a mass change template and use it to create a mass change definition. Outline the criteria for selecting rows, and identify the columns and values to be changed.
2. Run the mass change SQR to select, change, and transfer the data to the load tables.
3. Preview the data for suitability (optional).
4. Run the Transaction Loader SQR to load the data from the load tables into your PeopleSoft Asset Management tables.

---

## Downloading and Uploading Data with Mass Change

Using Mass Change, you can download data from a single table to a sequential file. Conversely, you can upload that data back to the table from the sequential file. The Download/Upload procedure consists of two phases:

- Preparing the file or table structure.

- Generating the file/populate the table.

### ***Preparing the File or Table Structure***

Process	Description
Downloads	The purpose of this phase is to rewrite the MASSLAYO.SQC to reflect the table layout of the table you're downloading. This rewrites part of the Mass Change SQR so that you can do the next step. Do this on a local version of the Mass Change SQCs, not your network copy. The <i>MASSLAYO.SQC To Be Updated</i> field is where you specify the actual copy of MASSLAYO.SQC to be rewritten. You may need to modify your SQR environment variables to ensure that you are executing the local copy of Mass Change.
Uploads	This step is similar to the first phase in downloading, explained in the previous section. The Mass Change SQR needs to rewrite itself, so that it can upload the data. Specify the file to be uploaded in the <i>Download/Upload Data File</i> field. Remember that this file contains a copy of the MASSLAYO.SQC, which was used to download the table as well as the actual table data.

### ***Generating the File or Populating the Table***

Process	Description
Downloads	After completing the first step, you're ready to download the data to a sequential file. This file contains a copy of MASSLAYO.SQC that you generated in the previous step, as well as the actual table data. Specify the filename that will store this data in the <i>Download/Upload Data File</i> field. Keep track of this file, in case you need to upload the data later on.
Uploads	After completing the first step, you're ready to upload the file data to the table it was downloaded from. Specify the file to be uploaded in the <i>Download/Upload Data File</i> field.

---

**Note.** Your SQR environment variables must be set to execute the local copy of Mass Change. A common mistake is to update a local copy of MASSLAYO.SQC in the file preparation step, but then use the network copy of MASSLAYO.SQC when executing Mass Change, due to improper setting of your SQR environment variables.

---



# Index

## Symbols

\$INFORMIXDIR environment variable 292  
%TruncateTable() function 281  
%UpdateStats  
    activating/deactivating 260  
    setting up DSNUTILS 258  
    specifying tablespace/database information 259  
    understanding 258  
    using the enhanced installation path 259

## A

access groups  
    auditing/correcting 138  
    creating 157  
access ID (secondary) 344  
Active Data Guard *See* Oracle Active Data Guard  
Additional Information page 195  
alters  
    DB2 z/OS 263  
ANSI nullability  
    MSSQL Server 229  
    Sybase 350  
application classes, diagnostic  
    *See* diagnostic application classes  
application data diagnostics  
    *See Also* Diagnostics Framework  
Application Designer *See* Application Designer  
    auditing/correcting indexes, tables, triggers, views 81  
    auditing/correcting optimization 104  
    auditing/correcting PeopleCode 109  
    auditing/correcting records 121  
    auditing/correcting related languages 124  
    auditing tables/views *See Also* SQL Alter  
    building history tables 64  
    importing diagnostic plug-ins 200  
    matching field types to SQL data types 80  
Application Engine  
    correcting orphaned PeopleCode/SQL objects 88  
    correcting SQL 136  
    programs  
        *See Also* Application Engine programs  
Application Engine programs  
    archiving 71  
    auditing/correcting 86  
    temporary tables attached to invalid programs 88  
    using %UpdateStats 258  
    VERSION *See Also* VERSION program  
application packages, diagnostic  
    *See* diagnostic plug-ins  
application servers  
    configuring for remote data access (DB2 UDB) 359  
    configuring for remote data access (Informix) 357  
    configuring for remote data access (Oracle) 358  
    configuring for remote data access (Sybase) 360  
    monitoring connections 302  
    multithreading 308  
    Oracle connection string 296  
    setting database options 296  
    understanding database connections 298  
    understanding three-tier connections 303, 304  
ARCHALL process group 369  
Archive Data page 375  
Archive Data To History page 72  
Archive Data Tool  
    creating/designing archive templates 363  
    deprecated feature 363  
    granting access 368  
archive jobs  
    counting data rows 75  
    defining 72  
    managing archive processes 73  
    set-based vs. row-based 73  
    understanding 62  
    viewing details 75  
    viewing SQL 75  
archive objects  
    archive template objects 70  
    managing 67, 68  
    running queries 71  
    understanding 62  
Archive Online to Flat Files page 375, 377  
archive queries  
    defining 69  
    defining bind variables 76  
    understanding 62  
Archive Report page 381, 382  
archive reports  
    running 382  
    understanding 381  
Archive Run Cntl Details page 75  
Archive Run Control Details page 72  
Archive Security page 368  
archive template objects 70  
archive templates  
    creating/designing 363  
    joining record criteria 365  
    managing 69  
    specifying fields/criteria 364  
    understanding 62  
Archive Utilities page 368, 369  
archiving  
    adding ARCHALL process group 369  
    archive auditing 62  
    archive projects 369  
    auditing 76  
    automatic commits 65  
    creating an audit inquiry 383  
    creating Data Mover scripts 372  
    Data Archive Manager  
        *See Also* Data Archive Manager  
    enhancing performance 65

- exporting from history tables to flat files 379
- exporting from online tables to flat files 377
- finding data 371
- generating/editing SQL 366
- history tables
  - See Also* history tables, history tables
- jobs *See Also* archive jobs
- objects *See Also* archive objects
- online tables *See Also* online tables
- queries *See Also* archive queries
- restoring archived data via staging tables 380
- running processes 375
- starting archive processes 375
- tables 65
- templates *See Also* archive templates
- understanding audits 381
- understanding index limits 65
- understanding reports 381
- understanding strategy 62
- understanding techniques 64
- viewing/editing Data Mover scripts 374
- viewing audit results 384
- Arithabort property 229
- AS command modifier 42
- ASLHEAP parameter 275
- assembler program *See* AUDIT01
- AUDIT01
  - compiling (sample JCL) 174
  - creating (sample) 168
  - creating (sample DB2 UDB syntax) 175
  - understanding requirements 175
  - verifying monitor trace setting 176
  - verifying status 176
- Audit Archiving page 76
- auditing
  - Application Engine programs 86
  - archive processes 381
  - archives 62
  - audit-specific fields 150
  - audit records *See Also* audit records
  - audit tables 150
  - clear lists 89
  - columns 80
  - creating inquiries for archive processes 383
  - database-level 149
  - database level 3
  - database objects 81
  - DDDAudit *See Also* DDDAudit
  - EDI Manager 93
  - fields 80, 99
  - indexes 81
  - Integration Broker 99
  - menus 104
  - Optimization Engine 104
  - orphaned objects *See Also* SYSAUDIT
  - pages 107
  - PeopleCode programs 109
  - PeopleTools Security 127
  - Process Scheduler 114
  - PSLOCK 146
  - queries 116
  - records 79, 81, 121
  - related languages 124
  - security 127
  - SQL 135
  - SQL tables 79, 80
  - style sheets 137
  - SYSAUDIT *See Also* SYSAUDIT
  - text/image columns 164
  - translate integrity 146
  - trees 138
  - trigger-based 3, 149
  - triggers *See Also* auditing triggers
  - using trigger information (DB2 UDB) 167, 178
  - using trigger information (MSSQL Server) 162
  - using trigger information (Oracle) 180
  - using trigger information (Sybase) 185
  - viewing audit information
    - See Also* audit records
  - viewing audit results for archive processes 384
  - views 79
  - XML Publisher 146
- auditing triggers
  - creating/running the triggers script 154
  - defining 153
  - deleting 155
  - using 153
- Audit Inquire page 382, 383
- audit queries
  - Application Engine programs 86
  - Application Package PeopleCode 113
  - clear lists 89
  - DDDAUDIT 81
  - EDI Manager 93
  - fields 99
  - indexes 81
  - Integration Broker 99, 100
  - menus 104
  - Optimization Engine 104
  - pages 107
  - PeopleCode programs 109
  - Process Scheduler 114
  - PSLOCK 146
  - query integrity 116
  - records 121
  - related languages 124
  - security 127
  - SQL integrity 135
  - SQL tables 82
  - style sheets 137
  - SYSAUDIT 85
  - translate 146
  - trees 138
  - triggers 83
  - views 82
  - XML Publisher 146
- audit records
  - creating access groups 157
  - creating definitions 150
  - creating queries to view 157
  - listing for specific time periods 161
  - listing for specific users 158
  - listing in PS\_AUDIT\_JOB 157
  - listing records with invalid OPRIDs 159
  - understanding 150
  - viewing 155
- Audit Report page 382, 384
- audit tables, creating 150
- Audit Triggers page 153
- auto-extend feature 231
- Auto-Resize, DB2 277
- autoshrink 231

## B

- base tables
  - archiving 62
  - understanding 68
- batch processes
  - activating/deactivating %UpdateStats 260
  - commit processing 75
  - DB2 UDB for z/OS 239
  - locksizing tablespaces 238
  - monitoring 239
  - Oracle connection string 296
  - servers *See Also* batch servers
- batch servers
  - configuring for remote data access (DB2 UDB) 359
  - configuring for remote data access (Informix) 357
  - configuring for remote data access (Oracle) 358
  - configuring for remote data access (Sybase) 360
- bind variables, defining query 76
- bootstrap mode, Data Mover 9
- Buffer Pools (Informix) 291
- buffers, database 274
- BUFFPAGE parameter 274

## C

- caches
  - ASLHEAP parameter 275
  - binding tempdb 353
  - BUFFPAGE parameter 274
  - RQRIOLBK parameter 275
  - using on Sybase 353
- Call Level Interface (CLI) *See* CLI
- case sensitivity
  - in Data Mover scripts 17
- CHANGE\_ACCESS\_PASSWORD command 29
- classes, diagnostic application
  - See* diagnostic application classes
- clear lists, auditing/correcting 89
- CLI
  - CLI/ODBC Trace 240
  - connectivity using ODBC/CLI 284
  - DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace utility 241
  - IBM CLI on the client 285
- CLI/ODBC
  - trace utility 241
  - using for connectivity 284
- CLI/ODBC Trace 240, 241, 287
- CLP
  - executing Runstats 283
  - understanding 272
  - using configuration commands 273
- COBOL
  - changing SQL statements 12
  - fetching, executing, generating SQL 249
  - monitoring connections 307
  - PTPSQLRT program
    - See Also* PTPSQLRT program
  - running on DB2 UDB 253
  - understanding PTPSQLRT 253
  - using %UpdateStats 258

- viewing processing times 242
- collation settings, database 229
- columns
  - auditing 80
  - auditing text/image columns via MSSQL Server 164
  - index limitations 65
  - limits when running Data Mover scripts 20
- Command Center 283
- command line
  - syntax 27
- Command Line Processor (CLP) *See* CLP
- command modifiers, Data Mover
  - See* Data Mover command modifiers
- commands
  - Data Mover *See Also* Data Mover commands
  - DDL 12
  - DML 12
  - SQL *See Also* SQL commands
- comments
  - indicating comment statements 9, 14, 34
  - multiline in Data Mover scripts 17
- commits
  - commit processing 75
  - disabling persistent cursors 253
  - importing with a commit level 59
  - issuing automatically 65
  - SET COMMIT command 40
  - setting the commit level for inserting rows 46
  - using Data Mover COMMIT statements 14
- components
  - auditing/correcting menus 104
  - auditing/correcting pages 107
- concurrency 238, 274
- connectivity
  - database connectivity software (DB2 UDB) 359, 360
  - database connectivity software (Informix) 357
  - database connectivity software (Oracle) 358
  - database connectivity software (Sybase) 360
  - performing queries on Windows clients 283
  - troubleshooting (DB2 UDB) 285
  - troubleshooting (Informix) 293
  - understanding instances 272
  - understanding NET10g/11g 295
  - using ODBC/CLI 284
  - viewing the error log 287
- constructor failure
  - handling with Diagnostics Framework 223
- Control Center
  - executing Runstats 283
  - understanding 272, 284
- COOKED file systems 277
- Copying data between tables 386
- CREATE\_TEMP\_TABLE command 23, 29, 30
- createdblinktoprimarydb.sql 346
- createlocalsynonyms.sql 346
- createremotesynonyms.sql 346
- CURRENTDATA 239
- CursorHold feature 239
- cursors
  - Oracle 298

## D

- data
  - archiving *See Also* archiving
  - Data Archive Manager
    - See Also* Data Archive Manager
  - Data Mover *See Also* Data Mover
- Data Archive Manager
  - archiving data to history 72
  - archiving records - limitations 66
  - auditing archive processes 76
  - counting data rows 75
  - defining jobs 72
  - defining query bind variables 76
  - homepage 66
  - managing archive objects 68
  - managing archive templates 69
  - understanding 2, 61
  - viewing job details 75
- Database Audit Report *See* DDDAudit
- database links 345
- database objects
  - auditing 81
  - listing information (MSSQL Server) 166
  - listing information (Sybase) 187
  - object sets 289
  - quantity limits 283
- database platforms 3
- databases
  - administering on MSSQL Server 227
  - ANSI nullability 229
  - auto-extending devices 231
  - building (example) 58
  - client database catalog 281
  - collation settings 229
  - configuring for MSSQL Server 228
  - creating triggers 30
  - database-level auditing 149
  - Database Audit Report (DDDAUDIT)
    - See Also* DDDAudit
  - Database Setup utility
    - See Also* Database Setup utility
  - Data Mover *See Also* Data Mover
  - DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
    - See Also* DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
  - DB2 UDB for z/OS
    - See Also* DB2 UDB for z/OS
  - exporting (example) 58
  - Informix *See Also* Informix
  - installing on enhanced path 259
  - listing triggers (DB2 UDB for LUW) 180
  - listing triggers (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 178
  - listing triggers (MSSQL Server) 166
  - listing triggers (Sybase) 186
  - locking 274
  - monitoring (MSSQL Server) 235
  - monitoring (Oracle) 298
  - monitoring (Sybase) 352
  - objects 81
  - Oracle *See Also* Oracle
  - preparing for export 19
  - setting options (Informix) 296
  - setting options (Sybase) 350
  - specifying information for statistics updates 259
  - Sybase *See Also* Sybase
  - tempdb *See Also* tempdb database
  - terminology 289
  - understanding connections 298
  - understanding instances 270
  - using filegroups 232
  - using recovery models 230
- Database Setup utility
  - accessing 21
  - checking generated scripts 23
  - entering database parameters 22
  - selecting databases 21
  - selecting PeopleSoft applications 22
  - understanding 21
- Database Vault 330
  - configuring multiple access IDs 333
  - restricting access ID 331
  - restricting PSFTDBA 332
  - user IDs 331
- data diagnostics *See Also* Diagnostics Framework
- data integrity tools 79
  - understanding 2
- Data Managed Storage (DMS) tablespaces 276, 277
- data management
  - implementation 4
  - overview 1
- DATAMOVE.LOG 15
- Data Mover
  - command line interface 24
  - commands *See Also* Data Mover commands
  - COMMIT statements 14
  - creating/populating tables/indexes 276
  - Database Setup utility
    - See Also* Database Setup utility
  - dates 12
  - operating modes 8
  - platform support 8
  - running SQL commands 11
  - scripts *See Also* Data Mover scripts
  - setting up tracing 25
  - SQL Trace utility *See Also* SQL Trace utility
  - starting 8, 14
  - time 12
  - TRUNCATE 12
  - understanding 1, 7
  - understanding the interface 8
  - viewing SYSAUDIT output 85
  - window 14
- Data Mover command line interface
  - running scripts 26
  - setting up UNIX 24
  - understanding 24
  - understanding parameters 27
  - using parameter files 28
- Data Mover command modifiers
  - AS 42
  - IGNORE\_DUPS 44
  - UPDATE\_DUPS 44
  - WHERE 45
- Data Mover commands
  - CHANGE\_ACCESS\_PASSWORD 29
  - CREATE\_TEMP\_TABLE 29, 30
  - ENCRYPT\_PASSWORD 9, 30
  - EXPORT *See Also* EXPORT command, 31
  - IMPORT *See Also* IMPORT command, 32
  - modifiers
    - See Also* Data Mover command modifiers
  - NO TRACE 15
  - relationship with SQL commands 12
  - REM 9, 34
  - REMARK 9, 34

- RENAME *See Also* RENAME command, 34
- REPLACE\_ALL 10, 37
- REPLACE\_DATA 10, 37
- REPLACE\_VIEW
  - See Also* REPLACE\_VIEW command, 38
- RUN 10, 23, 38
- SET 10, 39
- SET BASE\_LANGUAGE 10, 39
- SET COMMIT 40
- SET IGNORE\_ERRORS 10, 40
- supported SQL 11
- SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE 10, 23, 41
- understanding 9
- "--" 9, 34
- Data Mover scripts
  - checking generated 23
  - creating/editing 18
  - creating for archive processes 372
- Data Mover commands
  - See Also* Data Mover commands
  - editing/viewing 15
  - preparing databases for export 19
  - running 19
  - running from the command line 26
  - running SQL commands 11
  - understanding command types 16
  - understanding syntax rules 16
  - using examples 58
  - using the command line interface 24
  - viewing/editing for archive processes 374
  - viewing errors 15
- Data Mover window 14
- dataset name (DSN) 257
- Data Transfer Input page 371, 372
- Data Transfer Output page 371, 374
- DB2CAE 283, 286
- DB2DIAG.LOG 287
- db2expln tool 283
- db2trc 287
- DB2 UDB
  - CLI/ODBC Trace 240
  - creating AUDIT01 175
  - Linux, UNIX, and Windows
    - See Also* DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
  - running Data Mover scripts 20
  - synchronizing PeopleTools tables with
    - system catalog 259
  - understanding AUDIT01 requirements 175
  - verifying AUDIT01 status 176
  - verifying monitor trace setting for AUDIT01 176
  - z/OS *See Also* DB2 UDB for z/OS
- DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
  - administering 269
  - capturing Module information 288
  - client database catalog 281
  - configuring 273
  - configuring servers for remote data access 359
  - database-level auditing 149
  - database manager configuration parameters 273, 274
  - database object quantity limits 283
  - enabling DB2 UDB CLI/ODBC Trace 287
  - mapping client/server IP addresses 285
  - performing queries 283
  - troubleshooting connectivity 285
  - troubleshooting SQL 286
  - understanding connectivity 272
  - understanding instances 270
  - understanding security 271
  - updating statistics 283
  - using %TruncateTable() 281
  - using DB2DIAG.LOG 287
  - using db2trc 287
  - using DB2 UDB Message Reference 288
  - using DDL scripts 276
  - using ODBC/CLI for connectivity 284
  - using Snapshot Monitor 286
  - using tablespaces 275
- DB2 UDB for LUW
  - maintaining triggers 180
  - using trigger information 178
  - using trigger syntax 178
- DB2 UDB for z/OS
  - administering 237
  - administering SQRs 254
  - associating PeopleSoft operators with DB2 UDB threads 251
  - client monitoring 251
  - concurrency 238
  - configuring servers for remote data access 360
  - creating AUDIT01 168
  - creating temporary tables 262
  - CURRENTDATA 239
  - CursorHold 239
  - database considerations 237
  - enabling/viewing PTPSQLRT Statistics report 241
  - enabling DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace 241
  - enabling Dynamic Explains 245
  - enabling Parallelism 245
  - enabling SQL monitoring 249
  - enabling SQL Trace 246
  - isolation levels 239
  - maintaining triggers 177
  - monitoring batch programs 239
  - PeopleTools support 237
  - printing SQRs 257
  - RELCURHL 239
  - running COBOL 253
  - setting the number of temporary tables 262
  - specifying SQR input/output files 255
  - tablespace strategy 238
  - understanding SQRs 254
  - updating statistics *See Also* %UpdateStats
  - using trigger information 167
  - using trigger syntax 176
- DB2 z/OS
  - alters 263
- dbspace
  - sizing 290
  - strategy 290
- DBspace
  - DBSPACE command 46
- dbspaces
  - creating 291
- DDDAudit 81
- DDL
  - commands 12
  - scripts 276
  - SET command parameter 48
- debugging *See* tracing
- Define Archive Query Binds page 76

- Define Query Bind Variables page 72
- delimiters
  - in Data Mover scripts 16
- devices
  - auto-extending 231
  - managing (Sybase) 353
  - managing files (MSSQL Server) 232
  - raw 354
  - raw storage 277
  - solid-state 354
- DFT\_QUERYOPT parameter 275
- diagnostic application classes
  - See Also* PTDiagnostics application class
  - PTDiagnostics 206
  - PTDiagnostics class examples 214
  - PTDiagnostics class methods 207
  - PTDiagnostics class properties 212
  - understanding 190
- diagnostic plug-ins
  - See Also* PTDiagnostics application class
  - developing 202
  - entering additional information 195
  - importing post-release 200
  - launching 193
  - understanding 190
- diagnostics
  - application classes
    - See Also* diagnostic application classes
  - Diagnostics Framework
    - See Also* Diagnostics Framework
  - plug-ins *See Also* diagnostic plug-ins
- Diagnostics Framework
  - accessing pages 192
  - accessing the web library 193
  - architecture 190
  - benefits 189
  - data limitations 190
  - diagnostic application classes
    - See Also* diagnostic application classes
  - diagnostic PeopleCode 201
  - diagnostic plug-ins
    - See Also* diagnostic plug-ins, 201
  - overview 189
  - purpose 189
  - running diagnostics 193
  - setting up security 191
  - understanding 3, 189
  - viewing results 196
- DML commands 12
- DMS *See* Data Mover scripts
- DMS tablespaces 276, 277
- domain boot user 345
- DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY feature 276
- DSN 257
- DSNUTILS, setting up 258
- Dynamic Explains utility
  - enabling 245
  - understanding 240
- dynamic prompting failure
  - handling with Diagnostics Framework 225

## E

- EBFs 350
- EDI Manager, auditing/correcting 93
- elements

- database-level auditing 149
- ENCRYPT\_PASSWORD command 9, 30
- encryption
  - passwords 9, 30
  - rows 13
- environment variables
  - \$INFORMIXDIR 292
  - FILEPREFIX 256
  - FILESUFFIX 256
  - ORACLE\_SID 297
  - PS\_SERVDIR 25
  - PS\_SERVER\_CFG 25
  - running PSDMTX 24
- ERASE command 12
- errors
  - connectivity 285
  - displaying for Data Mover scripts 15
  - handling for %TruncateTable() 282
  - ignoring drop errors 11
  - SET IGNORE\_ERRORS command 10, 40
  - troubleshooting for Informix 293
  - using DB2 UDB Message Reference 288
- EXPORT command
  - COMMIT statements 14
  - understanding 9, 31
  - using in bootstrap mode 9
  - WHERE modifier 45
- Export History to Flat Files page 375, 379
- exporting
  - building databases (example) 58
  - EXPORT command
    - See Also* EXPORT command
  - exporting databases (example) 58
  - exporting data from history tables to flat files 379
  - exporting data from online tables to flat files 377
  - file size limits 20
  - preparing databases 19

## F

- fields
  - audit-specific 150
  - auditing 80, 99
  - correcting 99
  - correcting related language fields 124
  - correcting translate fields 146
  - naming 10, 34
  - numeric 81
  - required 81
- filegroups 232
- FILEPREFIX environment variable 256
- files, managing 232
- FILESUFFIX environment variable 256
- Find Data page 371
- flat files
  - exporting data from history tables 379
  - exporting data from online tables 377
- functional indexes 229
- functions
  - %TruncateTable() 281
  - %UpdateStats *See Also* %UpdateStats
  - user-defined *See Also* AUDIT01
  - using Oracle trigger information 180

## G

global prompting  
     using Diagnostics Framework 217, 220

## H

High-volume transactions 386  
 history tables  
     archiving strategy 63  
     archiving to 72  
     building 64  
     dropping indexes to enhance archive  
         processes 65  
     exporting data to flat files 379  
     understanding index limits 65

## I

IBM  
     Call Level Interface (CLI) programs 285  
     DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace utility 240  
     DB2 UDB for z/OS  
         *See Also* DB2 UDB for z/OS  
     setting up DSNUTILS 258  
 IFI 176  
 IGNORE\_DUPS command modifier 44  
 IMPORT command  
     AS modifier 42  
     combining with SQL (example) 59  
     COMMIT statements 14  
     NO INDEX parameter 52  
     understanding 9, 32  
 Import From Flat Files page 375, 380  
 importing  
     combining SQL commands and IMPORT 59  
     file size limits 20  
     IMPORT command  
         *See Also* IMPORT command  
     post-release plug-ins 200  
     REPLACE\_ALL command 10, 37  
     REPLACE\_DATA command 10, 37  
     using REPLACE\_ALL with a commit level  
         (example) 59  
 indexes  
     auditing 81  
     audit queries 81  
     correcting 81  
     creating 13  
     creating/populating in Windows 276  
     dropping to enhance archive processes 65  
     functional 229  
     understanding table limits 65  
     updating statistics 355  
     using on MSSQL Server 229  
 Informix  
     administering 289  
     buffer pools 291  
     configuring servers for remote data access  
         357  
     database-level auditing 149  
     database server directory 292

database terminology 289  
 dbspaces 289  
 PHYSBUFF parameter 292  
 setting database options 296  
 troubleshooting 293

InsertData method failure  
     handling with Diagnostics Framework 224  
 instances  
     connectivity 272  
     considerations 272  
     DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows  
         270  
     SYSADM authority/security 271  
 instrumentation facility interface (IFI) 176  
 Integration Broker, auditing/correcting 99  
 isolation levels 239

## J

JCL  
     enabling Dynamic Explains 245  
     enabling Parallelism 245  
     enabling SQL Trace 246  
     enabling SQR monitoring 249  
     running SQRs 255  
     specifying SQR input/output files 255  
 JDBC drivers  
     installing/configuring MSSQL Server JDBC  
         driver 360  
     using for remote data access 357  
 JFS 277, 354  
 Join Record Criteria page 363, 365  
 Journal File System (JFS) 277, 354

## L

languages  
     auditing/correcting related 124  
     BASE\_LANGUAGE command 10  
     considerations for database imports 33  
     determining installed with Diagnostics  
         Framework 214  
     installing 10, 23, 41  
     SET BASE\_LANGUAGE command 39  
     setting options for Sybase 350  
     SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE command 23  
 Linux  
     DB2 UDB  
         *See Also* DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and  
         Windows  
     references in this guide *See Also* UNIX  
     setting up to run Data Mover 24  
 locking  
     auditing/correcting PSLOCK 146  
     enabling row-level 349  
     LOCKLIST parameter 274  
     locksize tablespace 238  
     promoting row-level 350  
     tablespaces for row-level 238  
 LOCKLIST parameter 274  
 logging  
     Data Mover 15  
     LOGPRIMARY parameter 275  
     managing devices on Sybase 353

LOGPRIMARY parameter 275

## M

Manage Archive Objects page 68

Manage Archive Templates page 69

Mass Change

Asset Management example 397

date and datetime formatting 393

definitions 393

executing 396

downloading data with 397

field labels 392

freeform SQL 390

high-volume transactions 386

Mass Change groups 395

prompt tables 392

PS owner 395

SQL generation 395

templates 386, 391

types 386

uploading data with 397

menus, auditing/correcting 104

metadata, diagnostic application package

*See* diagnostic plug-ins

meta SQL

%TruncateTable() 281

%UpdateStats *See Also* %UpdateStats

understanding 253

Microsoft SQL Server *See* MSSQL Server

modifiers, Data Mover command

*See* Data Mover command modifiers

MPIC 295

MSSQL Server

access ID 228

administering databases 227

audit records 151

autoshrink 231

capturing text/image columns 164

creating/updating statistics 231

database collation settings 229

delivered configuration 227

installing/configuring JDBC drivers 360

KB articles 228

maintaining triggers 166

managing files 232

monitoring databases 235

read committed snapshot isolation 231

recovery model 230

required database configuration 228

service packs and QFE 228

tracing 234

tuning the tempdb database 233

understanding server options 227

using filegroups 232

using trigger syntax 162

viewing audit records 156

multi-protocol interchange (MPIC) 295

multithreading 308

## N

NET 10g/11g 295

non-base tables

archiving 62

understanding 68

NO TRACE command 15

## O

objects

archive *See Also* archive objects

archive template 70

database *See Also* database objects

orphaned *See Also* orphaned objects

SQL 89

online tables

archiving using 63

dropping indexes to enhance archive processes 65

exporting data to flat files 377

OPRIDs, invalid 159

Optimization Engine, auditing/correcting 104

Oracle

administering 295

audit records 151

configuring servers for remote data access 358

connection string 296

consumer group example 322

consumer groups 317

creating consumer groups 321

creating resource plan 321

Database Vault *See* Database Vault

maintaining triggers 182

managing Oracle Wallet 326

monitoring database connections 298

NET10g/11g 295

open cursors, minimum 298

ORACLE\_SID environment variable 297

Oracle 11g security 334

Oracle connectivity 358

profiles 334

Resource Manager 317

resource plan example 322

setting number of temporary tables 315

tablespaces, locally managed 316

tracking connections by user ID 299

Transparent Application Failover 340

transparent data encryption 324

using client monitoring 299

using trigger syntax 180

ORACLE\_SID environment variable 297

Oracle Active Data Guard

access IDs 344

configuring domains 346

configuring for PeopleSoft 342

database links 345

domain boot user 345

installing 344

read-only components 347

read-only processes 348

synonyms 345

Oracle resource groups

mapping 323

orphaned objects

auditing 84

correcting AE SQL objects 89, 136



# P

- packages, diagnostic application
  - See* diagnostic plug-ins
- pages
  - accessing in Diagnostics Framework 192
  - auditing/correcting 107
  - Page Designer 107
  - setting sizes for Sybase 350
- Pages page 192
- Parallelism utility
  - enabling 245
  - understanding 240
- PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME 334
- PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME 334
- PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME 334
- passwords
  - encrypting 9, 30
  - Oracle connection string 296
  - PeopleSoft signon dialog box 285
  - resetting access 29
  - signing into Data Mover 8
  - using Data Mover command-line parameters 27
- PeopleCode
  - auditing/correcting programs 109
  - correcting orphaned AE PeopleCode 88
  - correcting tables 109
  - diagnostic 201
  - functions *See Also* functions
- PeopleCode programs, auditing/correcting 109
- PeopleSoft Application Engine
  - See* Application Engine
- PeopleSoft Data Archive Manager
  - See* Data Archive Manager
- PeopleSoft Data Mover *See* Data Mover
- PeopleSoft Diagnostics page 196
- PeopleSoft Process Scheduler
  - See* Process Scheduler
- PeopleSoft Query
  - defining archive queries 69
  - viewing audit record details 157
- PeopleTools
  - auditing/correcting security 127
  - Diagnostics Framework
    - See Also* Diagnostics Framework
  - enabling %UpdateStats 260
  - enabling CursorHold 239
  - finding inconsistencies between PeopleTools
    - definitions and database objects 81
  - JDBC drivers 357
  - Mass Change 385
  - Oracle connection string 296
  - supporting DB2 UDB for z/OS 237
  - synchronizing tables with DB2 UDB system catalog 259
  - using ODBC/CLI for connectivity 284
- PeopleTools Security, auditing/correcting 127
- performance issues
  - archive processes 65
  - auto-extending devices 231
  - carrying over row-level locking for tablespaces 238
  - creating database instances 270
  - creating temporary tables 262
  - database manager configuration parameters 274
  - Data Mover command line 24
  - disabling %TruncateTable 281
  - disabling SQL Trace 246
  - DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY feature 276
  - dropping optimization triggers 105
  - enabling Dynamic Explains 245
  - ignoring duplicate-row error messages 44
  - importing 33
  - including columns in audit tables 151
  - locksizing tablespaces 238
  - LOGPRIMARY parameter 275
  - managing files/filegroups 232
  - Oracle connection string 296
  - placing tempdb on solid-state devices 354
  - RAW vs COOKED tablespaces 277
  - running Runstats 259, 260
  - running SQRs 254
  - setting commits 41
  - setting Sybase packet sizes 354
  - setting the number of temporary tables 262
  - setting the temporary table quantity on Oracle 315
  - tracing 351
  - trigger-based auditing 149
  - tuning batch programs 239
  - tuning the tempdb database 233
  - using %UpdateStats 258
  - using caches 353
- permission lists
  - accessing Diagnostics Framework
    - pages/web-library 192
  - Archive Data Tool 368
  - correcting incomplete 127
- persistent cursors
  - disabling 253
  - enabling 239
- PHYSBUFF (Informix) 292
- plug-ins, diagnostic *See* diagnostic plug-ins
- process definitions
  - correcting 114
  - enabling SQR monitoring 250
- Process Scheduler
  - auditing/correcting 114
  - enabling SQR monitoring 250
  - monitoring connections 305
  - running SQRs 254
  - scheduling Data Mover scripts 19
  - setting database options 296
- programs
  - Application Engine
    - See Also* Application Engine programs
  - assembler *See Also* AUDIT01
  - monitoring batch 239
  - PeopleCode 109
  - PTPSQLRT *See Also* PTPSQLRT program
  - using CLI 285
  - using COBOL 249
  - using SQR 249, 259
- projects
  - administering archive 369
  - troubleshooting upgrades 114
- PS\_ABSENCE\_HIST table 151
- PS\_AUDIT\_ABSENCE table
  - audit-specific fields 151
  - viewing contents 155
- PS\_AUDIT\_JOB table
  - listing audit records 157

- PS\_SERVDIR environment variable 25
- PS\_SERVER\_CFG environment variable 25
- PSFTDBA 332
- PSLOCK, auditing/correcting 146
- PTDiagnostics application class
  - examples 214
  - GetUserInputByKey method 208
  - handling constructor failure 223
  - handling dynamic prompting failure 225
  - handling InsertData method failure 224
  - hasRowset property 212
  - InsertData method 209
  - InsertQuestion method 210
  - methods 207
  - properties 212
  - Purpose property 213
  - SetProperty method 211
  - Where property 213
- PTPSQLRT program
  - disabling persistent cursors 253
  - enabling/viewing PTPSQLRT Statistics report 241
  - enabling Dynamic Explains 245
  - enabling Parallelism 245
  - enabling SQL Trace 246
  - understanding 240
  - understanding COBOL API 253
- PTPSQLRT Statistics report
  - enabling/viewing 241
  - understanding 240

## Q

- QFE 228
- queries
  - archive *See Also* archive queries
  - auditing/correcting 116
  - DDDAudit 81
  - performing on Windows clients 283
  - running on archive objects 71
  - running on restore objects 71
  - SQL *See Also* SQL
  - SYSAUDIT 85
  - viewing audit records 157
- Quoted Identifier option 229

## R

- raw devices
  - DMS tablespaces 277
  - placing the tempdb database 354
- RDA
  - configuring servers (DB2 UDB) 359
  - configuring servers (Informix) 357
  - configuring servers (Oracle) 358
  - configuring servers (Sybase) 360
  - installing JDBC drivers 357
- read-only components 347
- read-only processes 348
- read committed snapshot isolation 231
- Record Criteria page 363, 364
- records
  - auditing 79, 81, 121
  - audit records *See Also* audit records

- correcting 121
- correcting AE state records 87
- correcting inbound work records 93
- correcting optimization records 104
- correcting outbound work records 94
- correcting related language records 124
- database-level auditing 149
- determining counts with Diagnostics Framework 216
- limits for archiving 66
- limits when running Data Mover scripts 20
- modifying 13
- naming 10, 34
- naming in Data Mover scripts 17
- recovery models, full 230
- registration
  - TCP/IP ports 272
- regular mode, Data Mover 8
- related languages
  - auditing/correcting 124
  - considerations for database imports 33
- RELCURHL 239
- REMARK command 9, 34
- REM command 9, 34
- remote data access (RDA) *See* RDA
- RENAME command
  - understanding 10, 34
  - using in bootstrap mode 9
- REPLACE\_ALL command
  - AS modifier 42
  - importing with a commit level (example) 59
  - NO INDEX parameter 52
  - understanding 10
  - using 37
- REPLACE\_DATA command 10, 37
- REPLACE\_VIEW command
  - understanding 10, 23
  - using 38
  - using SET START 56
- reports
  - archive *See Also* archive reports
  - archiving data 65
  - Database Audit *See Also* DDDAudit
  - PTPSQLRT Statistics 240
  - SQR *See Also* SQR
  - Timings Statistics 240
- resource groups 317
- resource groups, mapping 323
- restore jobs
  - understanding 62
- restore objects
  - running queries 71
- restoring
  - jobs *See Also* restore jobs
- roles, correcting references for 128
- row blocking 275
- RQRIOLBK parameter 275
- Run Audtrgs (Run Audit Triggers) page 154
- RUN command 10, 23, 38
- Runstats utility
  - running 259, 260
  - setting up DSNUTILS 258
  - updating statistics 283

## S

- scripts
  - creating/running the auditing triggers script 154
  - Data Mover *See Also* Data Mover scripts
  - DDL 276
  - running 19
- secondary access ID 344
- security
  - accessing Diagnostics Framework pages/web-library 192
  - Archive Data Tool 368
  - auditing/correcting 127
  - DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows 271
  - Oracle 11g 334
  - setting up for Diagnostics Framework 191
- servers
  - batch servers *See Also* batch servers
  - correcting definitions 114
  - Informix databases 292
  - MSSQL Server *See Also* MSSQL Server
  - Oracle connection string 296
  - setting options (Sybase) 349
- service packs 228
- SET BASE\_LANGUAGE command 10, 39
- SET command
  - parameters
    - See Also* SET command parameters
  - understanding 10
  - using 39
- SET command parameters
  - COMMIT 46
  - CREATE\_INDEX\_BEFORE\_DATA 46
  - DBSPACE 46
  - DDL 48
  - EXECUTE\_SQL 48
  - EXTRACT 49
  - IGNORE\_DUPS 49
  - INPUT 50
  - INSERT\_DATA\_ONCE 50
  - LOG 51
  - NO DATA 52
  - NO INDEX 52
  - NO RECORD 52
  - NO SPACE 53
  - NO TRACE 53
  - NO VIEW 54
  - OUTPUT 54
  - SIZING SET 55
  - SPACE 55
  - START 56
  - STATISTICS 56
  - UNICODE 57
  - VERSION 57
- SET COMMIT command 40
- SET IGNORE\_ERRORS command 10, 40
- SHEAPTHRES parameter 274
- signon
  - setting network packet size 355
  - troubleshooting connectivity 285
  - troubleshooting on Informix 293
  - troubleshooting security 127
- Snapshot Monitor 286
- solid-state devices 354
- SORTHEAP parameter 274
- sorting
  - setting database collation 229
  - SORTHEAP/SHEAPTHRES parameters 274
  - using tempdb on MSSQL Server 233
  - using tempdb on Sybase 353
- SQL
  - auditing 135
  - building MSSQL databases (example) 58
  - commands *See Also* SQL commands
  - correcting 135
  - correcting AE SQL actions 136
  - correcting views 136
  - DFT\_QUERYOPT parameter 275
  - generating/editing archive SQL 366
  - matching data types to field types 80
  - Microsoft SQL Server
    - See Also* MSSQL Server
  - monitoring databases (MSSQL Server) 235
  - queries *See Also* queries
  - SQL Alter *See Also* SQL Alter
  - SQL Trace utility *See Also* SQL Trace utility
  - tables *See Also* SQL tables
  - troubleshooting 286
  - using DB2 UDB Message Reference 288
  - viewing archiving SQL details 75
- SQL Alter
  - preparing databases for export 19
  - running 79
  - understanding table/column audits 80
- SQL commands
  - combining with IMPORT (example) 59
  - ERASE 12
  - relationship with Data Mover commands 12
  - STORE 12
  - supported by Data Mover 11
- SQL Designer page 364, 366
- SQL generation with Mass Change 385
- SQL objects, correcting 89, 136
- SQL scripts, running 19
- SQL tables
  - auditing 79, 80
  - audit queries 82
  - audit tables 150
  - correcting 82
  - running SQL alter 79
- SQL Trace utility
  - disabling 15
  - enabling 246
  - running scripts 20
  - setting options for Sybase 351
  - understanding 240
- SQR
  - administering (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 254
  - monitoring connections 306
  - printing 257
  - specifying input/output files 255
  - SQR flag utility 240, 249
  - synchronizing PeopleTools tables with DB2 UDB system catalog 259
  - understanding on DB2 UDB for z/OS 254
- SQR flag utility
  - enabling SQR monitoring 249
  - understanding 240
- staging tables
  - restoring archived data 380
- StandbyDBName 346
- StandbyDBType 346
- StandbyUserId 346
- StandbyUserPswd 346
- statements
  - multiline in Data Mover scripts 16

- statistics
  - creating/updating (MSSQL Server) 231
  - PTPSQLRT Statistics report 240, 241
  - Timings Statistics report 240
  - updating in DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows 283
  - updating in DB2 UDB for z/OS 257
  - updating in Sybase 355
- status
  - Data Mover window status bar 14
  - verifying for AUDIT01 176
- STORE command 12
- string constants
  - in Data Mover scripts 17
- Structured Query Report (SQR) *See* SQR
- style sheets
  - auditing/correcting 137
- SWAP\_BASE\_LANGUAGE command
  - understanding 10, 23
  - using 41
- Sybase
  - administering 349
  - certifying EBFs 350
  - configuring 349
  - configuring servers for remote data access 360
  - maintaining triggers 186
  - managing devices 353
  - monitoring databases 352
  - setting database options 350
  - setting language options 350
  - setting lock options 349
  - setting packet sizes 354
  - setting page size options 350
  - setting server options 349
  - setting trace options 351
  - updating statistics 355
  - using caches 353
  - using segments 353
  - using tempdb 353
  - using trigger syntax 185
- synonyms
  - local 345
  - remote 345
- SYSADM 271
- SYSAUDIT
  - auditing Application Engine programs 86
  - auditing clear lists 89
  - auditing EDI Manager 93
  - auditing fields 99
  - auditing Integration Broker 99
  - auditing menus 104
  - auditing Optimization Engine 104
  - auditing pages 107
  - auditing PeopleCode programs 109
  - auditing Process Scheduler 114
  - auditing PSLOCK 146
  - auditing queries 116
  - auditing records 121
  - auditing related languages 124
  - auditing security 127
  - auditing SQL 135
  - auditing style sheets 137
  - auditing translate integrity 146
  - auditing trees 138
  - auditing XML Publisher 146
  - queries 85
  - running 84

- System Audit page 84
- TREE-09 notes 144
- TREE-22 notes 145
- understanding output 85
- System Audit *See* SYSAUDIT

## T

- tables
  - archiving 65
  - audit tables 150
  - base *See Also* base tables
  - correcting PeopleCode tables 109
  - correcting tree tables 138
  - creating 13
  - creating/populating in Windows 276
  - deleting rows 13
  - DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY feature 276
  - dropping 13
  - encrypting rows 13
  - history *See Also* history tables
  - inserting rows 13
  - modifying 13
  - naming in Data Mover scripts 17
  - non-base *See Also* non-base tables
  - online *See Also* online tables
  - selecting rows 13
  - SQL *See Also* SQL tables
  - tablespaces *See Also* tablespaces
  - temporary *See Also* temporary tables
  - truncating 13
  - updating rows 13
- tablespaces
  - creating 13
  - creating manually 276
  - DB2 Linux, UNIX, and Windows 275
  - DB2 UDB for z/OS 238
  - locksize 238
  - Oracle, locally managed 316
  - specifying for statistics updates 259
  - system catalog 277
  - using DMS 276, 277
- TAF 340
- tempdb database
  - tuning/moving (MSSQL Server) 233
  - using (Sybase) 353
- templates
  - archives *See Also* archive templates
  - Data Mover parameter files 28
- temporary tables
  - creating 23, 29, 262
  - invalid Application Engine programs 88
  - setting quantity on Oracle 315
  - setting the number of 262
  - using %UpdateStats 258
  - using the enhanced installation path 259
- testing
  - Diagnostics Framework
  - See Also* Diagnostics Framework
  - modifying the Create Database statement for system tests 277
  - planning DMS tablespaces 277
  - troubleshooting Informix 293
- threads, DB2 UDB 251
- three-tier connections

- enabling DB2 UDB client monitoring 253
  - multithreading 308
  - understanding 303, 304
  - understanding client database connections 298
- Timings Statistics report 240
- TNS 295
- tracing
  - DB2 CLI/ODBC Trace utility 240, 241
  - db2trc 287
  - MSSQL Server 234
  - setting for Sybase 351
  - setting Sybase API-specific 351
  - setting up in Data Mover 25
  - SQL in Data Mover
    - See Also* SQL Trace utility
  - verifying monitor trace setting for AUDIT01 176
- translate integrity, auditing/correcting 146
- Transparent Application Failover 340
- transparent data encryption 324
  - altering tables with 330
  - decrypting 329
  - encrypting fields 328
  - encryption keys 330
  - fields 326
  - managing 329
  - Oracle Wallet 326
  - setting encryption 328
  - understanding 325
  - upgrade 330
- Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) 295
- TREE-09 144
- TREE-22 145
- Tree Manager
  - correcting trees 138
  - creating access groups 157
- trees
  - auditing/correcting 138
  - correcting 138
  - detail trees 144
  - structures 138
  - summary trees 144
  - TREE-09 144
  - TREE-22 145
  - Tree Manager *See Also* Tree Manager
- triggers
  - auditing *See Also* auditing triggers
  - auditing text/image columns via MSSQL Server 164
  - audit queries 83
  - correcting 83
  - creating 30
  - disabling (MSSQL Server) 167
  - disabling (Oracle) 184
  - disabling (Sybase) 187
  - listing definitions (DB2 UDB for LUW) 180
  - listing definitions (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 178
  - listing definitions (MSSQL Server) 166
  - listing definitions (Oracle) 184
  - listing definitions (Sybase) 187
  - listing in a database (DB2 UDB for LUW ) 180
  - listing in a database (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 177
  - listing in a database (MSSQL Server) 166
  - listing in a database (Oracle) 182
  - listing in a database (Sybase) 186

- listing information (DB2 UDB) 178
  - listing information (MSSQL Server) 166
  - listing information (Oracle) 184
  - listing information (Sybase) 187
  - maintaining (DB2 UDB for LUW) 180
  - maintaining (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 177
  - maintaining (MSSQL Server) 166
  - maintaining (Oracle) 182
  - maintaining (Sybase) 186
  - modifying (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 178
  - modifying (MSSQL Server) 166
  - modifying (Oracle) 184
  - removing (DB2 UDB for LUW) 180
  - removing (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 178
  - removing (MSSQL Server) 166
  - removing (Oracle) 184
  - removing (Sybase) 187
  - trigger-based auditing 149
  - understanding 150
  - using information (DB2 UDB) 167
  - using syntax (DB2 UDB for LUW) 178
  - using syntax (DB2 UDB for z/OS) 176
  - using syntax (MSSQL Server) 162
  - using syntax (Oracle) 180
  - using syntax (Sybase) 185
- TRUNCATE 12
- two-tier connections
  - enabling DB2 UDB client monitoring 253
  - mapping client/server IP addresses 285
  - running Data Mover 8
  - understanding 301
  - understanding client database connections 298

## U

- UDF *See* AUDIT01
- UNIX
  - Data Mover environment variables 24
  - DB2 UDB
    - See Also* DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
  - importing/exporting – file size limits 20
  - Oracle connectivity 358
  - running %TruncateTable() 282
  - setting up to run Data Mover 24
  - starting Data Mover 8
  - using the Data Mover command line interface 24
- UPDATE\_DUPS command modifier 44
- UPDATE STATISTICS command 23
- upgrade issues
  - running SQL scripts 20
  - troubleshooting AE programs 86
  - troubleshooting project upgrades 114
  - using data integrity tools 79
  - using the Database Setup utility 21
- user-defined function (UDF) *See* AUDIT01
- user license code
  - determining with Diagnostics Framework 215
- users
  - correcting profiles/roles 128
  - encrypting passwords 9, 30
  - listing audit records 158
  - listing audit records for specific users 158

- tracking database connections by user ID 299
- user-defined function (UDF)
  - See Also* AUDIT01
- userid in the Oracle connection string 296
- user support *See Also* Diagnostics Framework
- utilities
  - CLI/ODBC Trace
    - See Also* CLI/ODBC Trace utility
  - Database Setup
    - See Also* Database Setup utility
  - Dynamic Explains 245
  - monitoring batch programs 239
  - Parallelism 245
  - Runstats *See Also* Runstats utility
  - SQL Trace 246
  - SQR flag 249
  - Visual Explain 283

## V

- variables
  - defining query bind variables 76
  - environment *See Also* environment variables
- VERSION program
  - correcting clear lists 89
  - correcting PSLOCK 146
- views
  - auditing 79
  - audit queries 82
  - correcting 82
  - correcting SQL 136
  - creating 10, 13, 38
  - recreating (example) 58
- Visual Explain utility 283

## W

- web libraries, accessing 193
- Web Libraries page 193
- WHERE command modifier 45
- white space
  - in Data Mover scripts 17
- Windows
  - creating/populating tables/indexes 276
  - DB2 UDB
    - See Also* DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX and Windows
  - Oracle connectivity 359
  - performing queries 283
  - running %TruncateTable() 282
  - starting Data Mover 8
  - using the Data Mover command line
    - interface 24
- Workload Manager 258

## X

- XML Publisher, auditing/correcting 146

## Z

- z/OS, DB2 UDB *See* DB2 UDB for z/OS

- "--" command 9, 34